

**THE DESTRUCTION OF  
CONVOY PQ.17**

This edition ISBN 1-872 197-19-1

Publishers of the various editions of  
*The Destruction of Convoy PQ.17*  
included

Britain: Cassell & Co Ltd, William Kimber Ltd; Corgi Books Ltd;  
Germany: Bertelsmann AG; Heyne Taschenbuchverlag  
Italy: Club Degli Editori, Milano  
Sweden: Liber Förlag, Stockholm  
United States: Simon & Schuster Inc.;  
Richardson & Steirman; St. Martin's Press

First Printing 1968  
Revised Printing 1980  
Electronic Edition 2001  
Focal Point Edition 2005

© Parforce UK Ltd. 2005

An Adobe pdf (Portable Document Format) edition of this book is uploaded onto the FPP website at <http://www.fpp.co.uk/books> as a tool for students and academics. It can be downloaded for reading and study purposes only, and is not to be commercially distributed in any form.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be commercially reproduced, copied, or transmitted save with written permission of the author in accordance with the provisions of the Copyright Act 1956 (as amended). Any person who does any unauthorised act in relation to this publication may be liable to criminal prosecution and to civil claims for damages.

Passages complained off in the famous 1970 High Court libel action *J Broome vs. Cassell & Co and D J C Irving* have been excluded, by consent. The book was republished in 1980 including recently released intercepts. Readers are invited to submit any errors to David Irving at [info@fpp.co.uk](mailto:info@fpp.co.uk). Informed comments on historical points are also welcomed.

Focal Point Publications  
London W1J 7SE

“David Irving specialises in the blunders of war. He also knows how to appraise the unassuming heroism of the ordinary man. From both points of view, his present book on the destruction of convoy PQ.17 is even better than the one which made his name on the bombing of Dresden. It is a melancholy story, with many separate strands leading to disaster.”

A. J. P. TAYLOR, *The Observer*

“David Irving is the forensic pathologist of modern military history. He dissects, analyses and describes with an unflinching, unsqueamish surgical skill. His knife exposes the tumours, the cancers and horrors of war. The reader becomes a spectator in an operating theatre. Coolly detached himself, Mr. Irving spares him nothing.”

*The Economist*

“One of the finest histories of a convoy operation ever written.”

VICE-ADMIRAL SIR NORMAN DENNING,  
*Director of Naval Intelligence*

**David Irving** is the son of a Royal Navy commander. Incompletely educated at Imperial College of Science & Technology and at University College London, he subsequently spent a year in Germany working in a steel mill and perfecting his fluency in the German language. Among his thirty books, the best-known include *Hitler's War*; *The Trail of the Fox: The Life of Field-Marshal Rommel*; *Accident, the Death of General Sikorski*; *The Destruction of Dresden*; *The Mare's Nest*; *The German Atomic Bomb (The Virus House)*; *The Secret Diaries of Hitler's Doctor*; *The Rise and Fall of the Luftwaffe*; *Göring: a Biography*, and *Nuremberg, the Last Battle*. He has translated several works by other authors including Field-Marshal Wilhelm Keitel, Reinhard Gehlen, and Nikki Lauda. He lives in Mayfair, London, and has raised five daughters.

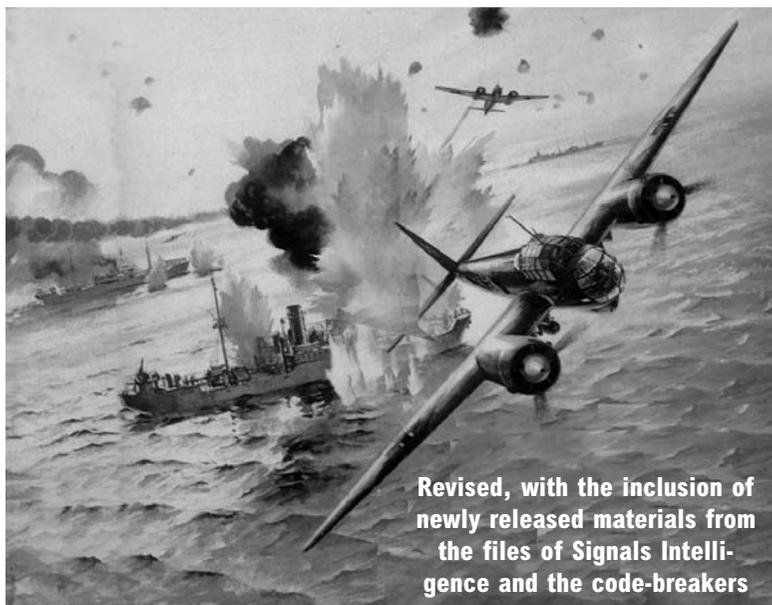
Illustration opposite: Detail of the original  
Granada cover design for the book  
by famed British war artist Geoff Hunt

# David Irving

---

## THE DESTRUCTION OF CONVOY PQ.17

---



Revised, with the inclusion of newly released materials from the files of Signals Intelligence and the code-breakers

F

FOCAL POINT



HAJO HERRMANN, holder of the Knight's Cross for valour (*above, right, with the author*), flew against England in 1940 in the Battle of Britain; in a Heinkel 111 bomber, he operated with his squadron, KG.30, against the Russian convoys including PQ.17 in 1942. In 1943, after a saturation bombing raid killed nearly fifty thousand in Hamburg, he improvised overnight the "Wild Boar" freelance fighter technique which saved the lives of perhaps fifty thousand more in the city, and half a million people in other cities like Cologne and the German capital – forcing RAF Bomber Command to call off the "Battle of Berlin" altogether in March 1944.

Inevitably Herrmann features in several of David Irving's books – on the Luftwaffe, V-weapons, Hermann Göring, and Adolf Hitler.

When peace came, Hajo Hermann took a law degree, and became a widely respected trial counsel.

In 1992, fifty years after the Arctic episodes portrayed in this book, Hermann went into battle in the Munich Law Courts, defending its author for no fee in the political prosecutions brought by the German government under its laws for the suppression of free speech.



# Contents

---

1: THE REGULAR MILLSTONE	6
2: 'THE KNIGHT'S MOVE'	36
3: 'THE VICTIM IS PQ.17'	70
4: DECISIONS AND DISASTER	115
5: THE BETTER PART OF VALOUR	175
6: A DUTY TO AVOID DESTRUCTION	213
7: THE NEW LAND	243
8: FIRST BACK FROM HELL	331
9: INQUEST	352
APPENDIX I: THE ADMIRALTY'S INSTRUCTIONS OF 27 JUNE 1942	370
APPENDIX II: THE COST OF CONVOY PQ. 17	373
SOURCE NOTES	374
INDEX	395

# Photographs

---

## PHOTOGRAPHS FOLLOWING PAGE 98

- Admiral Sir Dudley Pound  
*Radio Times Hulton Picture Library*
- Admiral Sir John Tovey  
*Imperial War Museum*
- Rear-Admiral L. H. K. Hamilton  
*Imperial War Museum*
- Captain Jack Broome  
*Imperial War Museum*
- USS *Tuscaloosa* and HMS *London*  
*US Navy Department*
- Convoy Commodore J. C. K. Dowding  
*Imperial War Museum*
- USS *Washington* and HMS *Norfolk*  
*US Navy Department*
- PQ.17 assembling  
*US Navy Department*
- A convoy conference  
*Imperial War Museum*
- A convoy sails  
*Keystone Press Agency*
- Adolf Hitler and Grand-Admiral Raeder  
*Rear-Admiral von Puttkamer*
- Colonel-General Stumpff  
*Benno Wundshammer*
- Vice-Admiral Otto Schniewind  
*Benno Wundshammer*
- General-Admiral Carls  
*Rear-Admiral von Puttkamer*
- Tirpitz*  
*Imperial War Museum*
- Lützow*  
*Imperial War Museum*
- Admiral Hipper*  
*Imperial War Museum*
- Admiral Scheer*  
*Imperial War Museum*
- Tirpitz* in Foetten Fiord  
*Crown Copyright reserved. Courtesy: Admiral Denning*

The German air-raid on Murmansk, 1 July 1942  
*Benno Wundshammer*  
Commander Reinhard Reche  
*Günter Döschner*  
Commander Heinrich Brodda brings U-209 back into port  
*Otto Bork*

PHOTOGRAPHS FOLLOWING PAGE 194:

KG.30's Ju.88s attack PQ.17, 4 July  
*Both: Benno Wundshammer*  
The Heinkels of KG.26 attack PQ.17 on 4 July  
*Both: Associated Press*  
The British freighter *Navarino* is hit  
*US Navy Department*  
A torpedo hits the Russian tanker *Azerbaijan*  
*Associated Press*  
The rescue ship *Zamalek*  
*Associated Press*  
Paymaster-Commander N. E. Denning  
*Courtesy: Admiral Denning*  
*HMS Keppel*  
*Imperial War Museum*  
Lieutenant Leo Gradwell  
*Courtesy: Leo Gradwell*  
15 June 1942: U-334 puts to sea from for THE KNIGHT'S MOVE  
*Otto Bork*  
Ju.88 bomber crews being briefed, 5 July  
*Benno Wundshammer*  
Two lone merchant ships of PQ.17 after the convoy had been scattered  
*Both: Benno Wundshammer*  
The sinking of *Bolton Castle*  
*Both: Benno Wundshammer*  
*Carlton's* happy survivors, by *Signal*  
*Benno Wundshammer*  
*Paulus Potter*, abandoned  
*Benno Wundshammer*  
Captain O.C. Morris and the crew of *Zamalek*  
*Both: Courtesy Captain Morris*  
*Earlston's* barrage balloon  
*Otto Bork*  
Survivors from *Earlston* approaching U-334  
*Otto Bork*

PHOTOGRAPHS FOLLOWING PAGE 290:

Lieutenant James Caradus  
*Courtesy: James Caradus*

Captain F. W. Harvey  
*Imperial War Museum*  
*Pozarica* and *Poppy* in Matochkin Strait  
*Courtesy: James Caradus*  
*Pan Atlantic*, hit by a bomb  
*Olopana* breaks in two  
*Courtesy: Hugo Deiring*  
*HMS Britomart*  
*Imperial War Museum*  
Commander Friedrich-Karl Marks  
The coup de grâce for *Hoosier*  
*HMS Dianella*  
*Imperial War Museum*  
*Ironclad* aground in Matochkin Strait  
*US Navy Department*  
The sinking of *Paulus Potter*  
*Courtesy: Hugo Deiring*  
Colonel-General Stumpff awards decorations to his airmen  
*Benno Wundshammer*  
The crew of *U-334* receive their commendations  
*Otto Bork*

## Maps and Diagrams

Screening diagram for Convoy PQ.17 85  
Layout of merchant ships in Convoy PQ.17 109  
Low level torpedo-bomber attack 131  
The developing threat 148-9  
*Keppel's* signal to scatter 157  
PQ.17 after the scatter 213-4  
*River Afton's* owners are notified of the loss 239  
Off the New Land: *Novaya Zemlya* 265  
*Völkischer Beobachter's* headline of 8 July 273  
The Final Phase, 8-15 July 342

# Introduction

ALL BOOKS have something which their authors most wish to bring to the readers' attention. Some authors are successful in this, and their readers remain prejudiced to the authors' points of view for the rest of their reading lives; some authors are not, and when the last page, the last appendix and final wearisome footnote have been scanned the reader asks himself: What was it all about?

I fear that I fall into the latter category, and lest this book be misunderstood its readers should know before they enter into the narrative proper that the guiding light in deciding which incidents in this canvas of tragedy to dwell upon, and which to suppress, has been a conviction that gallantry is best portrayed in its real setting; the ships should be shown to be crewed by normal men with normal fears and feelings. Too often one has read histories of individual acts of heroism, and one's appreciation has been dulled by the picture's lack of relationship to normal human character. So *The Destruction of Convoy PQ.17* is

primarily a book peopled with ordinary people. We see how men reacted when confronted with a grim situation which meant certain disaster and probably death. But against this sombre background we shall find that the individual jewels of gallantry sparkle most, emerging unexpectedly to dazzle us by their now unaccustomed shine.

Nor can there be any doubt that in PQ.17 it is a sombre background; crews mutiny, and are confined in chains below decks; their Masters haul down the Allied flags and display signals reading “Unconditional Surrender”; they deliberately run aground and abandon their vessels; nine merchant ships are deserted by their crews even though still seaworthy, some of them before they have even been attacked; and American captains volunteer to scuttle their ships so they can finish their voyage in safety. But it is this background which allows one fully to savour the heroism of the few brave men, faced with identical perils, who single-handed bring their ships and cargoes into port, often against the wishes of their crews, with officers like the British lieutenant who urged the Americans to drop their plan to scuttle their ships, like the Welsh rescue-ship captain whose gallantry was such that he was one of the first three Merchant Navy officers to win the military Distinguished Service Order.

In the story of PQ.17 we find that there are indeed two kinds of courage in war – both the single, outstanding acts of reckless gallantry with which we have come to associate the individual units of the Royal Navy, and a quiet moral courage which alone can sustain an officer in acting against his every human instinct, when he understands from the orders given him that this is the only way in which he can serve the higher plan. The dogged manner in which Captain E. D. W. Lawford of the anti-aircraft ship *Pozarica* (afterward awarded a DSO for his role in this operation) carried out the instructions which had been given him in spite of the entreaties of the merchant ships, is an example of

moral courage as worthy of our admiration as the more spectacular feats of the smaller vessels' skippers.

These are, I hope, more convincing brands of heroism than the synthetic deeds of valour of which the war's propaganda media were so monotonously full.

BECAUSE SO MUCH that is wrong has been published about this tragic convoy operation, PQ.17, partly in an attempt to depict all the participants as heroes and partly in an endeavour to lay the blame for the disaster on officers who were least at fault, I have felt compelled to weary the reader with extensive indications of my sources, so the reader may rest assured that even the least credible part of the narrative is securely footed in contemporary war records.

The original research for this book was done in 1962 and 1963 in the commission of Neuer Verlag, Cologne, and I am grateful to Herr Egon Fein for permission to make use in this work of all the material then collected, to which considerable further material has since been added, notably the diary and personal records written at the time by one of the RN lieutenants, Mr. James Caradus of New Zealand, and a detailed chronicle of the operations of the cruiser covering force, written by Mr. Douglas E. Fairbanks, Jr., at the time a lieutenant in the USNR. I wish to express my thanks to Miss Jean and Captain Henry Hamilton, who gave me permission to use the papers of the late Rear-Admiral Sir Louis Hamilton, one of this book's central figures; and to the Custodian of Manuscripts at the National Maritime Museum for the same reason. Mr. Leo Gradwell, Commander Peter Kemp, Mr. F. H. Petter, Doctor Jürgen Rohwer and Commander M. G. Saunders all afforded me special assistance, and I am grateful to Rear-Admiral E. M. Eller, Captain F. Kent Loomis, Mr. J. Allard and Miss M. D. Mayeux of the U.S. Navy Historical Division for supplying me with copies of German files and the various

American war diaries and voyage reports to which reference is made in the notes.

Further assistance was rendered by the owners of the convoy's ships: in Britain, Chapman and Willan Ltd, the Clyde Shipping Co. Ltd, General Steam Navigation Co. Ltd, J. & C. Harrison Ltd, Hunting and Son Ltd and Royal Mail Lines Ltd; in America, Isthmian Lines Inc., Matson Navigation Co., States Steamship Co., United States Lines and Waterman Steamship Corp.; and in Norway, Wilh. Wilhelmsen of Oslo. The Bundesarchiv in Koblenz provided me with specific documents, and many newspapers in this country and America, including local newspapers, and the American National Maritime Union and National Marine Engineers' Beneficial Association aided me in my search for eye-witnesses and survivors. I found in all over three hundred, British, American and German.

Those to whom I am most grateful are: Mr. James E. Akins, the late Rt Hon Earl Alexander of Hillsborough, Captain G. R. G. Allen, Captain I. J. Andersen, Captain Humphrey Archdale, Mr. William Arnell-Smith, Mr. Ronald G. Baxter, Mr. Philip J. Beard, Mr. Patrick Beesley, Mr. P. R. B. Bennett, Mr. Hawtry Benson, Rear-Admiral Sir R. H. L. Bevan, Mr. George R. Bissilf, Herr Otto Bork, Mr. S. J. Bowden, the late Admiral Sir E. J. P. Brind, Mr. James Bruce, Mr. David Burroughs, Mr. J. F. Carter, Captain Harold W. Charlton, Mr. John Chvostal, Mr. John J. Collins, Mr. William O. Connolly, Mr. J. B. Corlett, Rear-Admiral J. H. F. Crombie, Mr. Richard Crossley, Herr Hugo Deiring, Vice-Admiral Sir Norman Denning, Herr Günter Döschner, the late Commodore J. C. K. Dowding, Mr. W. A. Dunk, Admiral Sir John Eccles, Mr. Hugh Edwards, Captain John Evans, Mr. R. B. Fearnside, Mr. Eric R. Fiske, Captain J. R. G. Findley, Mr. N. E. Forth, Mr. John F. Geisse, Admiral J. H. Godfrey, Mr. Thomas Goodwin, Captain Stanley Gordon, Mr. Albert Gray, Captain J. Haines, Mr. William Harper, Mr. Alan L. Harvie, Lieutenant-

Commander H. R. A. Higgins, Admiral H. W. Hill, Captain Archibald Hobson, Lieutenant-Colonel Karl-Otto Hoffmann, Captain Rupert F. Hull, Dr. Hümmelchen, Mr. Richard Keating, Vice-Admiral E. L. S. King, Commander W. E. B. Klinefeld, Mr. Iain Laing, Captain C. T. G. Lennard, Mr. Frank Lewin, Mr. E. A. Leycock, Captain John Litchfield, MP, Dr. Norman McCallum, Mr. Norman McMahel, Mr. Shaun Maloney, Mr. Norman McCorison, Captain Guy Maund, Mr. J. Mickelburgh, Admiral Sir Geoffrey Miles, Mr. E. C. Miller, Mr. T. J. Mooney, Admiral Sir H. R. Moore, Captain Owen C. Morris, Mr. K. Morton, Mr. Ted Narovas, Captain C. A. G. Nichols, Mr. T. D. Nield, Commander P. E. Newstead, Mr. L. H. Norgate, Dr. Arthur J. O’Friell, Captain John Pascoe, Herr Emil Plambeck, Mr. William H. Porter, Mr. N. E. Platt, Captain E. Rainbird, Lieutenant-Commander J. G. Rankin, Commander Reinhardt Reche, Mr. Robert P. Rucker, Herr Admiral a. D. Hubert Schmundt, Herr Hermann Schwabe, Vice-Admiral R. M. Servaes, Mr. Leslie F. Smith, Mr. E. G. Soliman, Commander S. S. Stammwitz, Captain Mervyn C. Stone, Mr. D. D. Summers, Mr. H. C. Summers, Mr. W. G. Taylor, Mr. Lloyd Thomas, Mr. H. B. Tours, Mr. P. Vance, Mr. J. Waterhouse, Mr. S. Webster, Captain J. Wharton, Mr. Alexander Williams, and Mr. Jack Wright.

I am also deeply indebted to my father, Commander John Irving, RN Retired, who made valuable contributions to the manuscript at every stage, but died a few months before it could be published.

*David Irving, 1963-1967, and Summer 2005*

CHAPTER 1

## The Regular Millstone

1942

*These Arctic convoys are becoming a regular millstone round our necks.*

ADMIRAL SIR DUDLEY POUND TO  
ADMIRAL KING, USN, 18 MAY 1942

THE SUMMER of 1942 saw German military accomplishment at its zenith. Waves of grey men and armour were storming eastward across the Soviet Union and thrusting deep into Egypt, extending the domain of German rule over the greatest area it ever had been, or ever would be. All but a fraction of British armour in the Middle Eastern desert had been crushed; Tobruk had fallen with over thirty thousand men, and the British Eighth Army was on the retreat. The evacuation of the great port of Alexandria had begun; by the first days of July 1942, Cairo was in panic and the British Embassy and military headquarters were already destroying their files, while unseemly crowds of refugees packed the city's railway station.

At the beginning of the fourth week of June, the Germans had unleashed their major summer offensive in the Soviet Union too, crashing through the Russian lines and beginning that summer's extraordinary advance on the Volga and the Caucasus. It was at this time that a Conservative member of the British Parliament

placed on the Order Book a motion that the House had lost confidence in Mr. Winston Churchill's direction of the war. During the debate which followed on 1 July, Sir Archibald Southby, Conservative MP for Epsom, raised his voice in protest at the continuing slaughter of Allied ships running the Arctic convoy routes to northern Russia: "It is true to say that upon the merchant navies of the Allies rests our hope of victory, and the hope of salvation of all those who are now enslaved under the Axis. The world will never be able to repay the debt it owes to the officers and men of the Merchant Navy."

He continued by warning:

If then, by foolish strategy, we suffer reverse after reverse which not only involve us in military defeats but dissipate the sea power upon which the whole of our war effort is built, we render impossible the fulfilment of the task of guarding those merchant ships upon which we all depend.<sup>1\*</sup>

Three days after he had uttered this warning, the British Admiralty took a certain decision, and issued orders to an Allied convoy bound for Russia, which resulted in the loss of two-thirds of its ships. It is true that the convoy, PQ.17, would never have been sailed had it not been for the Prime Minister's personal directive, but it took more than "foolish strategy" for the disaster to assume the proportions which it did.<sup>2</sup>

2

"THE RUSSIAN CONVOY," said Rear-Admiral Hamilton, "is and always has been an unsound operation of the war."<sup>3</sup> The first convoy from Great Britain to Russia had sailed in August 1941,

\* Throughout this book, superior figures refer to sources which are listed, chapter by chapter, commencing on page 374.

---

---

two months after the German armed forces had invaded the Soviet Union. By the spring of 1942 twelve convoys had been sailed to northern Russia, and only one of the 103 ships that made the passage had been lost. The one casualty was a merchant ship lost to a German submarine as the new year began – the first appearance of U-boats in the Arctic. The presence of enemy submarines brought a new threat to the escorting cruisers, as it was no longer safe for them to cruise at the 8 knots the average convoy made. The cruisers were ordered in future to leave the convoy between 14° East and 26° East – the most likely zone of U-boat operations – and hurry through it at increased speed, to rejoin the convoy emerging from the other side of this zone. At the time it was considered unlikely that the Germans would risk their surface units in waters infested with their own submarines, so the cruisers could be dispensed with temporarily in that zone.

The next convoy, PQ.8,\* was also attacked by submarines, north-east of the Kola Inlet, the entrance to the port of Murmansk, and on 18 January one of the two escorting destroyers – the *Matabele* – was sunk with nearly all hands.

The British authorities were particularly disturbed by the increasing effort being devoted to attacks on these convoys now, as early spring was approaching: the ice-barrier would not have receded far enough to the north to permit the convoys to give northern Norway, with the German air bases, a wide berth; while the combination of fair weather and short hours of darkness would give the enemy the greatest advantage.

It became one of the chief commitments of Admiral Sir John C. Tovey, the Commander-in-Chief of the British Home Fleet,

\* The officer in the Admiralty's Director of Operations Division originally charged with planning the north Russian convoys was one Commander P. Q. Edwards. Accordingly, the eastbound convoys were soon popularly known as PQ's convoys, while the westbound convoys logically became QP convoys.<sup>4</sup>

to ensure the safe passage of these convoys. He pointed out to the Admiralty that attacks on the convoys might well reach a scale beyond the escorting resources of the Home Fleet. He suggested that the Russians should be pressed to patrol the Kola Inlet and make it uninhabitable to the German submarines; they should also provide fighter aircraft to protect the convoys, as it was foolhardy for British cruisers to accompany the convoys through hazardous submarine zones solely to provide additional anti-aircraft defence for the convoys. For some time his appeal remained unheeded.

FOR GERMANY, the triumphant summer of 1942 had been preceded by the disappointments of the winter campaign in Russia, the bitter months when the Germans had been checked at the very gates of Moscow, and their forces in North Africa had been on the defensive too. It was a winter that had brought renewed pressure on their exposed northern flank in the Arctic, where the newly belligerent United States had completed their occupation of Iceland.<sup>5</sup> On Christmas Day 1941, the German High Command (*OKW*) cited information which indicated that Great Britain and the United States were planning a major operation in the Scandinavian area, and ordered an immediate investigation of the prospects of defeating an Allied invasion attempt in Norway. The conclusions were not encouraging.<sup>6</sup>

By chance, two days later the Royal Navy staged a raid on the Lofoten Islands, off the northwestern coast of Norway, and this undertaking – although unconnected with any Allied invasion plan – gave a sharp stimulus to the German fears. All eyes in the German higher commands turned to the northern theatre of operations, and the Führer's own stubborn belief in an impending Allied invasion of those shores once again guided the Germans in their immediate strategic dispositions. To meet the danger to this exposed northern flank, Adolf Hitler ordained that

---

the Norwegian coastal defences should be reinforced, and that Germany's most powerful naval forces should be concentrated in Norwegian waters. In connection with Norway's air defence, he rated torpedo-carrying aircraft very highly:

The German fleet must therefore use all its forces for the defence of Norway [the Führer was reported as deciding on 29 December]. It would be expedient to transfer all battleships there for this purpose. The latter could be used for attacking convoys in the north, for instance.<sup>7</sup>

The Commander-in-Chief of the German Navy and Chief of Naval Staff, Grand-Admiral Erich Raeder, expressed himself unconvinced of their suitability for such an active rôle. Despite his objections, the middle of January 1942 saw the new battleship *Tirpitz* transferred to Trondheim – a move the German Naval Staff had in fact been planning since November, primarily for the effect it would have in tying down British heavy naval units.<sup>8</sup> The battleship berthed at Trondheim on 16 January 1942.

Commanded by Captain Karl "Charlie" Topp, she was the most formidable warship afloat. The Admiralty Intelligence officer most concerned with the German surface vessels later declared that "*Tirpitz* and *Bismarck* were in my opinion two of the finest battleships ever built."<sup>9</sup> With a displacement of 42,000 tons and eight 15-inch guns as her main armament, *Tirpitz* would have been a match for any vessel the Allies could confront her with. The strategic effect of her move to Norway was great. Mr. Churchill estimated at the time that the naval situation throughout the entire world would be altered by the battleship's successful destruction; in particular, it would enable the Allies to regain naval supremacy in the Pacific.<sup>10</sup>

Some weeks after *Tirpitz*'s move, the Germans transferred still further heavy warships to Norway. Hitler realised that the time

---

---

was past for sweeping Atlantic sorties by the battle group at Brest, consisting of the 31,000-ton battleships *Scharnhorst* and *Gneisenau*, sometimes called “battle-cruisers,” and the 14,000-ton heavy cruiser *Prinz Eugen*. Brest was now the sole Atlantic base available to the Germans, and if the warships were to stay bottled up indefinitely there, well within range of RAF Bomber Command, the Germans would sooner or later have to reckon with their warships being crippled in air attacks. On Hitler’s orders, the battle group was withdrawn eastward through the English Channel in the second week of February 1942.

The immediate value of the breakout was lessened by the mine damage sustained by both battleships during the dash and by subsequent further air-raid damage to *Gneisenau* while lying in dock at Kiel. Only *Prinz Eugen* was fit to sail for Trondheim, with the 11,000-ton heavy cruiser *Admiral Scheer* (sometimes called a “pocket-battleship”) in attendance, on 20 February. Bad luck still dogged the German Navy’s movements: off the Norwegian coast *Prinz Eugen*’s rudder was blown off by a British submarine’s torpedo and she had to return to Germany for repairs. While the German plan to form a squadron comprising *Tirpitz*, *Admiral Scheer* and *Prinz Eugen* “to conduct offensive and defensive operations from Trondheim in northern waters” had gone awry, they could still mount a formidable striking force from Norway.

The dual rôle now expected of the Home Fleet increased the anxieties of Admiral Tovey. How could he guard against a breakout by this powerful German squadron through the northern passages into the Atlantic, while at the same time covering the passage of the Allied convoys to north Russia? He warned that no disposition of the Home Fleet could adequately protect both the convoys and the northern passages.<sup>11</sup>

With the present concentration of German heavy warships in Norway, Tovey expected any or all of them to attack the convoys to the west of Bear Island, while the eastern part of the convoy

---

---

route would be subjected exclusively to submarine and air attacks. Plans were accordingly laid for the western part of the next Russian convoy's route to be covered by movements of the Home Fleet.

At the same time, the German Naval Staff had decided that the mere presence of their naval forces in Norway was not sufficient to bind Allied heavy warships in northern waters, and they decided to send out *Tirpitz* to attack the Allies' next eastbound convoy. The sequel to this operation was of the greatest importance for an understanding of the German battle fleet's behaviour during its later operations against PQ.17.

## 3

WHAT HITLER did not know, and what Grand Admiral Raeder stubbornly refused to believe possible, was that the British had developed a top secret computer capable of cracking the *Schlüssel-M*, the machine-ciphers used by the German Navy. The rapidity varied from day to day, but the results had already been crippling for the Germans.

These decoded messages, stamped with the special Ultra secret classification, had led the British battle fleet to the *Bismarck* in May 1941. When RAF reconnaissance planes had failed to locate *Tirpitz*, it was an Ultra intercept that tipped off the British Admiralty to her arrival in Norway on 6 January 1942.

When the German Naval Group North radioed to *U-377* on 22 February to act as flank escort for *Prinz Eugen*, *Admiral Scheer* and five destroyers "which are transferring tonight or very soon from Bergen to Trondheim," it was the Ultra intercept of this very signal that enabled the Admiralty to station a British submarine in the approaches to Trondheim and cripple *Prinz Eugen* there the next morning.

---

On 5 March the Admiral Commanding Arctic radioed a report that air reconnaissance had picked up a convoy, and shortly after midnight he ordered the Fifth Destroyer Flotilla to stand by on three hours' sailing notice; these pregnant Ultra-intercepts were also placed before the British Commander-in-Chief Admiral Tovey a few hours later.

At 4.37 P.M. on 6 March there then followed this intercepted signal:

*From:* Gruppe Nord.

*To:* All Vessels.

IMMEDIATE.

Admiral Commanding Battleships with *Tirpitz* and Three Destroyers will leave Square AF6717 at 1700/6/3 northbound at 25 knots to operate against enemy convoy.

The appropriate orders were radioed to the U-boats almost simultaneously. From an Ultra intercept of a signal on 8 March from Group North to the Fifth Destroyer Flotilla, the British Admiralty could read that *Tirpitz* would rendezvous with units at 8.00 A.M. next morning in Square AC4735 of the secret Nazi naval grid map. As the British had long been in possession of this map too, Admiral Tovey ensured that the German destroyers would not be the only forces to rendezvous with *Tirpitz* when the time came.

The British convoy PQ.12 had sailed in the first week of March at the same time as the westbound convoy QP.8 left the Russian end. The battleship *Tirpitz*, wearing the flag of Vice-Admiral Ciliax (Flag Officer Battleships), put out with three destroyers of the Fifth Destroyer Flotilla to attack it.<sup>12</sup>

According to their operation order, they were to "avoid becoming embroiled with superior enemy forces," while they were to accept battle with equal or inferior forces in so far as this did not prevent them from discharging their main function, de-

stroying the convoy. Lone merchantmen were *not* to be attacked, to preserve the element of surprise.

Admiral Ciliax did not think highly of accepting battle with “equal forces,” as a duel with a battleship like *King George V* would result in *Tirpitz* being badly damaged at least; for the possible loss or damaging of one of many enemy battleships, it was not worth it.

The German Naval Staff in Berlin subsequently endorsed Ciliax’s view.

So much for the best laid plans. On the outward run, the German destroyers found a lone Russian merchantman straggling far behind the westbound convoy, and despite their clear orders to the contrary opened fire on her. Before the luckless Russian sank, she transmitted a wireless signal reporting the attack and her position. Soon after, *Tirpitz*’s wireless room picked up an acknowledgement of the distress signal from the wireless station at Cleethorpes.

After three days’ cruising, and having failed to find the east-bound PQ convoy which had by then been diverted by the Admiralty, the German warships were ordered to return. The weather closed in, but early on the morning of 9 March it began to clear, and at eight o’clock *Tirpitz* saw through the breaks in the cloud layer several aircraft, apparently shadowing her. The gravity of the position was at once apparent: the aircraft were Albacores, which meant that somewhere within striking range there was an Allied aircraft-carrier. Admiral Ciliax radioed an urgent appeal for fighter aircraft from nearby Bodö airfield, but the naval radio station there was out of order and the fighters never came.

Too late, the Germans realised their exposed position – uncomfortably similar to the situation which had sealed *Bismarck*’s fate in May 1941, and that of *Prince of Wales* and *Repulse* seven months later. As Ciliax looked about himself he saw *Tirpitz* ac-

accompanied by only one destroyer – the other two having been detached for refuelling – and this one remaining destroyer was unserviceable because of ice formation and the heavy seas. The battleship had no air cover, and there was an enemy aircraft-carrier within striking range. Why had his wireless room picked up no nearby Allied wireless traffic? He knew that an Allied carrier would not have ventured so far into Norwegian waters without an adequate battle fleet to protect her. The *Tirpitz* was trapped.

Ciliax turned to make a dash for the shelter of the Lofoten Islands, and catapulted an aircraft to drive off his shadowers; his aircraft met a cloud of Albatrosses coming in to attack the German battleship. Twenty-five torpedo aircraft attacked *Tirpitz* in a nine-minute battle which none of the German sailors was ever likely to forget. The British aircraft raced in three and six at a time from every angle, heedless of the defences, forcing the battleship to dodge, yaw and weave in a way that she cannot have been designed to do. This time, as the Germans afterwards wryly commented, the luck was on their side: *Tirpitz* was able to comb the torpedo tracks and they all missed, every one of them. The only German casualties were three officers on the battleship's bridge, injured by machine-gun fire from the planes.

At the time, the Allies did not realise the fright which the sudden encounter with carrier aircraft had given the Germans, but from this traumatic experience the Germans derived an "aircraft-carrier complex" which was to beset all the remaining operations of the German capital ships.

THE MUFFING of this opportunity to engage *Tirpitz* was the object of some recrimination among the Royal Naval officers who had participated in the action. Rear-Admiral L. H. K. Hamilton, newly appointed commander of the First Cruiser Squadron, called particular attention to the Fleet's difficulties in situations

---

---

where the Commander-in-Chief, Admiral Tovey, was at sea and unable to break wireless silence, even in an operation so basically simple as this.<sup>13</sup>

Stressing that the enemy would take every possible precaution to avoid *Tirpitz's* being brought into action, and was "believed to have adequate arrangements for direction-finding," Hamilton pointed out that it was unrealistic to expect a Commander-in-Chief at sea to maintain wireless silence during vital operations lasting over a period of several days. The fact was that the movement of a single W/T key in a capital ship in a position to intercept *Tirpitz* would be sufficient to drive her back forthwith to the shelter of the fiords.

The corollary of the British Commander-in-Chief's having been at sea during the last operation, with the consequent need for him to maintain strict wireless silence, had been that at one stage Tovey was controlling the movements of his battle fleet and aircraft-carrier, while the Admiralty was controlling his cruisers and destroyers. At 5.22 P.M. on 8 March, Tovey had eventually been obliged to wireless the Admiralty, stating his position and intentions, and asking them to operate his cruisers and destroyers for him.

This, commented Hamilton, was hardly the most effective way of conducting operations. Notwithstanding these criticisms, the Commander-in-Chief persisted in accompanying the Home Fleet to sea during convoy operations up to PQ.17; after which, as will be seen, he desisted. For the time being, also, the Admiralty continued to intervene in the fleet's operations, to Tovey's "serious embarrassment."<sup>14</sup>

THE BRITISH were not alone in drawing important conclusions from the attack on *Tirpitz* by aircraft from a British carrier on 9 March. For the character of the operations of the German battle fleet against PQ.17, and for Hitler's own attitude to such opera-

---

tions, the conclusions reached by Raeder and the German Naval Staff from this first sortie by *Tirpitz* were eloquent:

The course of events shows our own naval weakness in these northern waters. The enemy responds to every German sortie by sending out strong battle groups, particularly aircraft-carriers, which must be recognised as the most dangerous opponents of heavy ships!

It is an indication of our own extremely exposed position that the enemy dares to advance into our own northern coastal waters without being annihilated by the German Air Force. Our own escort forces (destroyers, torpedo-boats) are numerically so weak that our capital ships are inevitably under the utmost pressure during air attacks and enemy engagements.<sup>15</sup>

Reporting on this to Hitler three days after *Tirpitz's* escape, Raeder insisted that as long as Germany had no aircraft-carriers, the German Air Force must provide the closest land-based support for any planned naval operations from Norway. Raeder's own belief was that, as there could be no major naval operations in the Arctic without committing the whole German battle fleet based on Norway, it would be better for them to stay at anchor, as a fleet-in-being able to deter the Allies from undertaking invasion operations. They must be risked in Arctic operations only when the German Air Force could establish beyond doubt exactly where the enemy was, and was strong enough to neutralise any enemy aircraft-carriers in the vicinity.

The final conclusion the Germans drew from *Tirpitz's* adventure was not capable of early implementation: the Germans must proceed with all haste with the construction of their own aircraft-carriers, and the provision of suitable aircraft. Hitler agreed that he now believed that an aircraft-carrier was urgently needed.

---

Work on the only carrier under construction, the *Graf Zeppelin*, had in fact been shut down earlier because of the steel shortage.\* Now Hitler realised that the sooner a battle group comprising, say, *Tirpitz*, *Scharnhorst*, an aircraft-carrier, two heavy cruisers and some twelve or fourteen destroyers could be formed, the better: that would change the character of the German naval position in northern waters – and indeed elsewhere – more decisively than any other action.

Two days after his evening discussion with Grand-Admiral Raeder at the “Wolf’s Lair,” Hitler issued the first order for intensive operations against the Allied convoy traffic to Murmansk, “which so far has hardly been touched.”<sup>17</sup> The Navy was to concentrate more submarines in the north for this purpose, and the Air Force was to strengthen its long-range reconnaissance and bomber forces in that region, and to move up torpedo-bombers from other theatres of war. The Air Force was instructed to keep Murmansk under constant air attack, to survey the waters between Bear Island and the Murman coast, to interdict the convoy traffic itself, and to attack the escorting warships.

Five days later, the new 14,000-ton heavy cruiser *Admiral Hipper* also left Germany for Norway, where she anchored near the *Tirpitz* at Trondheim. As the build-up for the major surface attack on north Russian convoys continued, the Germans began attacks with light forces. On 28 March three destroyers of the Eighth Flotilla sailed to attack PQ.13, then passing North Cape barely 100 miles off the coast. Because of inadequate air reconnaissance, the destroyers failed to locate the convoy, which had become widely scattered; they did locate and sink a Panamanian vessel, whose survivors disclosed to them the composition and

\* On 13 April 1942, Raeder had to report to Hitler that for technical reasons the *Graf Zeppelin* would not be completed before the end of 1943; and a month later Hitler began to plan in terms of converting four other ships into auxiliary aircraft-carriers, “even at this late date.”<sup>16</sup>

---

movements of the erstwhile convoy's escorts. The destroyers altered course to engage these vessels, and in appalling conditions that evening fought a series of confused actions against the cruiser *Trinidad* and two British destroyers. During the actions, *Trinidad* was damaged by one of her own torpedoes, and two guns of the destroyer *Eclipse* were knocked out. The convoy itself lost one-quarter of its merchantmen during German air and submarine attacks. The Germans claimed "a notable success."

Looking back on the history of the north Russian convoy operations up to this point, Admiral Tovey called attention to the importance which the enemy now clearly attached to stopping convoy traffic. There was evidence enough for this in the continued northward movement of enemy warships and of submarines and aircraft reinforcements: clearly every north Russian convoy would now involve the Allies in a major fleet operation. Tovey was promised a number of destroyers and corvettes from Western Approaches for the next convoys, and early in April he received enough to increase each convoy's anti-submarine escort to ten vessels. The Russians were also pressed – and agreed – to receive an RAF Coastal Command mission to assist them in organising their own over-seas reconnaissance and fighter-escort services, particularly at the eastern end of the convoys' 2,000-mile journeys from Iceland. They were also asked to bomb the German airfields in northern Norway. "The result was disappointing," commented Tovey later.\*

Early in April the First Sea Lord, Admiral Sir Dudley Pound, warned the Cabinet's Defence Committee that geographic conditions in the Arctic were so heavily in the enemy's favour that losses to the convoys might well reach a point where their running became an uneconomical proposition. All the while political

\* The Russians did bomb Banak airfield in the first two days of July, destroying three of KG-30's Junkers 88s on the ground.<sup>18</sup>

---

---

pressure for their continuance was mounting both in London and in Washington.<sup>19</sup>

Alarmed by the increasing scale of enemy attack, Admiral Tovey proposed during the third week of April that, if the convoys could not be postponed until the ice receded farther north, they should at least be limited in size. But on the 27th, President Roosevelt cabled Mr. Churchill a reminder that the U.S. had made such a “tremendous effort” to get its supplies moving to Russia that it seemed to him it would be a serious mistake to have them blocked, “except for most compelling reasons.”<sup>20</sup> At this level, the objections advanced by Tovey were not considered “compelling”: the convoys were not restricted in size, but expanded successively as each one sailed, far beyond the prudent limits ascertained by the Admiralty’s operational research.

President Roosevelt informed Mr. Churchill soon afterward that there were, at the end of April, 107 ships loaded or being loaded in Britain and America; he wanted to see them being moved within the next month. On 2 May Churchill replied: “With very great respect, what you suggest is beyond our power to fulfil.” He could not, he said, press the Admiralty any further. Four days later Marshal Stalin was also approaching Churchill with a request to “take all possible measures” to ensure that the supplies reached Russia during May: “This is extremely important for our front.”

In that same month, Admiral Tovey went so far as to advocate a reduction in the number of convoys during the coming months. The improvement in the condition of the German bomber airfields and in their aerial reconnaissance service would greatly facilitate the enemy’s operations, while the ice-barrier would still not have receded far enough to the north to allow the convoys to evade them. Three bombing attacks had now been delivered on the anchored *Tirpitz* within a space of thirty days by RAF Bomber Command, but these costly operations had resulted in no hits at

all. And still the United States was insisting on first priority for the convoys.

It seemed there was little prospect of their reduction.

## 4

THERE IS no doubt that by now Adolf Hitler believed Germany's ultimate victory could depend on her destroying the greatest possible weight of Allied shipping tonnage. If they could achieve a steady attrition of the merchant fleets, they could slow down all the Allies' offensive operations or even choke them off altogether. In this connection he reaffirmed in mid-April that "attacks on the Murmansk convoys are most important at the moment."<sup>\*21</sup>

Grand-Admiral Raeder did not see the tactical conditions for a full-scale German fleet attack on the PQ convoys met as yet; but on 1 May a German naval operation was mounted with the objective of finishing off the British cruiser *Edinburgh* – crippled by a U-boat while proceeding about 15 miles ahead of the east-bound PQ.15 the day before. Admiral Hubert Schmundt, the German "Admiral Commanding, Arctic" (*Admiral Nordmeer*), sent out three destroyers, including the large destroyer *Hermann Schoemann* (Captain Schulze-Hinrichs), to finish off the British cruiser, lying disabled, her guns in studied disarray.

After a skirmish with four destroyers escorting the homeward convoy QP.11, the Germans found *Edinburgh* the next day with four smaller vessels fussing round her. They closed in for the kill. Against their expectations, the cruiser's main armament was not out of action, and as they manoeuvred into position to launch their torpedoes, *Edinburgh's* main batteries suddenly tracked

\* It is clear how he had come upon this strategy: "Time and again, Churchill speaks of shipping tonnage as his greatest worry." *Führer Naval Conference*, 13 February 1942.

---

---

round on them and opened fire. The cruiser's second salvo straddled the German flotilla leader *Hermann Schoemann*, stopped both her engines and smashed her funnel. The disabled destroyer had to be abandoned under heavy fire and scuttled by her crew. The survivors were picked up by another German destroyer and the submarine *U-88* (Lieutenant-Commander Heino Bohmann). The British attempt at salvaging *Edinburgh*, which had been hit by another torpedo, was given up soon after, and her flood valves were opened to sink her.<sup>22</sup>

In the meantime, the cruiser *Trinidad* had had her self-inflicted torpedo wound temporarily repaired at Murmansk. She left on 13 May *en route* for the U.S. for a more permanent refit. She was sighted by German aircraft the next day, bombed and abandoned.

THE LOSS of *Edinburgh* and *Trinidad* underlined to the British Commander-in-Chief the grave risk to which heavy naval vessels of convoy-covering forces were constantly exposed in the waters east of Bear Island, not only from German submarines but from German aircraft. For a great part of the route there were up to eight submarines operating against them, and the necessity for conserving fuel did not permit protracted anti-submarine chases; the submarines could be put down and harassed, but seldom destroyed. So although it was adequately recognised that the cruiser forces could provide effective cover only if in the immediate vicinity of the convoy, it was here that the cruisers were most endangered by enemy submarines.

The inevitable result was that just as the Germans were plagued by their "aircraft-carrier complex," so the British – smarting from the loss of their two cruisers – were now equally troubled by fears for their cruisers in the face of attacks by German submarines and bombers. Admiral Tovey went so far as to recommend that, unless the enemy airfields in northern Norway could be neutralised, or until the months of darkness returned, the con-

voys should be stopped altogether. "If they must continue for political reasons," he warned, "very serious and heavy losses must be expected."<sup>23</sup> But the political reasons were formidable. On 17 May the Prime Minister minuted the Chiefs of Staff Committee:

Not only Premier Stalin but President Roosevelt will object very much to our desisting from running the convoys now. The Russians are in heavy action, and will expect us to run the risk and pay the price entailed by our contribution. The United States ships are queuing up. My own feeling, mingled with much anxiety, is that the convoy [PQ.16] ought to sail on the 18th. The operation is justified if a half gets through.<sup>24</sup>

It was his view that to fail to make the attempt would weaken Britain's influence with both of her major allies, while on the other hand the vagaries of the Arctic weather or – failing that – good fortune might work on the British side.

The Admiralty did not share Mr. Churchill's callous sentiment. "These Russian convoys are becoming a regular millstone round our necks," Sir Dudley Pound told Admiral E. J. King, the American Chief of Naval Operations, on 18 May; and again: "The whole thing is a most unsound operation, with the dice loaded against us in every direction."<sup>25</sup> Pound's sentiments were echoed by every officer engaged on the north Russian convoy movements. But they were overruled, and the convoy operations were pressed to the inevitable climax which forms the central subject of this book.

5

THE CLEAR CONCLUSION drawn by the Germans from their light forces' sorties into the Barents Sea (on 23 March and 2 May) was that destroyer flotillas could not be matched against Allied con-

---

---

voys covered by cruisers if the Germans were not to suffer such casualties as to make these operations unprofitable.

The German Navy's heavy warships had been offered no opportunity to strike at Russian convoy traffic since the first alarming sortie of *Tirpitz* in March; as the Germans themselves admitted, their own aerial reconnaissance was still inadequate to permit major surface operations. *Tirpitz's* one brief March sweep with three destroyers had cost the German Navy some 7,500 tons of fuel oil, and the consequent critical logistic situation of the naval forces in Norway ruled out any extended fleet operation where the enemy had not been clearly identified and located first.<sup>26</sup> This did not affect the submarines; they operated on diesel oil, of which there was as yet no real shortage.

By the beginning of May, the offensive build-up ordered by the Führer two months before was taking effect: the Navy now had one battleship of no mean capabilities, two heavy cruisers, eight destroyers and twenty submarines stationed along the Norwegian coast at Trondheim, Narvik and Kirkenes. Of the twenty submarines, twelve had been allocated to the anti-convoy operations, the remainder being defensively deployed. The German Air Force had also taken immediate action to implement Hitler's order.

German airmen subsequently captured during the battle of PQ.17 described to British Intelligence officers how they had been on conversion courses for torpedo-bombers at Grosseto in Italy when "at about the end of March they were suddenly hurried through the remainder of the course" and sent up to Norway. By the beginning of May the first twelve torpedo-bombers – newly converted from standard Heinkel 111 medium bombers – had been delivered to their units in northern Norway.<sup>27</sup> Nine of the torpedo-bombers of their squadron, the first squadron of KG.26, had attacked Convoy PQ.15 on their first-ever sortie into the Arctic on 2 May; they claimed three sinkings.

---

By the second half of the month the German build-up was complete. The 11,000-ton heavy cruiser (“pocket-battleship”) *Lützow* had also arrived in Norway. All the German fleet units available were thus assembled there, waiting for the order from their Commander-in-Chief to mount the first all-out attack on an Allied eastbound convoy.

DESPITE THE FACT that this was the least favourable period of the year for convoys in the Arctic, PQ.16, which sailed with thirty-five merchant ships from Iceland on 20 May, was the largest convoy yet to leave for north Russia. A contemporary description by one of the American seamen sailing in this convoy gives the full flavour of the hazards of northern convoy duties. His ship was the elderly American freighter *Carlton*, laden with a cargo of explosives, tanks and tank ammunition and bound for Murmansk with a crew of forty-five seamen.

The 5,217-ton vessel had left Philadelphia in March, on the day before Hitler had signed the order for an intensification of attacks on Murmansk convoy traffic. To add to the freighter’s trials, it had sailed from Philadelphia on a Friday the Thirteenth. Even the novices among the freighter’s crew knew that this was cocking a snook at implacable Fate. The name *Carlton* was to hover over the disaster of PQ.17 like some bird of ill-omen. Everywhere she went, trouble and dislocation were churned up in her wake; even when the rusty tramp was finally sent down, the curse still did not desert her unhappy crew.

One of her seamen was James E. Akins, who wrote a contemporary record of the ship’s last voyage.<sup>28</sup> He had signed on in Philadelphia just before they sailed, and had learned only afterwards that the *Carlton* was destined for Murmansk. Akins was a cynic: “We were loaded with war materials including 450 tons of high explosive, loaded fore, aft and amidships: they were not taking any chances on our getting through to Russia.”

The *Carlton* proceeded alone to Halifax, Nova Scotia, her seamen gaining a grim forewarning of the hazards of their calling as they passed the steel ribs and skeletons of several ships claimed by prowling German submarines. One ship was a “Gulf” tanker. Her bows reared a hundred feet out of the sea like some ugly sentinel, marking the start of the 6,000-mile voyage to Russia. Off Halifax the *Carlton* lay idle for seven days. Then she left as part of an Atlantic convoy of sixty-five ships, some heading for Iceland and some for English ports.

On 20 May the *Carlton* sailed as part of PQ.16, the convoy bound for Murmansk.<sup>29</sup> The Germans planned to deliver their first major assault on this convoy, but because of the fuel shortage the surface warships were not included in the operation. The convoy was given a large escort – five destroyers, four corvettes, four trawlers, one minesweeper and an anti-aircraft ship, and there was a Sea Hurricane fighter-plane waiting on the CAM ship.\* As the days passed, the seamen also saw a plane circling the convoy all day long; it was only two days later, when a destroyer opened fire on it, that the Americans realised it was a German shadower.

The plane departed to the horizon and kept on circling there, unimpressed by the convoy’s escort’s fire. “I began to wonder,” said Akins, “how anyone got medals if this was what they called war.”

Three days later, on the 25th, he had his answer. A flight of eight bombers was seen approaching at low level on the horizon, while high overhead about twenty Junkers 88 dive-bombers appeared; one by one the latter peeled off and dived on the merchantmen. One plane flew close to *Carlton* and her gunners opened fire with their machine-guns, putting about five hundred rounds into the aircraft before it caught fire. A man baled

\* Catapult Aircraft Merchantman.

out, and the plane – the CAM ship’s Sea Hurricane – crashed into the sea.

The attack was hardly over before “eight bells” sounded and Akins went on watch as a lookout on the fo’c’s’le-head, directly above most of the ship’s explosive cargo in No. 1 hatch. He confessed that he would have given his right arm to have got out of that watch: “Another plane dived on us and gave us the works. There were three or four bombs within 3 feet of us, one by the poop deck, one by No. 4 and two amidships. They sank about 50 feet and then went off one at a time.” The ship was picked up “like an egg-shell” and Akins heard the Master shouting to the crew to stand by the lifeboats. He admitted breaking all speed records himself in reaching his lifeboat station.

When he arrived there, everything was blanketed in steam issuing from the engine-room. The *Carlton*’s Norwegian captain, Hansen, refused to abandon ship, but asked the chief engineer to see what damage had been done. “The chief engineer did not know, and looked like he didn’t care either; so Captain Hansen asked me to go and take a look around and find out about the damage. I said I was willing, but that as I was a sailor I wouldn’t know what damage there was when I saw it.”

Finally two seamen, one of them an oiler destined not to survive the German attack on PQ.17, went below. They reported that all the steam pipes were broken. Now Akins and the boatswain were sent below to take soundings in the shaft-alley, about as far below decks as human beings could penetrate: “We went all right, but not cheerfully.” They had taken the soundings when two more bombs detonated in close succession right next to the *Carlton*. Akins claimed to have beaten the boatswain back on to deck by 30 feet.

Two British destroyers came alongside the disabled freighter and regretted that they had orders to sink the vessel as she was holding up the escort. Captain Hansen asked the chief engineer

---

whether the damage could be repaired; the engineer replied that given about two hours he felt it could be done.

Hansen requested an escort to stay with him, as the convoy proper had now vanished. The escort commander gave him a trawler, *Northern Spray*, to tow them back to Iceland. "All this time the black gang [the engine-room crew] was on deck, refusing to go below until the chief engineer went too, as is customary in any emergency. Well, Captain Hansen gave them all quite a *spiel* and they all went below, leaving the chief engineer on deck 'to watch for planes.'"

Even then the *Carlton* was not left unmolested. About twelve laborious hours in tow of the tiny trawler, the nervous Americans – whose natural thirst for coffee was unfortunately unrequitable as the drinking-water had been polluted by a leaking oil line – spotted a second plane coming in to attack. The trawler opened fire at the German aircraft and the *Carlton* fired eighteen rounds from her 4-inch gun. The bomber dived too soon and its bombs fell some way short. As the aircraft flew over the freighter, it strafed them with machine-gun fire; the Americans claimed to have hit the plane.

As usual Akins was again on watch when a new threat arose: "The fourth mate, Franks, was giving us stuff about what we would do if anything bothered us now, when someone reported ships astern of us." The Americans were understandably jumpy and began visualising the whole German fleet closing in. Soon after, one of the warships sent off a plane, and the seamen saw to their relief that it had British roundels. The ships were the carrier *Victorious* with a screen of three destroyers. "They signalled, 'Congratulations on your lucky escape.'"

The American freighter limped back into Iceland on 30 May, and her seamen swarmed ashore "with visions of getting good and drunk," but the strongest beverage they could buy in Iceland was coffee. Akins expressed some dissatisfaction at the

---

almost indecent haste with which the ship was patched up and cleared for the next convoy's sailing: "I guess they figured, if we stayed any longer we would sink in the harbour." Their spirits somewhat impaired, the American seamen settled down for the long wait before the next convoy, PQ.17, was due to sail.

While the *Carlton* had still been on its way back to Iceland, the main air attacks on PQ.16 had begun, continuing almost without pause until 30 May; the Germans directed 245 bomber and torpedo-bomber sorties against the convoy, sinking five more ships and damaging three. The Germans believed they had sunk nine, a success which suggested to them that simultaneous attacks by high-level conventional bombers and low-level torpedo-bombers would present the Allied convoy defences with the maximum distraction.<sup>30</sup>

BY THE TIME PQ.17 finally sailed, toward the end of June, the German Air Force had amassed a mighty attacking force of aircraft in the vicinity of North Cape under the commanding general of the Fifth Air Force, Colonel-General Stumpff. The armada included 103 twin-engined Junkers 88 bombers, fifteen Heinkel 115 torpedo-bombers on floats, thirty Junkers 87 dive-bombers, and seventy-four reconnaissance aircraft, including the four-engined Focke-Wulf 200 – the "Condor" – the Junkers 88 and the Blohm & Voss 138. All forty-two of I./KG.26's Heinkel 111 torpedo-bombers had also been concentrated at Bardufoss, their training complete. Stumpff thus disposed of 264 operational combat aircraft for the strike.<sup>31</sup>

It should not be the thought that the whole German Air Force organisation in Norway was of an offensive nature: there was also an Air Force unit engaged solely on Intelligence work of the greatest importance. One company of the Air Force's Fifth Signals Regiment had been established at Kirkenes with the primary duty of monitoring and intercepting enemy radio transmissions,

---

whether they originated from the Western Allies or from the Russians; particularly important was the interception of wireless signals from aircraft.<sup>32</sup> The German cryptographic service was by that time at the high point of its efficiency, and we know now from German naval records that at the time Admiralty signals up to a certain level were regularly being intercepted and decoded. The service as a whole was so efficient that they were greatly worried lest the Allies realise the extent to which their wireless traffic was being overheard; reports originating from the Kirkenes unit were forwarded without details of how they had been obtained, in order not to compromise their method.

All the main German heavy vessels were now concentrated in Norwegian waters. The battleship *Tirpitz* was at Trondheim, together with the heavy cruiser *Admiral Hipper* and the Fifth and Sixth Destroyer Flotillas; and the rather slower “pocket-battleships” *Lützow* and *Scheer* together with the Eighth Destroyer Flotilla and the German “Leader of Flotillas” were farther north at Narvik. This disposition of the surface forces was dictated by the task that lay ahead of them. The units based on Trondheim were to form a “First Battle Group” – to term them a “squadron” implies too inflexible a grouping – under the tactical command of Admiral Schniewind, the Fleet Commander, wearing his Flag in *Tirpitz*; the Narvik units would form a “Second Battle Group” under Vice-Admiral Kummetz, Flag Officer Cruisers. (Schniewind had temporarily replaced Vice-Admiral Ciliax as Flag Officer Battleships during the latter’s illness.)<sup>33</sup>

At first Naval Group North, Schniewind’s operational superiors, were uneasy about the idea of committing their heavy warships to an attack on PQ.17. Late in May they pointed out that by the following month the ice-edge would have receded sufficiently far for the Air Force to have some difficulty in guaranteeing to locate the enemy’s heavy units – a prerequisite for any sortie of the German battle fleet. To preserve some element

---

of surprise, therefore, the group's commanding admiral, General-Admiral Carls, recommended that the Trondheim group should delay its move northward until *after* the next convoy, PQ.17, had been sighted, and then sail simultaneously with the pocket battleships while U-boats shadowed the convoy.<sup>34</sup>

Admiral Schniewind was more emphatically in favour of a major fleet operation, and when Grand-Admiral Raeder visited Trondheim on 30 May, the Fleet Commander took the opportunity to hand to his Commander-in-Chief his own fifteen-page appreciation of the naval situation in the Arctic. He stated that he was inclined to discount the frequent Intelligence reports warning of imminent Allied landings in Norway.

On the other hand, he believed the Allies would do all in their power to aid the Russians now that the German spring offensive had opened on the Eastern Front. Schniewind suggested a lightning demonstration of German naval superiority against the next Russian convoy. The ideal time for this would be June, when twenty-four hours of daylight would permit continuous aerial reconnaissance, and his own fleet had been strengthened in both destroyers and torpedo-boats.

Above all, Naval Group North had been allocated some 15,500 tons of fuel oil for its operations in June, a considerable improvement on the May position. In short, Admiral Schniewind recommended a "simultaneous attack by all naval units in northern waters, including *Tirpitz* and *Hipper*"; he believed the total destruction of a PQ convoy would have immense consequences on the development of the war at sea.<sup>35</sup>

The Naval Staff was in principle in favour of this proposal, and on 1 June Vice-Admiral Krancke, Raeder's permanent representative at the Führer's headquarters, was asked to inform Hitler that a plan was being weighed which would involve *Tirpitz* putting to sea.<sup>36</sup> June certainly seemed to be the most favourable month for such an operation: the period of spring storms would

---

---

be over, and the calmer seas would enable the destroyers to exploit their great speeds to the full. Sea fog was less prevalent in June, with an average of only nine days of fog compared with nineteen in July.

Against that, the ice-barrier would still stand so far to the south that any convoys were bound to pass within 220 or 240 miles\* of the German naval and air bases in northern Norway. If the German battle fleet were to lie low in these northernmost fiords, it could be near the convoy within eight hours of weighing anchor; it could strike at the convoy and be away before the distant cover force of the Allied battle fleet could arrive to offer battle. Past experience strongly suggested that the Allies would contain this force in an area to the west of Jan Mayen Island until then, so that it could equally keep one eye on the northern passages, to guard against a breakout by one of the pocket-battleships into the Atlantic Ocean.

On 4 June, Naval Group North drafted an operational directive for the attack on PQ.17, and General-Admiral Rolf Carls outlined the plan verbally to Admiral Schniewind, Admiral Schmundt (Admiral Commanding, Arctic) and the Fifth Air Force soon after. The written orders were marked Top Secret and endorsed, "Number of those in the know is to be restricted to very minimum."

Carls planned that at a given codeword, both battle groups would sail from their advanced bases at speeds and times adjusted so that they would arrive together at a rendezvous off North Cape, from which they would advance on, and destroy, the convoy. "Above all, the enemy's dispositions demand a swift assault and a brief operation. The primary object of the attack is the rapid destruction of enemy shipping space. To this end it will suffice for ships to cripple the freighters with gunfire . . . The

\* All "miles" in this book are nautical miles.

taking of prizes, especially tankers, is important.”<sup>37</sup> The operation was to be codenamed “*The Knight’s Move*.”

The Naval Staff in Berlin formally approved the group’s recommendations and the detailed suggestions put forward by Admiral Schniewind, but they learned soon after that Hitler was still reluctant to commit his heavy warships. Krancke informed them that the Führer was not wholeheartedly in agreement; on the other hand, he had not rejected the plan altogether.

This was a disappointment for the Naval Staff, but they directed Krancke to reassure Hitler that no kind of “gamble” was involved, and that they thought the operation of the highest importance. Hitler was also to be instructed that the operation’s total success would be in no small measure dependent on the degree of cooperation provided by the Air Force.<sup>38</sup> One suspects that in making this latter point the German Naval Staff were already preparing a possible excuse for failure later on.

At first the Air Force ran true to form. Its operations staff advised the Navy that while the Fifth Air Force would of course perform a reconnaissance function for the Navy, there could be no question of doing so at the expense of their bombing effort, which had been so dramatically demonstrated against PQ.16.

This suggestion that only the Air Force was of any consequence in the campaign against the Murmansk convoys greatly angered the Naval Staff, and they pointed out that impressive though the Air Force’s success against PQ.16 had been, it seemed that twenty-five ships had in fact reached Russia. “But an operation like *The Knight’s Move* promises the opportunity, given moderately favourable conditions, of *completely destroying a convoy down to its very last ship*.”<sup>39</sup>

In this vein, a detailed scheme was prepared for Admiral Krancke or – if he should see the Führer first – Grand-Admiral Raeder himself to put to Hitler, to persuade him to give his blessing to the operation.<sup>40</sup>

---

In the meantime, German photographic reconnaissance of Scapa Flow on the last day of May had shown a formidable collection of British and American warships lying at anchor there, including three battleships, three heavy cruisers, four light cruisers and twenty-two destroyers.

Agents' reports and aerial reconnaissance showed that there were further Allied warships gathering at Iceland – including aircraft-carriers.

Early in June, German agents reported convoy PQ.17 forming off the south-west coast of Iceland.

On 11 June Admiral Schmudt ordered his first three U-boats (*U-251*, *U-376* and *U-408*) to take up patrol positions in the Denmark Strait, watching for the first signs of PQ.17.

These U-boats were grouped into the "Ice Devil" pack.

To these and to the several U-boats that Schmudt ordered to sea in the next few days, the following instructions were issued:

During joint operations with our surface forces the following special orders will come into force on reception of code word *Concord*:

(a) positive shadowing of the convoy takes predominance over attacking it;

(b) surface forces from destroyers upward in size may be attacked only when positively identified as hostile. In thick weather or uncertain situations, all attacks on warships are prohibited;

(c) our surface forces have orders not to attack submarines, but otherwise to act as though submarines they meet are hostile.<sup>41</sup>

On 14 June, Admiral Schniewind completed his own operation order for *The Knight's Move*.<sup>42</sup> It was outlined by Raeder to Hitler at Berchtesgaden the next day.

---

What killed the convoy now was not an operational error, but a *surfeit* of Intelligence. On 18 June the British naval attaché in Stockholm, Captain Henry Denham, sent to London information obtained from Swedish Intelligence.

The Swedes had begun intercepting and decoding German landline communications to northern Norway, and in this way they had obtained and summarised the German fleet commander's operations order of 14 June as it was telexed to Narvik.

Denham's secret message to London read:

MOST IMMEDIATE.

Following is German plan for attack on next Russian convoy:

1. Air reconnaissance to locate eastbound convoy when it reaches Jan Mayen. Bombing attacks from bases in North Norway will then be made.

2. Pocket battleships and six destroyers will move to Altenfjord, and *Tirpitz* and *Hipper* to Narvik area, probably Bogen Fjord. Naval forces may be expected to operate from their anchorages once convoy has reached 5° East. Simultaneous attacks when convoy on meridian of Bear Island by two surface groups supported by U-boats and aircraft. Graded A-3.

How could Denham know that Hitler had on that very day intervened with his crippling stipulations?

## The Knight's Move

*Saturday, 15 June – Wednesday, 1 July*

*When the chances on both sides are equal, it is Intelligence that makes one able to look down on one's opponent, and which proceeds not by hoping for the best (a method only valuable in desperate situations) but by estimating what the facts are, and thus obtaining a clearer vision of what to expect.*

— PERICLES TO THE ATHENIANS, IN  
THUCYDIDES' PELOPONNESIAN  
WAR, BOOK TWO

THE BRIEF LEAVE which Hitler had planned for himself in his private home, the Berghof, at Berchtesgaden during early May 1942 had been interrupted by an unseasonal fall of snow; Hitler disliked snow, and he had curtailed his holiday. On 11 June, he left Munich in his special train to resume his leave at Berchtesgaden.<sup>1</sup>

Four evenings later, Grand-Admiral Raeder, his Chief of Naval Staff, hurried to Berchtesgaden from Berlin to broach to the Führer the plan for the battle fleet's attack on convoy PQ.17. He described to Hitler in detail how their naval forces, including the German capital ships, planned to execute *The Knight's Move*, and drew particular attention to the favourable weather to be expected during June.<sup>2</sup>

He assured Hitler that the operation would be executed only if air reconnaissance had established with certainty that the fleet ran no risk of becoming embroiled with superior enemy forces.

Hitler showed that one aspect of the operation was still causing him anxiety, and Raeder afterwards wrote:

The Führer considers aircraft-carriers a great threat to the large vessels. The aircraft-carriers must be located *before* the attack and they must be rendered harmless by our aircraft (Junkers 88s) beforehand.

The only acceptable alternative to this would be if the carrier forces were found to be so distant as to rule out any possibility of their intervening against the German battle fleet before it had broken off its operations and withdrawn. Raeder stressed to Hitler that the Navy was dependent on the Air Force for adequate aerial reconnaissance; he suggested that the Air Force concentrate on this even at the expense of participating in the attack on the convoy. Given the Navy’s prospects of obtaining a total victory with their warships alone, this seemed a not unreasonable request. (In the event, air reconnaissance was to prove the operation’s weakest link.) To all this Hitler agreed, and he approved Raeder’s plan for the two battle groups to transfer to advanced bases in the far north as soon as the convoy was sighted.

Raeder specifically minuted that the actual order to sail would be “subject to the Führer’s approval.”

THE OPERATION order issued for *The Knight’s Move* by Admiral Schniewind from his flagship *Tirpitz* on the day before this Berchtesgaden conference had dealt with every likely contingency. The objective was “the annihilation of the PQ convoy in collaboration with U-boats and the Air Force.”<sup>3</sup> The strategic purpose of the attack was the destruction of the enemy’s shipping capacity; the sinking of the actual cargoes carried was of secondary importance. Enemy escort vessels were to be neutralised only in so far as necessary for the achievement of

---

---

this objective. According to the German Intelligence service, the convoy was due off Jan Mayen Island on about 20 June. Previous convoys had steamed hard up against the ice-barrier in a broad pattern of four or five columns, escorted by one or two cruisers and several submarines.

PQ.16 in particular had also been screened by about five destroyers proceeding 3 to 10 miles ahead of the convoy and a number of destroyers on either flank and bringing up the rear. It was believed to have been met by an escort of Russian destroyers and submarines from about 35° East onward.

A force consisting of one or two battleships, an aircraft-carrier, cruisers and destroyers had stood in its usual covering position between Iceland and Jan Mayen Island, while a cruiser covering force of two heavy and two light cruisers and a destroyer screen had accompanied PQ.16 to about 10° East, at which meridian it had turned back. On that occasion, the Allies had flown continuous reconnaissance sorties over Trondheim and Narvik, both before and during the convoy's passage, watching for German fleet movements.

The command structure for *The Knight's Move* was complex and confused, and Schniewind saw in this a source of possible embarrassment later.

While he himself would retain tactical control of the sortie from his flagship, operational control was vested in General-Admiral Carls at Naval Group North headquarters in Kiel; Carls would assume command of all naval forces, both surface and submarine, during the actual sortie.

The movements and operations of the U-boats would be the immediate responsibility of the Admiral Commanding, Arctic, Hubert Schmudt, who would remain at Narvik aboard his command vessel *Tanga*. His office would repeat all submarine signals, sighting reports and the like to the fleet commander, Schniewind, in *Tirpitz*. Schmudt's communications with the Air Force units

---

---

were even less direct, and on several occasions during the coming operation Intelligence derived by Air Force units was to take an inordinate time reaching his headquarters at Narvik.<sup>4</sup>

The reason was that the Oslo-based Fifth Air Force, in overall charge of the air operations, had established a forward headquarters at Kemi, and as wireless traffic between the two headquarters could be intercepted by the enemy, all communication had to be conducted by time-consuming coded teleprinter signals over a thousand miles of landline which – the Germans believed – could not be monitored by unfriendly ears.<sup>4</sup> The links between Oslo and Narvik, and between the various naval headquarters, were of a similar nature.

The German Navy’s entire available strength in Norway was to become concentrated on the convoy: the First Battle Group, comprising *Tirpitz*, *Admiral Hipper*, five destroyers of the Fifth and Sixth Flotillas and two torpedo-boats, all currently at Trondheim; and the Second Battle Group, consisting of *Lützow* – flagship of the Flag Officer Cruisers, Vice-Admiral Kummert – and *Admiral Scheer*, and five destroyers of the Eighth Flotilla, all stationed at Narvik.

The potency of this battle fleet cannot be over-emphasised: the formidable armament of the new battleship *Tirpitz*, mounting eight 15-inch guns, has already been referred to; *Admiral Hipper* mounted the more conventional 8-inch guns, but both *Admiral Scheer* and *Lützow* had 11-inch guns as their main armament.<sup>5</sup>

As soon as the preparative order had been issued, all the warships would transfer northward to advanced bases.

The First Battle Group would transfer from Trondheim Fiord to the Gimsøy narrows, in Vestfiord, while the somewhat slower Second Battle Group would transfer from Narvik right up to the northern reaches of Altenfiord, the Leads at Sorøy being suggested for their wait.

---

There the destroyers would complete with fuel oil from oilers awaiting them.\* Both battle groups were to be ready to sail within twenty-four hours of leaving for these advance bases.

As soon as aerial reconnaissance had detected the approach of the Allied convoy, and the codeword had been issued for the attack by Naval Group North in Kiel, both battle groups would sail at their respective maximum speeds, enabling them to join up about 100 miles to the north-west of North Cape, having by then covered about half the run to the chosen battleground east of Bear Island. *East* of Bear Island! It was to the west of this dreary, uninhabited hummock in the middle of the Arctic that Admiral Sir John Tovey had anticipated that the German fleet's attack would develop. But Schniewind was quite plain about this:

The most favourable conditions for the attack are at present met in the sea area to the east of Bear Island and between about 20° and 30° East.

At least four hours before action was joined, Schniewind was to pass details of the probable timing, location and direction of the German attack to the command authorities ashore by means of a message flown off by one of his ship's aircraft – *not* by wireless telegraphy, which might be intercepted by the enemy. The two torpedo-boats were to await the return of the battle fleet to the Leads off North Cape.

In the meantime, the German Air Force was expected to carry out continuous sweeps reconnoitring the sea routes along which the warships planned to advance on the convoy, beginning some five hours before the battle fleet weighed anchor, and extending

\* The destroyers of the First Battle Group to oil from *Nordmark*, *Tiger*, and – if necessary – from *Tirpitz* herself; those of the Second Battle Group from *Dithmarschen*.

200 miles out from the coast in an arc subtended by the latitude of 68° North and the meridian of 25° East.

The Fifth Air Force had also been requested to lay on fighter cover for the fleet both as it lay in wait at its northern bases and during its outward and inward movements, for as far as fighter endurance would permit.

Schniewind realised that it was imperative for the battle fleet to attack and wipe out the convoy in one rapid, concentrated strike before the Allied fleet could rush down to intervene; hence the need for reliable air reconnaissance all the time.

He intended, if the convoy should prove to be escorted by several heavier naval units, to attack with both battle groups in concert from one side of the convoy. The elimination of any cruiser covering force would fall to the First Battle Group – *Tirpitz* and *Hipper* – while the remaining warships would deal with the light forces and merchant vessels. Action with superior or equal forces was to be avoided at all costs. The German battle fleet would circle round to surprise the enemy from ahead, where they would be least expected. If on the other hand he had reliable information that the convoy’s cover consisted of only one or two cruisers, then he would order an enveloping attack, the battle groups attacking from both sides of the convoy right from the start, ensuring even swifter destruction.

Should the convoy be hugging the ice-barrier, he would open the action by circling right round to the north to force the ships away from the ice, thus enabling his destroyers to deliver their attacks unhampered by icefloes.

There was one other possibility for which Schniewind had to prepare – the unlikely event that the Allies should accompany the convoy for part of its voyage with a heavy covering force including one or more battleships.

He would then continue to press his attack, but only so long as the balance of strength allowed any prospect of neutralising the

---

Allied strength. Again, it was no part of German naval strategy to engage superior enemy forces.

Admiral Schniewind envisaged the fleet against convoy PQ.17 taking the following course: the first battle group to sight the convoy would alarm the other by signal lamp. The enemy's warships would probably at once come out to offer battle, while the convoy escaped under a smokescreen. The enemy would probably send in their destroyers first to launch a torpedo attack; then they would endeavour to lure the German battle fleet over the waiting Allied submarines that would have accompanied the convoy.

The counter-measure would be to keep on the move, while each ship's guns opened fire on several targets from the start, as the battle fleet – and primarily *Tirpitz* and *Admiral Hipper* – set about annihilating the cruisers accompanying the convoy. The German destroyer flotillas were to engage the enemy destroyers and prevent them from manoeuvring for torpedo attacks, while they themselves were to seize every opportunity of launching torpedo attacks on the enemy's cruisers and – if the range were to close far enough – on the enemy's destroyers and merchant ships as well. But these diversions were not to jeopardise their main rôle of screening the heavy German warships. The German battle fleet might open fire on any merchant ships coming within range as soon as opportunities presented themselves, even during the preliminary action with the covering forces; but once this action was over, and the convoy's covering forces were on the run, the real massacre would begin.

For the attack on the convoy it would be sufficient to cripple the merchant ships.

There was neither time for nor sense in waiting to finish off each one; the disabled freighters could be sunk afterward by the following U-boats and bomber aircraft. If possible, prizes were to be taken by the destroyers, particularly any tankers in the con-

voy, but only if there was no likelihood of new enemy forces arriving on the scene and turning the tables.

They might also attempt to force enemy freighters from the convoy to steer for German-occupied ports, without attempting to set a prize-crew aboard each one. Destroyers might attempt to take some prisoners for Intelligence purposes, but their primary rôle was unchanged: screening the capital ships.

Visibility on the field of battle would be poor, with fires, fumes, smokescreens and possibly fog. German warships were enjoined to exercise especial care not to engage their own ships; their attention was called to their radar device enabling them to distinguish friend from foe.

The German U-boats were for their part directed not to fire torpedoes during the battle unless their targets had been identified beyond all doubt as Allied. Any submarines encountered, on the other hand, were to be treated as hostile to the extent of forcing them to dive, without actually sinking them. The German bomber crews were reminded that the roofs and sides of gun turrets on German ships were painted luminous yellow, while large red-white-and-black swastikas were painted on the fore-and-afterdecks, should there still be any doubt in their minds.

The task of the German Air Force would be to locate and shadow PQ.17 and its covering force, the latter particularly as it passed through the area between 15° and 30° East, paying special attention to the number – if any – of battleships and cruisers, to the convoy’s distance from the ice-barrier, to the composition and deployment of the convoy’s close escorts, to whether there were any submarines or fighter aircraft among its defences, and to obtaining general meteorological information just prior to the battle’s commencement.

The Allied naval bases were to be kept under constant surveillance too. Once the battle had begun, the Air Force was to provide spotter planes as well. Finally, the Fifth Air Force was asked to

arrange a mass bombing attack on the convoy just before the arrival of the German battle fleet, allowing the latter to exploit any confusion and disarray to the full.

After the action was over, all destroyers were to keep at least three torpedoes in reserve for possible actions on the homeward run. Admiral Schniewind ended with a sober provision for disaster: “The tugs *Atlantik* and *Pelworm* are to stand by at instant readiness at Narvik, as soon as the First Battle Group has put to sea from its advanced base.”

On 16 June Admiral Schmudt ordered *U-657* to sea with *U-88*. *U-355* was already putting out from Narvik, and *U-334* had left Trondheim the previous day. On the 17th, he ordered *U-457* to sail from Trondheim the next day, and on the 23rd he ordered *U-255* and *U-456* to put out of Narvik and Bergen respectively. All these U-boats received the same orders, and all were to join the “Ice Devil” pack being formed to fight convoy PQ.17.<sup>6\*</sup> But the middle of June, which the “rhythm” of previous convoy sailings had suggested would be the time for the sailing of PQ.17, had come and gone, and still the convoy had not been sighted.

The German Air Force had completely reversed its attitude toward the Navy and now promised to carry out total air reconnaissance up to a radius of 300 miles off North Cape, with fresh reconnaissance available at four hours’ notice. This far exceeded the Navy’s wildest expectations, and made success for *The Knight’s Move* a virtual certainty. Word was passed to von Puttkamer, Hitler’s naval adjutant, about this development at once.<sup>7</sup>

Despite the lack of hard information on the convoy’s departure, the German Naval Staff judged by the end of June that the

\* Nine U-boats were now at sea: *U-88* (Bohmann); *U-251* (Timm); *U-255* (Reche); *U-334* (Siemon); *U-355* (La Baume); *U-376* (Marks); *U-408* (von Hymmen); *U-456* (Teichert); and *U-457* (Brandenburg). Two more U-boats, *U-657* (Göllnitz) and *U-703* (Bielfeld), were later attached to the Ice Devil pack for the attack on PQ.17.

time had come to throw a spanner into the works of any Allied plan for a battleship force to cover PQ.17 so far east as to make it impossible for *Tirpitz* to attack safely. On 29 June, arrangements were made for “reliable” information to be channelled into the British Intelligence network to the effect that the pocket-battleships *Admiral Scheer* and *Lützow* were fully provisioned and ready to break out together into the Atlantic “through the Denmark Strait” as soon as weather permitted. The ships were to be correctly described as lying at Narvik.<sup>8</sup>

At last the nerve-wracking inactivity of the ten U-boats sent out by Admiral Schmudt to patrol south of Jan Mayen Island seemed over: at 4.40 P.M. on 30 June air reconnaissance glimpsed a large westbound convoy, QP.13, only 180 miles north of North Cape.<sup>9</sup> Now Naval Group North knew that PQ.17 must also have sailed. Somewhere, *The Knight’s Move’s* victim was at sea.

## 2

DURING JUNE, the backlog of shipping in Icelandic ports had assumed considerable proportions. In Reykjavik there were dozens of ships awaiting the formation of convoys. The protracted delays and the waiting at anchor among the steep and icy cliffs led to increasing unrest among the Allied merchant crews, already taxed to the utmost by the unwelcome prospect of the hazardous duty that lay ahead. The crews of earlier convoys had run amok in Iceland, enraging the local populace by starting costly battles using precious eider eggs as missiles, and by “fraternising” with the women. All shore-leave had been cancelled.

Two-thirds of PQ.17’s ships were American, and the United States had been at war only six months. Their merchant ships were still crewed by an unhappy mixture of extravagantly paid (\$500 a month plus danger-money) professional seamen, mer-

---

cenaries and an international mob of cut-throat nomads. Each had been provided with an “armed guard” of American servicemen to man the guns. Typical of the ships was the *Troubadour*, a 5,808-ton tramp built 22 years before by an English firm and already a veteran of both the Belgian and the Italian merchant marines. Now she was American-owned, but flew the Panamanian flag – a rusting steamer that had been scuttled by her truculent crew at Jacksonville when America entered the war, and now boasted a seventeen-nation crew of ex-convicts and the rakings of the U.S. deportation camps. While at anchor in New York harbour a month before, the ship’s ammunition magazine had been deliberately flooded “by a person or persons unknown.” Eight Colt automatic pistols had been issued to the naval Armed Guard officers shortly before sailing: “This was considered necessary in view of the conduct of the ship’s crew.”

In Iceland on 20 June, twenty members of *Troubadour*’s crew mutinied, having been told their ship was now bound for Russia. They sent a deputation up to their Master, the Norwegian Captain George Salvesen, and told him they refused to take the ship any farther. The Reykjavik port director ordered Salvesen to use his ship’s Armed Guard to quell the mutiny.

The American naval gunners rounded up the seamen and barricaded a dozen of them in a stinking hold in the forepeak area, in “very crowded, foul conditions.” The seamen held out there under Armed Guard for 50 hours and then surrendered. “We didn’t have any more appreciable trouble until the convoy reached Russia,” reported the Armed Guard officer, Ensign Howard E. Carraway, to his superiors.<sup>10\*</sup>

\* In Archangel, following trouble over women, the ship’s crew was again imprisoned in a tiny hold, for 2½ weeks this time. They were eventually turned over to the Russian penal authorities. The ship’s Master, two officers and Carraway were cleared at a Court of Inquiry subsequently held by the War Shipping Administration.<sup>10</sup>

---

The days rolled by and still the merchant ships lay at anchor there. Early in June, the Chief of Naval Operations in Washington had been advised that the British Admiralty had postponed PQ.17’s departure until the 24th, but that the number of ships in this and the following convoys was to remain unchanged. A week later Washington had again been advised that PQ.17 was to depart on 24 June, but that date came and went, and still the convoy had not sailed. At about the same time, the American naval authorities learned that the normal rule – that there must be sufficient lifeboat capacity *on each side* of a ship to accommodate all its crew – had been waived by the British Ministry of War Transport, provided the ship had enough rafts and floats. This relaxation of the rules would not in itself be dangerous – provided the ship remained in convoy with other vessels, of course.<sup>11</sup>

In Iceland, the American seamen were not allowed to listen to the wireless, so they built their own illicit sets and even tuned in to the broadcasts of William Joyce (“Lord Haw-Haw”) beamed from Germany. Joyce’s warning, shortly before PQ.17 sailed, to American seamen to stay out of the Barents Sea caused them great amusement. The seamen naturally preferred the BBC’s more palliatory bulletins on the shipping war. “We were to learn later to our disgust the loose manner in which the BBC handled the truth,” an officer of the American *Bellingham* said.<sup>12</sup>

DURING JUNE, Allied Intelligence had appreciated that the Germans intended to employ their heavy surface ships to attack the next eastbound convoy, PQ.17, east of Bear Island.<sup>13</sup> This was a reversal of the tactics previously expected of the enemy, and one might have expected that the Admiralty would persuade the British Government to postpone the operation until conditions were less favourable to the enemy. As it was, the political pressure was the stronger, and the decision was taken to sail the convoy, even

---

though the Cabinet knew their naval forces could not protect it in the area where the German battle fleet planned to attack it. This was the point of error; but apparently PQ.17, like its predecessor, would be considered “justified” even if only half got through.

The Cabinet had given the British Admiralty a task which it could not possibly perform.

If *Tirpitz* were to attack east of Bear Island, circumstances would be wholly in her favour; she would be fighting close to friendly shores, under a powerful air “umbrella,” with the maximum co-operation of the German reconnaissance and bomber forces assembled at North Cape. The Allied naval forces would have no shore-based air support in these waters; they would be a thousand miles from base and their destroyers would have insufficient fuel to escort a damaged ship to harbour.

There seemed to Admiral Tovey, Commander-in-Chief of the Home Fleet, only two ways of successfully challenging a German surface attack on PQ.17: the Allied submarines stationed off the Norwegian coast could attempt to stop the German battle fleet – at best a meagre chance; or alternatively, by a ruse, the enemy heavy ships could be lured farther westward than they had bargained for, lured westward onto the guns of Tovey’s distant battle fleet.

This latter could be achieved, as Tovey suggested to the Admiralty, by turning the convoy back as it reached about 10° East, at which juncture the German battle fleet would probably have been sailed. The convoy would retrace its path for 12 to 18 hours, in the hope that the German battle fleet would either be tempted to search westward for the reported convoy – bringing them within range of the cruising Home Fleet – or would at least be obliged to move for an extended period in the waters off North Cape, where the Allied submarines were waiting for them. Tovey’s proposal – which later study of German intentions suggests

---

would not have met with success – was soon after disapproved by the Admiralty.

Admiral Tovey’s distant covering force would consist of the battleships *Duke of York* (his flagship) and *Washington* (the latter wearing the flag of Rear-Admiral R. C. Giffen, USN, commanding the American Task Force 99); three cruisers, the aircraft-carrier *Victorious* and fourteen destroyers were also included in the force, which would stand to the north-east of Jan Mayen Island. PQ.17 was the first such operation for which a substantial American force had been subordinated to British command. Tovey issued orders according to which the British cruiser *London* (wearing the flag of Rear-Admiral L. H. K. Hamilton, commanding the First Cruiser Squadron), together with the cruisers HMS *Norfolk*, USS *Wichita* and USS *Tuscaloosa* would form a “cruiser covering force” for PQ.17, screened by three destroyers – USS *Wainwright* (Captain Don P. Moon, USN, ComDesRon 8), USS *Rowan* and HMS *Somali* (Sixth Destroyer Flotilla leader).<sup>14</sup> A signal was accordingly made to *Wichita*, on patrol in the Denmark Strait, ordering her to depart forthwith for Hvalfjord in Iceland. On the same day, Admiral Tovey instructed the cruiser covering force to be prepared to reach the vicinity of PQ.17 on 2 July, and to remain in a covering position until 4 July, “or as circumstances dictate.”<sup>15</sup>

The convoy would, as before, be provided with a close escort, with Commander J. E. Broome, RN, as Senior Officer Escort. Broome’s force would comprise no fewer than six destroyers, four corvettes, three minesweepers, two anti-aircraft ships and four trawlers as a measure of protection against German submarines and aircraft throughout the whole of the convoy’s passage. There were also two submarines in the convoy, which would remain concealed from the enemy as far as possible; should a German surface attack develop, they were to endeavour to attack the German heavy vessels.

---

REAR-ADMIRAL L. H. K. Hamilton had been appointed to the command of the First Cruiser Squadron four months before. Known as “Turtle” Hamilton not only to his family but throughout the Royal Navy, he had been one of the original Osborne cadets in 1903. After going on to Dartmouth, he had passed out of the training cruiser *Cumberland* with the King’s Gold Medal for the “most gentleman-like bearing,” and for his good influence on his fellow cadets.

The Royal Navy was his life’s career, and he viewed its detractors with proud disdain. In 1915 he had been awarded his first DSO for an expedition several hundred miles inland in an Army support operation in West Africa. After commanding both *Norfolk* and *Delhi*, he was given command of *Aurora* in January 1940, winning a bar to his DSO during the ill-fated Norwegian campaign. In a service noted for its rivalry, Hamilton was universally popular with all ranks. He was a humane officer and a chivalrous warrior, a man who wrote a weekly letter to his mother (“My Dear Mum . . .”) in London, a regular correspondence which paused momentarily only for the black week surrounding the events depicted in this book.

When he was promoted to Rear-Admiral in the spring of 1941, Hamilton had been one of the first to disapprove: it represented a first departure from a naval tradition of two centuries whereby promotion to flag rank went by seniority alone. He had been given command of the First Cruiser Squadron only in February 1942. In many respects, he was old-fashioned in his service outlook: he took the cruiser *London* as his flagship, as *Norfolk* had the Senior Captain in the squadron and he preferred a junior Flag Captain.

Like other senior officers in the Navy, he did not worship Mr. Churchill, nor could he stomach the “Winnie’s back!” idolatry surrounding the man who had twice been First Lord of the Admiralty at hours of deep disgrace for the Navy. He regarded

Churchill as “the complete dictator,” with an unbridled lust for power, unable to brook opposition from any quarter.

Hamilton’s letters home were an interesting reflection on how feeling was running in the fleet. In particular, he saw in Churchill the man who was deliberately starving the Navy of vital air-power, in order to wage a ruthless and immoral campaign against the civilians of his enemy. Since all senior officers who were to participate in the tragedy of convoy PQ.17 were later to agree that the provision of long-range reconnaissance and submarine-hunting aircraft in adequate numbers, not to mention long-range fighter escort and bomber support operations, would have averted the disaster, Hamilton’s views were of some significance.

He wrote that he hoped that the recent loss of *Prince of Wales* and *Repulse* to Japanese torpedo-bombers, and the escape of the German battleships from Brest, would bring the Cabinet to its senses. Hamilton realised that the loss of *Prince of Wales* would lead to the loss of Singapore, and probably Rangoon and the Dutch East Indies as well, but he hoped that the loss of command of the sea in the East was only temporary: that once it was won back, all those places would quite easily be recaptured too.

“The side of the war that really interests me at the moment,” wrote Hamilton,

is how strongly Winston is going to deal with the RAF after the *Prince of Wales*, followed by the escape of the German ships.

The whole question has, of course, been blatantly obvious to the naval officer since the beginning of the war, and now it must be obvious even to Winston in spite of his prejudice against the Navy. We are a hopelessly unmilitary nation to imagine that we could win the war by bombing German women and children instead of defeating their Army and Navy.<sup>16</sup>

Mr. Churchill he compared unfavourably with Sir Frederick Richards,\* the terror of politicians at the turn of the century, a “first naval lord” of stubborn will and impervious to argument when the interests of the Navy were at stake: “We should be better off now if more of our First Lords before the war had been more like him!”

Was not the aeroplane as much a naval weapon now as a submarine or a destroyer? “As you know,” he wrote again to his mother on 11 April, “I have always maintained that the lack of a proper Naval Air Service was the greatest handicap we fought under. It has now become an urgent requirement if we are going to win the war. It makes me mad to see the air strength of the country being devoted to killing a few women and children in Germany, whilst our fleet and Empire are being lost to the Japanese daily.”

To say that the advent of air-power had “done away” with battleships was nonsense: “It has done away with our battleships, because we have been starved of fighter protection.”<sup>17</sup>

While Tovey seriously considered the sinking of *Tirpitz* to be “of incomparably greater importance to the conduct of the war than the safety of any convoy,” Hamilton expressed it as his view that no other single event could have so profound an effect on the course of the war. Five days after *Victorious*’s carrier-aircraft attack on *Tirpitz* in March, Hamilton had written, “That ship is an infernal nuisance and the most important business of the war at the present time is to cripple or destroy her. It would just make the whole difference in the way of freeing ships for other theatres.” And again: “I still think that the most pressing require-

\* Sir Frederick Richards (1833-1912) was one of the leading administrators in the history of the Royal Navy. In carrying through his 1895 naval reconstruction programme, he and Lord Spencer overcame the most formidable opposition from Mr Gladstone, which eventually was one of the causes of the latter’s retirement from office. *British Naval Policy 1880-1905*.

ment of the war is to dispose of the *Tirpitz*, then things would begin to straighten out a bit.”<sup>18</sup>

ON THE MORNING of 25 June, two days out from Scapa Flow, Hamilton’s flagship *London* anchored in Hvalfiord, Iceland, where the American battleship *Washington* and the American cruisers *Wichita* and *Tuscaloosa* already lay.<sup>19</sup> Some hours later, Lieutenant Douglas Fairbanks Jr., USNR, Admiral Giffen’s Flag Lieutenant, reported aboard the *Wichita* for “temporary additional duty”; during the operation that was to follow, Fairbanks wrote an hour-by-hour chronicle of the events in the cruiser force for his admiral’s personal files.<sup>20</sup>

This diary captures better than any other contemporary record the mood and feelings of the American sailors throughout the operation.

Fairbanks was immediately taken before *Wichita*’s Executive Officer, Commander Orem, and the need for utmost secrecy about the coming operation was impressed on him.

“Other than Captain Hill and Commander Orem no one aboard knows where we are going or what our mission is to be,” wrote Fairbanks.

That the whole ship’s company “smells something is in the wind” is certain. A seaman’s intuition is very strong and his common sense is stronger. He can, for instance, see that about three dozen heavily laden merchant ships are riding at anchor in the narrow harbour of Hvalfiordur. He sees HMS *Kent* and HMS *London* put into port while their captains accompany their admiral about their ship for a dinner, which seems to be as much for business as for pleasure.

The visiting officers vanished from the curious gaze of the American bluejackets and the luncheon party began. Admiral

Burrough, Hamilton's predecessor, once described this fore-gathering as "a picking of each other's brains."

Admiral Giffen, Admiral Hamilton and the latter's Flag Captain, R. M. Servaes, were joined round the table by Rear-Admiral "Freddie" Dalrymple-Hamilton, the Admiral Commanding Iceland, and the captains of all the other heavy warships and their destroyer screen.

The captains of *Kent* and *London* described the experiences they had had during previous north Russian convoy operations, and then Hamilton outlined the Admiralty's plans for the operation that lay ahead of them.

The convoy itself would be escorted by the strongest force of destroyers, corvettes and anti-submarine vessels ever employed, and the four cruisers of the cruiser covering force would be covering the convoy from a position out of sight, over the horizon, with the primary duty of engaging any enemy surface forces which might come out. At the moment it was known that *Lützow* and *Admiral Scheer* were at Narvik, ready to attack when word was given.

Once the convoy had safely passed what Hamilton decided was the danger zone, as far as surface attack was concerned, the cruisers were to return. Should the convoy sustain serious casualties, the three rescue ships sailing with it were to proceed straight to Archangel and discharge their wounded at a hospital there.

Some way to the south, the main forces of the Home Fleet would be on patrol, ready to intervene should the Germans decide to operate *Tirpitz* against the convoy. More than one of the officers present hoped they were on the eve of an historic naval engagement; none doubted what its outcome would be.

Admiral Giffen, who had previously flown his flag from *Wichita*, took leave of his old friends aboard her and returned to the battleship *Washington*. At 5 P.M. *Washington* sailed, bearing Giffen to Scapa Flow to join the main body of the Home Fleet. Commander

Orem sent a farewell signal to Giffen and his staff containing a private joke and ending: “Happy cruising.”

As the battleship, accompanied by four destroyers, steamed slowly out of Hvalfiord, Giffen signalled back: “The best of luck, and remember science and skill cannot but prevail over ignorance and superstition.”

Giffen’s former Flag Captain, Captain Hill of *Wichita*, replied with a further traditional pleasantry: “Many thanks. Will try to call signals just as if the Old Master were in the center of the huddle.”<sup>21</sup> By then the ships were no longer in sight of each other, and the clattering signal lanterns fell silent.

Rear-Admiral Hamilton returned to London and wrote out his operational orders to the cruisers. “The primary object,” he stressed, “is still to get PQ.17 to Russia, but an object only slightly subsidiary is to provide an opportunity for the enemy’s heavy ships to be brought to action by our battle fleet and cruiser covering force.”

To increase the chance of bringing the German heavy ships to action, it was proposed to turn PQ.17 back on its tracks for a while on reaching the meridian of 10° East.

It is thus hoped to lure the enemy further from his bases or keep him longer at sea in our submarine zones.

In effect, the convoy operation was to be a trap set to catch *Tirpitz*, with over thirty heavily-laden ships, mostly American, as bait. The goat would have been tied to the tree; everything would depend on the hunter’s getting to his place before the tiger reached the goat. It would also depend on the hunter keeping his nerve, but this was only to be realised afterward.

Hamilton correctly guessed that *Tirpitz* and *Admiral Hipper* would probably operate as one battle group, because of their comparable speeds, while the pocket-battleships *Admiral Scheer*

---

and *Lützow* would form a second battle group. British submarines had been stationed off north-western Norway, and until the eighth day of the convoy's passage (4 July) the Home Fleet would occupy its distant covering position, from which it could fly off torpedo aircraft to reach the convoy in time should the German battle fleet suddenly appear. (Hitler had shown considerable prudence in warning Raeder to find out what the Allied aircraft-carriers were up to before allowing the battle fleet to sail.)

The four cruisers would remain in the convoy's immediate vicinity until about the eighth day or "longer if circumstances dictate."

It was not Hamilton's intention to allow his cruiser force to come within range of German aircraft or enemy submarine concentrations; he was not there to provide anti-aircraft fire during air attacks on the convoy but to protect it from surface force attack. This was a significant departure from the practice of his predecessor during PQ.16. For tactical reasons, Hamilton's force would remain out of sight of the convoy to the north for the greater part of the voyage.

Having talked with the other commanding officers, Hamilton also knew what he intended to do should a German surface attack develop: he would close the enemy rapidly to about 14,000 yards, having flown off his cruisers' spotting aircraft beforehand if possible (his force disposed of eleven aircraft altogether). If there should prove to be only one German raider, the cruisers would move out to engage it from well-separated bearings, while the destroyers would lay smokescreens or carry out torpedo attacks. If there were two enemy warships, his two divisions would each engage one, on well-separated bearings, using flank-marking procedure. But if – as the Germans planned – the *Tirpitz* were to be included in the raiding force, then the cruiser squadron's orders were primarily to scout and decoy:

It is not my intention to engage any enemy unit which includes *Tirpitz*, who must be shadowed at long range and led to a position at which interception can be achieved by the Commander-in-Chief.<sup>22</sup>

On the following morning Hamilton ordered complete wireless silence at the Icelandic naval bases where the forces covering the convoy were assembling. At noon, he summoned a formal conference of the American commanding officers and went over every aspect of his operational orders and the tactics likely to be employed against the two German pocket-battleships if they should make a showing. The American cruiser captains were confident that their effective range on opening fire could be as great as 21,000 yards, and said so. They seemed puzzled by the British tactics. Hamilton recorded that “although they might still find our methods strange,” the Americans could not have displayed more enthusiasm to co-operate with the British.

During the afternoon, units of the convoy’s close escort – destroyers, corvettes and minesweepers – began to arrive at Hvalfjord. Among them were the destroyer escort leader *Keppel* (Commander Jack E. Broome, RN) and the two submarines *P-614* and *P-615*, who were to accompany the convoy to Archangel. Hamilton met all their commanding officers and explained his intentions to each of them, in so far as they were affected. In the meantime, however, the Admiralty was itself intervening to re-shape the convoy operation in one aspect: early on 27 June, the Admiralty issued instructions to Admirals Tovey and Hamilton in which the former’s suggested tactic of turning the convoy back on its track for 12 to 18 hours was rejected, while they introduced the possibility that they might themselves turn the convoy back, without necessarily timing this manoeuvre to achieve what Tovey had had in mind. The Admiralty also stressed that the safety of the convoy against German surface attack while west of Bear

---

Island was primarily the responsibility of the Allied surface forces, but that any German surface attack east of that meridian – about 19° East – would have to be countered by the Allied submarines patrolling off Norway.

Hamilton's cruiser force was forbidden to proceed east of Bear Island unless the convoy was threatened by an enemy force that his 8-inch gun cruisers could fight – which meant to all intents and purposes any German force not including *Tirpitz*. In any case, his force was not to proceed beyond the meridian of 25° East.<sup>23</sup> This left less latitude for personal interpretation than Tovey's own directive to the cruisers: Hamilton could no longer continue to cover the convoy "as circumstances dictated." As a general principle, the Admiralty added: "Our primary object is to get as much of this convoy through as possible, and the best way to do this is to keep it moving to the eastward even though it is suffering damage." Finally, the Admiralty foresaw that once the convoy was to the east of Bear Island, circumstances might arise whereby the convoy's ships would have to be "dispersed" with orders to proceed to Russian ports singly and alone.\*

3

FOR THE CRUISERS, this Saturday, 27 June 1942, was a routine day. Not so for the merchantmen, for today was their "zero day" after months of waiting. During the morning, *Wichita* held captain's inspection; her ship's band was out in all its glory. A baseball team went ashore in full uniform to play a team from another ship, but launches were already going round from freighter to freighter, collecting their Masters and Chief Officers for the main convoy conference at 1 P.M.

\* The full text of these Admiralty instructions is reproduced as an Appendix, page 370.

---

The conference was held in a large new YMCA hall in a camp being built by Royal Marine engineers at Hvalfiord. It was a muddy and inconvenient site, but well guarded by marines and far from prying eyes.

When the ships' Masters trooped in, they found the Admiral Commanding Iceland there, along with the commanding officers of the cruisers and destroyers of Hamilton's force and those of Commander Broome's close escort force as well. (Hamilton considered it to be in both parties' interests for the Senior Officer of the Escort to meet the ships' Masters before sailing.)

"The long hut was soon smoke-stuffed through the combined efforts of some two hundred pipes and cigarettes," wrote Lieutenant Fairbanks afterward. "There was not much excitement – talking was of the low, constant hum variety. There was a good deal of just milling about or sitting on the long benches or tables that spaced the length of the hut."

At the far end, naval officers were sorting out large envelopes, imprinted ON HIS MAJESTY'S SERVICE, containing the secret convoy instructions and codes for each ship.<sup>24</sup>

The British ships' Masters, bowler-hatted and wearing dark suits, diligently took notes throughout the conference. The Americans were less formally attired in shapeless denims and sweaters and bright tartan shirts.

After the assembly had been addressed by the Convoy's Commodore, J. C. K. Dowding, RNR ("you will hear no news of the outside world until you get the best news of all – 'safely arrived in port'"), and by Commander Broome, who assured them of his destroyers' intentions to lend all possible assistance, Rear-Admiral Hamilton rose and talked briefly about the operations planned on their behalf.

He began by warning them all that the convoy would be "no joy-ride," but he promised that there would be a very strong close escort force, including two anti-aircraft ships and one catapult-

---

aircraft merchantman.<sup>25</sup> The conference was not informed of the Intelligence finding that the enemy really was intending to bring out his main units to attack this convoy; but the sight of so much brass and braid at the top table must have disheartened as many of the ships' Masters as it encouraged.

Why was this convoy to be afforded such special protection? Nor were they eased to identify the Masters of no fewer than *three* "rescue ships" – Captains McGowan, Morris and Banning – among their number.

The ships of the last two named, *Zamalek* and *Rathlin*, had been ordered to Iceland at such short notice three days before that the fitting of their additional armament for the voyage had not been completed. *Zamalek* had put to sea with the dockyard workers still hammering and riveting aboard her, installing new heavy anti-aircraft guns, four Oerlikon guns, "pig-trough" rocket-launchers and paravanes. The two rescue ships had been cleared down the Clyde with Number One priority all the way, *en route* for Hvalfjord.<sup>26</sup> Clearly the Admiralty expected this to be no ordinary convoy.

Hamilton reassured the ships' Masters that in addition to Broome's close escort, there would be strong covering forces consisting of British and American cruisers, and an additional distant cover provided by a battle fleet of British and American battleships and other heavy vessels.

"You may not see a lot of these ships during the passage," he explained, "but they will be in close support of you throughout." He added that there were British and Russian submarines suitably disposed to intercept enemy surface forces, and the RAF would be busy over the enemy's Norwegian airfields. Taking it all round, he thought there was every chance of getting the convoy through "practically intact."

Hamilton's remarks were greeted with evident enthusiasm by the ships' Masters. As he observed a few days later, this made the

---

---

part he had to play on the evening of 4 July “all the more distasteful.”\*

Hamilton explained to the conference that the greatest annoyance the convoy would encounter would be German air attacks, so it was important not to waste ammunition: “Impress on your men the necessity for strict fire discipline. All experience goes to show that it is no use continuing to fire at an aeroplane once it has dropped its bombs or torpedo.”

Further, a favourite German tactic seemed to be to operate the Junkers 88s first, circling high over the convoy just before the low-level torpedo-bombers attacked, to distract attention from the latter. “Keep a look out for torpedo-bombers – and be careful not to fire into other ships in excitement.”

After the conference, Hamilton had a brief parley with the Commodore and Vice-Commodore and with the Master of the CAM *Empire Tide*. With the pilot of the latter’s Sea Hurricane he discussed whether it was preferable to succumb to the temptation of attacking the shadowing aircraft when they began to circle the convoy, or to wait for the mass attacks by the more cumbersome torpedo-bombers before catapulting the plane.

He reached the conclusion that downing the one shadower would be only a momentary annoyance to the Germans, while if the Hurricane were to be catapulted during air attacks the chances were much higher. He suggested that the plane should be catapulted only east of Bear Island, when the danger of air attack was highest; he also ordered a wooden dummy to be made for the ship, to replace the Hurricane as soon as it had been shot off.

\* Of this conference, one of the American freighter captains reported: “Convoy conference held 27th June at 1.00 P.M. Hvalfiord. . . At the conference, attended by the highest ranking naval officers, Iceland, it was stressed that PQ.17 would have the strongest screen force yet employed in the protection of Arctic convoys. Action was expected, but plans had been laid which promised discomfiture to the enemy.”<sup>27</sup>

---

Of his address to the main conference, one off-the-cuff remark he made has remained in the memories of those who were there. Hamilton said: “You may well be the cause of another general fleet action – perhaps even another Jutland.”

Perhaps another Jutland! With these words ringing in their ears, the Masters of the merchant ships trooped out of the YMCA hall into the pouring rain and made their way down to the jetty, where motor-launches were waiting to ferry them out to their vessels, looming grey and ugly across the fiord. The Masters silently watched the high-ranking naval officers depart; then, as the skippers of the Asdic trawler *Ayrshire* and the two fleet oilers stepped into the waiting launch, Captain Gansden of the oiler *Gray Ranger* turned to the trawler skipper and asked, “What did you make of the admiral’s speech?” Lieutenant Gradwell replied, “For myself, I don’t think much about fleet actions. I just want to get this convoy through.” Three hours later, Hamilton’s flagship weighed anchor and sailed with destroyers for Seidisfiord, to see to the sailing of the convoy’s ocean escort, the First Escort Group under Commander “Jack” Broome, RN.

Broome, a broad-shouldered officer, was famous throughout the service for his humour and his ability to express it in cartoons. Officers secretly treasured his saucy postcards, few of which would have passed the portcullis of the most liberal Watch Committee ashore. One of them depicted an admiral – instantly identifiable by all the postcard’s acquirers – improbably sharing a bath with an equally recognisable Wren; the admiral was explaining, “This is how the torpedo goes, Miss Snodgrass.” The admiral concerned had learned about this cartoon and taken offence to it; but Broome had subsequently regained some of his former favour by designing a masterly poster, which had adorned the walls of the YMCA hall used for the PQ.17 convoy conference. The poster was said to be one of Mr. Churchill’s favourites – Churchill probably had a weak spot for any naval officer re-

---

minding him of his earlier hero, Beatty. Entitled “How to Join the Stragglers’ Club,” it showed a solitary merchant ship dawdling far behind an Allied convoy, while German aircraft and submarines closed in. The poster bore the ominous subtitle: “Subscriptions in advance, please.”

After lunch, Captain Hill and Commander Orem of *Wichita* inspected some of the merchant ships at anchor. After chatting with the two Hurricane pilots – one of them almost blind – carried by the British *Empire Tide*, they boarded the brand-new American *William Hooper*, the fourth of the “ninety-day wonder” Liberty ships. She was on her maiden voyage from North Carolina, and although her decks were well scuffed up she was still spanking new inside. She had left the United States early in April, with a cargo of ammunition and tanks. “Already the rubber on the tanks was beginning to rot from exposure to the salt air,” wrote Lieutenant Fairbanks. “We had a talk with the young ensign in charge of the naval armed guard of fifteen men. His main worry was that the men under him were inexperienced. They were all merely apprentice seamen, who were more than willing but less than able. He was shockingly short of ammunition, and had but 90 rounds for his four-inch gun.” With only two hours to go before sailing time, *William Hooper* was still without some important spares for her guns. Captain Hill did what he could to encourage the ship’s crew.<sup>28</sup>

## 4

AT FOUR O’CLOCK that afternoon, 27 June, the ships of convoy PQ.17, the war’s most disastrous convoy, slipped in single file out of Hvalfiord. “Like so many dirty ducks,” wrote Fairbanks, “they waddled out past the nets and out to sea. No honours or salutes were paid to them as they passed, such as there are for naval vessels. But every one who was watching paid them a si-

---

lent tribute and offered them some half-thought prayer.” Thirty-five ships, their holds heavily-laden with the paraphernalia of war, their decks groaning under the weight of tanks, guns and crated bombers destined for our Russian allies; three gallant rescue ships, one of which would never return, and two fleet oilers brimming with fuel for the thirsty destroyers of the escort. What a cargo for the Russians! What a prize for the enemy! Seven hundred million dollars’ worth of armaments – 297 aircraft, 594 tanks, 4,246 lorries and gun carriers, and over 156,000 tons of general cargo besides – enough to equip an army of fifty thousand men if it ever arrived in Russian ports.<sup>29</sup>

In low visibility the ships were shepherded in double column northabout round Iceland and past the minefields of the Denmark Strait. Of the thirty-five ships, all but eight were bound for Archangel; these eight – all Americans – were to split into a separate convoy at the end of the voyage and with the Liberty ship *Christopher Newport* as Commodore ship, head off early into Murmansk.<sup>30</sup> Of the two oilers accompanying the convoy, one, RFA *Gray Ranger*, was to accompany the convoy all the way, while the other, RFA *Aldersdale*, was to be detached on 2 July with an elderly destroyer as “Force Q” to await the westbound convoy QP.13 off Jan Mayen Island.

Soon after the convoy had formed up in double column, it lost its first ship. In dense fog, the Liberty ship *Richard Bland* ran aground on the Iceland rocks and was badly holed; she had to be returned to port, but not before she had transmitted an ill-considered distress signal.

Off Stromness Point, the ships were formed up in the broad cruising formation – nine columns wide, with four ships in each column – in which they continued north-eastward toward Jan Mayen Island. For this first part of the voyage, the ships had been given the temporary protection of three minesweepers and four anti-submarine trawlers, with *Halcyon* as Senior Officer. Their

---

long-range escort under Commander Broome would put out from Seidisfiord and rendezvous with the convoy on the afternoon of the 30th.

No contact had been made with the enemy yet, but more than one freighter was aware of its own weakness should a major battle ensue. So long as the convoy remained intact, its fire-power was immense; but individual ships were poorly armed, and there was a grave shortage of ammunition, particularly of the heavier calibre.

The executive officer of the USS *Melville*, the depot ship at Hvalfiord, had privately shown American Armed Guard officers a despatch authorising them to broach the ships’ cargoes, if necessary, and use the ammunition and guns they found for the defence of their ships. On 28 June, Ensign Carraway discussed *Troubadour*’s lack of ammunition with her Master and Chief Officer, and they decided to break the seals on one of the three American M-3 tanks on their deck, to see if its 37-millimetre gun could be used. A quantity of armour-piercing and tracer shell was broken out of the below-decks cargo, and two men were trained to man the tank’s gun. On the following day, a second tank was broken open and its gun prepared for use. All this was highly illegal, of course, but the officers may reasonably have deemed the arrival of a broached cargo to be of more use to the Russians than the arrival of no cargo at all.<sup>31</sup>

At 5 A.M.\* on the morning of the 29th, with the convoy edging forward at 8 knots in a fog which brought visibility down to less than 50 yards, the ships ran into a field of heavy floating ice; four of the merchant ships suffered serious damage. The American SS *Exford* wirelessed that she could not continue, and the Commodore passed permission to her to return to port. With a bad hole in her bows, *Gray Ranger* was reduced to 8 knots and eventually had to take up the waiting position assigned to the oiler

\* Unless otherwise stated, all times are Zone-2, two hours later than GMT.

*Aldersdale*; the latter vessel proceeded with the convoy, on the course which was to confront her with disaster five days later.

At 8 A.M. the two slow-moving British submarines ordered to accompany the convoy left Iceland in company with their “mother” ship, the Flower-class corvette *Dianella*. Commander Broome called a final escort conference two hours later on board Hamilton’s flagship *London* at Seidisfiord, attended by the commanding officers of all the long-range escort vessels. It should be commented that PQ.17’s “scratch” ocean escort was as makeshift as it was large: as Commander Broome himself complained, none of the escorts’ commanding officers had the chance to meet before sailing, which was an awkward departure from the “escort group” practice so successful in Western Approaches Command. Officers who tried to approach Broome independently at the PQ.17 conferences were waved away. The escort force was also ill-assorted; there was even a “Free French” corvette with a 100 percent British crew, flying the French tricolour side by side with the White Ensign. Two anti-aircraft “cruisers” – converted MacAndrews banana-boats – had also been attached to the convoy, their armoured decks bristling with every calibre of anti-aircraft gun.

At Broome’s conference, Rear-Admiral Hamilton told the officers the more confidential details of the general plan, including the likely movements of the battle fleet and the cruiser covering force. It was on this occasion, it seems, that the escort officers first learned that the Admiralty believed that the enemy’s main units would come out to attack this convoy.\*

\* From the Diary of Lieutenant Caradus, *La Malouine*’s Asdic officer, 29 June: “Captain attends conference. . . [details of warships in covering forces] . . . must be very important convoy to have this escort. Possibility of German fleet attacking.” He added: “3 P.M. Started [out] to rendezvous with convoy. *Lotus* did not have a chance to return *La Malouine*’s set of football boots. Seamen upset about this.”<sup>32</sup>

---

After the escort destroyers had completed their complex fueling programme from the one oiler at Seidisfiord, Broome’s whole escort force had sailed by 3.30 P.M. on the 29th.

As they headed out toward their rendezvous with the convoy, the Commander-in-Chief of the Home Fleet was engaged in what was to prove a crucially important telephone call from Scapa Flow to the First Sea Lord in London. Tovey was discussing with Pound the disadvantages of sending heavy cruisers to cover the convoy into the Barents Sea east of Bear Island, where they would be subject to attack by U-boats and aircraft. The Admiralty considered close cruiser support essential for the convoy – the Germans had at the last count ten destroyers stationed in Norway – but Tovey assessed the risks to the cruisers more gravely than did the Admiralty. Moreover, large though the convoy’s close escort under Broome was, he considered it inadequate for a convoy as large as PQ.17 in conditions so favourable to the enemy. Pound was adamant that the convoy should not be cancelled.<sup>33</sup>

It was at this juncture, according to Tovey’s recollection of their conversation, that the First Sea Lord first mentioned the possibility that the Admiralty might order the *scattering* of the convoy if it appeared to be in imminent danger, presumably meaning the danger of attack by enemy ships. In itself this was an accepted tenet of convoy strategy, and it would not be the first time a convoy had been scattered; the procedure for scattering was laid down in the MERSIGS codebooks. But Tovey later professed himself aghast at Pound’s gloomy suggestion, even though Pound was clearly only planning for a contingency which now seemed increasingly likely to occur.

At five o’clock on the afternoon of his disturbing telephone conversation with Admiral Pound, Admiral Tovey’s battle fleet left Scapa Flow. The battleships *Duke of York* and *Washington*, the same aircraft-carrier *Victorious* as had nearly provoked *Tirpitz*’s nemesis four months earlier, two cruisers and eight de-

stroyers sailed out into the North Sea. They steered an easterly course in the latitude of the Faroes, to give the impression that it was covering “Force X,” a dummy convoy that had left Scapa Flow that same day, designed to simulate a raiding force heading for southern Norway.<sup>34</sup> There was no German reconnaissance of either force for two days, and they were not sighted. It is unlikely in any case that the Germans, long forewarned of the imminent PQ convoy operation, would have been much misled.

The American half of the cruiser force, transferring from Hvalfiord to Seidisfiord that day, picked up a signal from the Senior British Naval Officer at Murmansk reporting that QP.13 had been sighted by German aircraft when only one day out, so the Germans would know that something was now afoot.\*

A little before noon on the following day, 30 June, the two cruisers and three destroyers wound round and up the narrow channel to Seidisfiord, surrounded on all sides by the cold, gaunt mountains towering up into the clouds. The American sailors were awed by this spectacle of giant bleakness: “The whole town looks like it might have slid down the hundreds of tiny waterfalls from the cloud-crowned mountaintops and then humped to a stop when it came to the water,” was how Fairbanks described the port. The American warships passed and exchanged honours with HMS *Norfolk* and Hamilton’s flagship *London*. Bugles sounded their long, steady blasts, the windlasses started whirring, and by two o’clock the cruiser force was riding at anchor, while naval tankers pumped thick oil into their hungry bellies. Liberty boats ran between ship and shore – not that there was much to see: some inhospitable Icelanders had painted black Swastikas on some of the walls and houses, but that was all.

All the commanding officers assembled aboard *London* for luncheon with Rear-Admiral Hamilton, and he held a last conference

\* In fact, the full convoy was not sighted until 30 June, as will be seen.

---

to brief them on his planned action manoeuvring signals and the like. In *Wichita*, the Executive Officer addressed the entire crew in the hangar deck aft, and told them of the operation that lay ahead. The crew listened with “solemn, tense faces.”

After dinner, Captain Hill ordered all his officers to assemble in the cruiser’s wardroom. A chart of the Barents Sea had been hung in the place where the cinema screen normally went. He announced that they were to sail at 2 A.M., and cover the convoy as far as the meridian of 25° East – the farthest point yet reached by a cruiser covering force. He reminded his officers of the military importance of PQ.17: “Its cargo is valued at over \$700 millions.” Finally, he dealt with the likelihood that there would be a naval action. Seldom had a ship been able to know in advance approximately where and when such action would come; this was Intelligence of which he felt sure his officers would take full advantage. He stressed that perfect discipline was vital at all times. As the outgoing convoy, PQ.17, had still not been sighted by the Germans, things were going well so far.

Just before he concluded, he slipped off his impersonal manner as commanding officer. Fairbanks, sitting not far away, noted that Captain Hill leaned on the table and smiled: “Do you realise, I’ve been in the Navy since before many of you were born?” His eyes glistened visibly as he went on. “All my life I’ve been studying, training and waiting for this one moment – and now it’s come!” He sighed, wagged his head, and with a wave added, “Good luck to you all!”<sup>35</sup>

All evening the ships’ padres were hearing confessions. Again there was a long quiet line of young sailors waiting with prayer-books outside the chaplain’s office doors. At 2 A.M., Hamilton’s cruiser squadron, screened by the destroyers *Wainwright*, *Somali* and *Rowan*, sailed from Seidisfiord and proceeded north-eastward at 18 knots to take up its covering position with the convoy.

All the Allied naval forces were now at sea.

CHAPTER 3

## 'The Victim is PQ.17'

*Tuesday, 30 June – Saturday, 4 July*

*The Russian convoy is and always has been  
an unsound operation of the war.*

– REAR-ADMIRAL L. H. K.

HAMILTON, 30 SEPTEMBER 1942

IN THE WAR CABINET's subterranean map room, in the First Sea Lord's room at the Admiralty, and on the great square table dominating the Submarine Tracking Room in the Citadel behind Whitehall, the naval war charts now began to show the first traces of six tracks starting out from several shores fringing the Arctic ocean.

There was the big eight-knot convoy PQ.17, which had sailed four days before from Hvalfiord; there were the tracks of Broome's escort force and of Hamilton's cruiser squadron, hastening to the convoy's vicinity; there was the Home Fleet's heavy covering force under Admiral Sir John Tovey, and the abruptly curtailed track of the dummy convoy that had tried to distract the enemy's of the enemy; and far to the east, there was the QP convoy plodding from Russian ports toward the western world.

IF THERE WERE such charts in the German operational headquarters at Kiel, Narvik, Kemi and Berlin, then they were still

bare, save from the cluster of flags around Jan Mayen Island – the cruising submarines of Admiral Schmundt’s Ice Devil pack. The Germans had detected nothing of the Allied movements yet.

Early on the afternoon of Monday, 30 June, some of the tracks had joined and merged, as the central characters in the developing tragedy took their place on stage. At 3.15 P.M., as the overcast and hazy horizon cleared, Commander Broome’s escort force caught sight of the convoy and within half an hour he had stationed his vessels round the perimeter of the tight formation of merchant ships, still keeping excellent station despite intermittent low visibility. It was already very cold.

The Germans had begun to suspect that convoy PQ.17 had left Iceland, because some days earlier sudden wireless silence had descended on the Icelandic anchorages, while at the same time there had been a sharp increase in radio traffic at Murmansk. Again, the RAF’s aerial surveillance of the Trondheim fiord where *Tirpitz* lay had been intensified, and British reconnaissance activity over the more northerly of the Norwegian fiords had increased as well. Moreover, the German Air Force had reported both on the afternoon of the 28th and early on the following morning that British naval forces had been sighted off Iceland.

Bad weather prevented German reconnaissance either of the waters between Iceland and Jan Mayen Island, or of the ports of Murmansk and Kola Bay until the end of June, and it was not until 30 June that the Germans had located the full westbound convoy QP.13; by that time it had already reached Bear Island, some 180 miles north of North Cape. The Germans decided to give their Air Force a free hand with this westbound convoy, while their battle fleet stood fast, lying in wait for the more precious PQ convoy which was now certain to have left Iceland for Russia: past experience suggested that the convoys would pass each other just to the east of Jan Mayen Island, a point known to Brit-

---

ish convoy veterans as “suicide junction.”<sup>1</sup> It was unlikely that the German battle fleet would sail for at least a day. During the afternoon of 1 July, therefore, a lengthy teleprinter conference took place between Admiral Schmundt and General-Admiral Carls; as a result, the latter returned to Schmundt control of submarine operations against PQ.17, until the fleet was ready to attack. Schmundt now had ten submarines lying off Jan Mayen Island waiting for the convoy to appear.\*<sup>2</sup>

DURING THE EARLY afternoon, a signal was received by both the cruiser force and the convoy’s escorts: it focused a disquieting light on the situation at Murmansk. As a result of heavy German air attacks, the Senior British Naval Officer reported, one-third of the town had been burned down, and the British headquarters had been evacuated to the outskirts of the town. He could not recommend that any of the convoy’s ships come to Murmansk as the defences were not adequate. The Admiralty immediately replied that all ships of adequate draught were to proceed to Archangel instead. Later, there was a further signal from Whitehall to Tovey:

Reconnaissance Trondheim failed, forenoon July 1st – unfit for photographic reconnaissance. As Force X was apparently not sighted owing to fog, it cannot have a diversionary effect. If you wish operation repeated, request you will make one word, “Repeat.”<sup>3</sup>

Soon afterward, they picked up Tovey’s reply: “Repeat.” So the dummy convoy manoeuvre was to be attempted again.<sup>4</sup> The mood in the American warships was now one of great excite-

\* The tenth U-boat was *U-657* (Göllnitz). For the other nine, see the footnote on page 999-55.

ment. “The marines, as usual, came up to scratch. They were itching for a fight. Their two young Captains wore broad grins all day although some of the older sergeants, veterans of former campaigns, were a bit more serious.”

Down in the wardrooms and in the communication office the specially wired radios were bringing dance music: Noël Coward was singing his new hit, *London Pride*, while the coding machines clattered out routine reports.

Lieutenant Fairbanks, observing and recording impressions all the time for his admiral, wrote during the afternoon:

The British Navy is under constant scrutiny by our professional “sea dogs.” Its legendary superiority has, they say, gone. Its present state is a source of wonderment and discussion.

How a great Navy, run by great sailors, could have allowed itself to fall behind in so many technical ways is more than our “regulars” can understand. The hardships of three years’ war, the shortage of materials and of manpower are only partial answers. Their accuracy in gunnery, quality and types of ordnance, fire control, damage control and navigational aids are considered by our experts to be far behind the times.

Their appreciation and use of naval aviation has caused them several unnecessary misfortunes . . . They still remain great seamen, but one wishes that such worthy people, whose history is the history of the sea, had worthier tools.<sup>4</sup>

Soon after half-past two that afternoon, the enemy made his entrée. A distant aircraft was heard in the fog far behind the convoy. The anti-aircraft ship *Palomares*, keeping her radar beams well averted from hostile shores, picked up the aircraft as it approached from astern, and then the lookouts saw it clearly – a huge four-engined Focke-Wulf 200. No shot could be fired at the plane before it escaped. About an hour passed before the

---

plane wirelessly its report to Norway. It came as a great relief to the escort commander, Commander Broome. The tension of waiting was broken. In particular, wireless silence could be relaxed. Broome believed that no method of controlling a convoy and its escort could compare with the simple radio telephone. With no need for wireless silence now, he was able to get all the ships tuned to his destroyer's radio telephone frequency and, at 3:30 P.M., the convoy wirelessly Whitehall: "One aircraft shadowing PQ.17 in position 71°11' North, 05°59' East."<sup>5</sup>

Broome also felt justified in breaking radio silence for a rather longer signal to the Admiralty, Hamilton, Tovey and the Admiral Commanding Iceland, reporting that two of the convoy's ships had been damaged north of Iceland and had had to turn back, and that the escort's oiler had also been holed and that he therefore proposed to exchange her for the "Force Q" oiler, *Aldersdale*.

These lengthy wireless signals were all that the Germans needed to establish that it really was convoy PQ.17 that had been found. For while the Focke-Wulf's sighting report did not reach Admiral Schmudt in Narvik for ten hours, he had by 5.40 P.M. been informed by the German naval monitoring station at Kirkenes that the convoy which his U-boats were just beginning to report had been heard at 3:30 P.M. announcing that a shadowing aircraft had been sighted. Moreover, a vessel with the convoy had thereupon transmitted a lengthy "operational signal to the Admiralty and three further addresses," and this had enabled the monitoring station to obtain an extremely accurate fix on the convoy. It turned out to be very close to the position given by the first U-boat to sight Allied ships that afternoon.\*

The first submarine to sight the convoy had actually been Lieutenant-Commander Max-Martin Teichert's *U-456*. At about

\* The sighting report, timed 3:30 P.M., 1 July, was not passed to Schmudt by Lofoten Air Command until 1.25 A.M., 2 July.<sup>6</sup>

3:30 P.M. he had sighted over twenty-five merchant ships and at least four destroyer escorts, some of which caused him considerable discomfort shortly afterward, for they had harried him with depth-charges for so long that he deemed it prudent to delay transmitting his sighting report until long after midnight.

It was this caution which had made Teichert one of Schmudt's most reliable U-boat commanders; it was Teichert, in fact, who had torpedoed the cruiser *Edinburgh* two months before. But while *U-456* maintained its discreet silence for the time being, another U-boat in the patrol line, Lieutenant-Commander Reinhart Reche's *U-255*, had also sighted ships on the horizon, and half an hour after Teichert had made his first sighting, Reche wirelessly Narvik: "Light enemy forces are in position pinpoint AB.7166."

This was 60 miles east of Jan Mayen Island. It was the first report Schmudt had had of any naval units in the area, and he was taken aback to find the enemy already so far to the east. The report from the naval wireless monitoring station at Kirkenes confirmed Reche's signal. Soon after Reche made his report, the British destroyer *Leamington* sighted him and warned *Keppel*: "One submarine bearing 233° ten miles." So the British now knew they were being shadowed by both aircraft and submarines.

## 2

TO ADMIRAL Hubert Schmudt, studying the position at his floating headquarters in Narvik, it now seemed of supreme importance that his U-boats should not fall behind the convoy, already so surprisingly far to the east.<sup>7</sup> He wirelessly to all the Ice Devil submarines:

All submarines not in contact with the enemy or on their trail proceed 50° at speed 10 knots.

---

---

The weather in the U-boats' operational zone was still most unfavourable for any attack. There was a leaden sea and hardly any wind; a low layer of cloud and overcast and patches of fog alternated with sudden stretches of clear air where the visibility jumped up to 15 miles and more. The submarine commanders found it impossible to attack. They were harried by the British escort vessels, forced down and bracketed with depth-charges.

In mid-afternoon, Lieutenant-Commander von Hymmen's *U-408* reported that, as the weather briefly cleared, he had sighted the convoy but had been forced to dive by two destroyers. Von Hymmen's report meant there were now at least two submarines in close contact with the enemy.

Schmundt detailed these and two others to shadow the convoy, while the others worked ahead at speed to patrol a line across its path approximately midway between Jan Mayen Island and Bear Island – a technique of proven reliability.

The eleventh of the U-boats assigned to the operation had flashed a brief "reporting in" signal to Schmundt as it passed the latitude of 67° heading for the Barents Sea, and at a quarter to eight that evening Schmundt wirelessly this U-boat – Lieutenant-Commander Bielfeld's *U-703* – to make for the patrol line at full speed too.

The German Admiral now had all the parameters he needed to order the first rough deployment of his submarines, and at nine o'clock he wirelessly all of them:

According to our wireless monitoring service and a signal from Reche, PQ.17 was at pinpoint AB.7166 at 4 P.M. Assume course north-east, nine knots.

Reche, von Hymmen, Teichert: shadow.

Timm, La Baume, Göllnitz, Bohmann, Brandenburg, Marks: occupy by 2 P.M. 2 July a patrol line extending between pinpoints AB.5155 and AB.5515.

The shadowing aircraft had by now lost sight of the westbound convoy. Two hours after he had sent this signal, Schmundt calculated that QP.13 would be crossing the submarines' operational zone at any time. He warned his U-boat commanders to let it pass, unless irresistible opportunities were offered to them. “The victim is PQ.17.”

AT 6:30 P.M., Rear-Admiral Hamilton's cruiser force was informed by wireless from Whitehall that an enemy submarine had sighted and reported PQ.17, and that more U-boats were concentrating to the east of the convoy.<sup>8</sup> At this time, Admiral Sir John Tovey's battle fleet was cruising north-east of Iceland, steering north-westerly and southerly courses.<sup>9</sup> At six o'clock that evening, while some of his destroyers were away fuelling at Seidisfiord, a German long-range reconnaissance aircraft was sighted by the fleet. Soon after, with the destroyers returned to his fleet, the Commander-in-Chief altered to the north-east to take up his covering position south of the convoy's tracks.

This was the enemy's first sighting of the Anglo-American battle fleet covering PQ.17. The Focke-Wulf 200 immediately wirelessly reported to the German North-West Air Command at Trondheim and they forwarded it with due delay to the German Navy.<sup>10</sup> The Allied fleet's composition was given as three battleships, one aircraft-carrier, six cruisers, six destroyers and three escort vessels, all in a force some 120 miles north-east of Iceland (over 300 miles from the latest position of the convoy) cruising at 10 or 15 knots in a south-westerly direction.

As the weather had thickened, the shadower had lost the fleet at about 9 P.M. that night, at which time it was some 45 miles north-east of Iceland. The aircraft had made minor errors in its reports, but it had estimated the positions and general scale of the force with great accuracy. That the Allied battle fleet was so far from the eastbound convoy suggested that it was not only to

---

provide distant cover for the convoy, but also to insure against a suspected breakout by *Admiral Scheer* and *Lützow* into the Atlantic. Admiral Carls concluded significantly that “it followed that the British were adhering to their previous procedure.”<sup>11</sup>

At present there was nothing to prevent the first phase of *The Knight's Move* – the fleet's move to advanced bases in northern Norway – from being launched: the Trondheim battle group was ordered to stand by at three hours' sailing notice as of noon the next day, 2 July. By nine o'clock that morning, two of Admiral Schmundt's four shadowing submarines were still in close contact with the convoy, and six others were hastening to take up station in a patrol line across its path by 2 P.M. that afternoon. It was of the utmost importance for the German Navy's planned fleet action that the convoy be kept continuously in sight.

The sighting of PQ.17 on the previous day was the main item discussed at Grand-Admiral Raeder's war conference in Berlin during the morning. The German Naval Staff agreed that the enemy had, as feared, delayed sailing both the westbound and the eastbound convoys until the return of the notorious fogs of July. That month was now upon them; how did it affect their chances of success?

Operationally we are considerably less well off than we might have expected to be in June [the German Naval Staff summarised]. Even so it is extremely likely that our battle fleet will get its chance to strike, and it seems proper to adhere to the plans to transfer northward the two battle groups, particularly as it is as yet impossible to draw any conclusions on the probable intentions of the enemy's covering force from such material as has come to hand.<sup>12</sup>

Raeder authorised Naval Group North in Kiel to issue the appropriate orders, and the codeword was transmitted shortly

---

before 1 P.M. The Trondheim group – including *Tirpitz* and *Admiral Hipper* – was to sail at eight o’clock that evening; the Narvik group – including *Admiral Scheer* and *Lützow* – would leave their anchorages at Vestfiord’s Bogen Bay just four hours later. Arrangements were made for Admiral Krancke, Raeder’s permanent representative at the Führer’s East Prussian headquarters, to be kept fully apprised by the Chief of Naval Operations in Berlin on the enemy movements and on all orders issued by Kiel to the German battle fleet.

Very belated reports had by now reached Admiral Hubert Schmundt in Narvik, giving him the results of the Air Force’s brief sighting of the convoy the previous afternoon, and of Lieutenant-Commander Teichert’s more recent glimpse of the merchant ships and their escort from his submarine some hours later. During the early hours of Thursday, 2 July, Teichert had again reported the convoy, now ploughing north-east at 7 knots; he had added that he was experiencing some difficulty with the fog banks. Soon after he announced that enemy destroyers were after him and he was being forced to dive.

With visibility down now to only 500 yards, Commander Reche was also hard on the convoy’s track, relying solely on the approximate bearings given by his hydrophone equipment. Schmundt began to fear that his submarines might lose the convoy altogether before the Navy could attack with the battle fleet, and at his request the German Air Force intensified its reconnaissance patrols during the morning. They eventually sighted the convoy again at one minute past two that afternoon – thirty-eight merchant ships screened apparently by ten destroyers, steering a northerly course. Nine minutes later Commander Broome was reporting the shadowing aircraft to London.\*

\* The German reconnaissance units operating against PQ.17 were *I./KG.40*, *I.(F)/22*, *I.(F)/124*, *II./406*, *III./906* and *I./105*.

Despite the accuracy with which air and submarine forces had now located both QP.13 and PQ.17, none of the Allies' heavy warships had been sighted by the Germans since the previous day.<sup>13</sup> On the other hand, as a result of the close submarine and shadowing aircraft contact with the eastbound convoy, fresh sighting reports were reaching Kiel on an average of one each hour.<sup>14</sup> Commander Teichert's *U-456* was still closely following the convoy, reporting PQ.17's course, speed and position with the greatest precision; by half-past two that afternoon, Commander Brandenburg's *U-457* was also in sight of the merchantmen.

Shortly after 3 P.M., *U-255* launched a spread of two torpedoes at the convoy from outside the escort screen, forcing the American SS *Bellingham* to make an emergency turn 45° to starboard, but no damage was done.\*<sup>15</sup> The anti-submarine vessels began dropping depth-charges, and the crashes of these weapons – the terror of the U-boat crews – continued to sound around the convoy's perimeter throughout the rest of the day. From the patrol line to the east of the convoy, *U-88* reported that he was following QP.13, the westbound convoy, but he was forced to dive by one of the German shadowing aircraft; when he surfaced again, the convoy had gone. Schmundt ordered him to let it pass, and again signalled all the submarines to leave QP.13 unmolested. The victim was still PQ.17; it still had to be "totally annihilated," but so far not one ship had been sunk.

DURING MOST of 2 July, the thick weather blanketing North Cape had prevented most of the German's wheeled aircraft from taking off. Of all the air bases, only Kirkenes with its *I./406* squadron

\* The torpedo log (*Schussmeldung*) of *U-255* stated: "Firing data were estimated. Destroyer [target] must have heard torpedoes running or being fired. She turned hard to starboard after the torpedoes were fired. Subsequently attacked with depth-charges by destroyers and corvettes. Forty depth-charges." I hold a complete set of these *Schussmeldungen* for PQ.17.

of cumbersome Heinkel 115 torpedo-bomber floatplanes was operational, and plans were laid between the Fifth Air Force headquarters in Oslo and the advanced headquarters at Kemi for an attack to be delivered by these planes late that evening.<sup>16</sup>

At 2.38 P.M. Admiral Schmundt wirelessly the U-boats about the results of the air reconnaissance and about the Air Force’s “planned attack with seven Heinkel 115s.” Half an hour later Commander Teichert was selected to keep shadowing the convoy and transmit homing signals for the aircraft.

Rear-Admiral Hamilton’s wireless room could plainly hear the German shadowing aircraft carrying out homing procedure – broadcasting a series of “A”s, interspersed with a coded call-sign at regular intervals – and he was not surprised when information was received from the Admiralty that an “air attack by torpedo-bombers” was expected to develop on the convoy at about nine o’clock that night. He despatched USS *Rowan* to the convoy to warn Commander Broome of the imminent air attack, refuel from the oiler *Aldersdale* and reinforce the escort screen. Later that afternoon, he was informed that the poor weather had again prevented any reconnaissance of the German warships’ bases, although flights were now being flown continuously over them.<sup>17</sup> In fact the ships were still at anchor. Both the convoy and the cruiser covering force were blanketed in fog, with the cloud ceiling less than 200 feet above sea level – ideal weather for torpedo-bomber attack.

3

THE GERMAN NAVY had always viewed with disfavour the Air Force’s increasing interest in the torpedo as an airborne weapon for attacking enemy shipping. When it was decided early in the war to establish German torpedo-carrying bomber squadrons, no special torpedoes had been designed for them, and the early

---

trials were conspicuous failures. The Naval Staff strenuously denied the Air Force access to information on naval torpedo developments, and when the Air Force attempted to collaborate with private industry on the design of suitable torpedoes, the Navy had deliberately impeded their efforts. Only in January 1942 had Göring obtained for the Air Force the right to open its own experimental and training establishments, and by the end of April there were, in addition to the Heinkel 115 torpedo aircraft of the German Coastal Command, twelve Heinkel 111 crews of the first squadron of *KG.26* waiting and ready at the newly constructed airfields of Banak and Bardufoss in northern Norway. By the time convoy PQ.17 sailed, Coastal Command had assembled fifteen Heinkel 115 torpedo-floatplanes and *KG.26*'s first squadron – a further forty-two Heinkel 111 torpedo-bombers for the attack.<sup>18</sup>

At 12.20 P.M. on 2 July a Blohm & Voss 138 spotter plane had reappeared near the convoy; within one or two hours two more planes had joined the convoy. Through powerful glasses, these latter could be seen to be torpedo-carrying aircraft, not shadowers. The three aircraft continued to circle the convoy at a respectful distance for over an hour. Soon Commander Teichert's *U-456* was wirelessly back to Narvik that the convoy's merchant ships were hoisting barrage balloons.<sup>6</sup>

The gunners stayed at their action stations for two hours, their eyes straining for the first signs of attack. Commander Broome signalled from *Keppel* that his radio room was picking up signals from the three circling aircraft, clearly homing in further aircraft on to the convoy. The attack came soon after half-past six, as two of the torpedo-bombers suddenly turned in toward the ships and raced in to attack only a few feet above the waves. Alarm bells shrilled.

6.36 P.M. Open fire. One torpedo seen to drop.

6.40 P.M. Steer 105°.

---

6.47 P.M. From *Keppel*: From unknown station – torpedo approaching convoy.

6.50 P.M. Red 160°. Two aircraft. Steer 100°.

6.51 P.M. Red 90°. Aircraft coming towards. Green 140°.

6.52 P.M. *Keppel* is firing at aircraft ahead.<sup>19</sup>

Amidst a chaos of orders, instructions, comments and warnings, the attack was over before it had begun: the two aircraft “disappeared into mist ahead.”<sup>20</sup>

There was one danger which could not be overlooked: these long, tense runs into the convoy by the German planes were designed to distract the escorts’ attention from the submarine pack snapping at the convoy’s screen. At 6.56 P.M., however, *Leamington* was already broadcasting a warning of a new attack: “Enemy aircraft are coming in to attack on a bearing 160°.”<sup>5</sup>

This time, the watching officers could see no fewer than seven torpedo-planes coming in toward the convoy from the starboard quarter. Four of the planes detached themselves from the rest and came in at low level, their cannon firing at the ships, which in turn were putting up a curtain of anti-aircraft fire.

One seemed to be heading straight for the Russian tanker *Azerbaijan*; the three rescue ships in the rear of the convoy, *Rathlin*, *Zaafaran* and *Zamalek*, aimed an intense hail of fire. *Zaafaran* managed to put one of the 4-inch HE shells from her low-angle gun right under the nose of the threatening plane,<sup>21</sup> but *Zamalek* was badly hit by cannon-fire from the stricken bomber, the ricocheting shells smashing much of the glass in the wheelhouse of the little rescue vessel and injuring three ratings – a Bofors gunner and two gunners on the midship gunpit. The Bofors gunner had had one eye torn out by a shell fragment. The ship’s doctor, Surgeon-Lieutenant McCallum, and a sick bay attendant removed him and the two other gunners to the hospital fitted up in what had originally been one of the res-

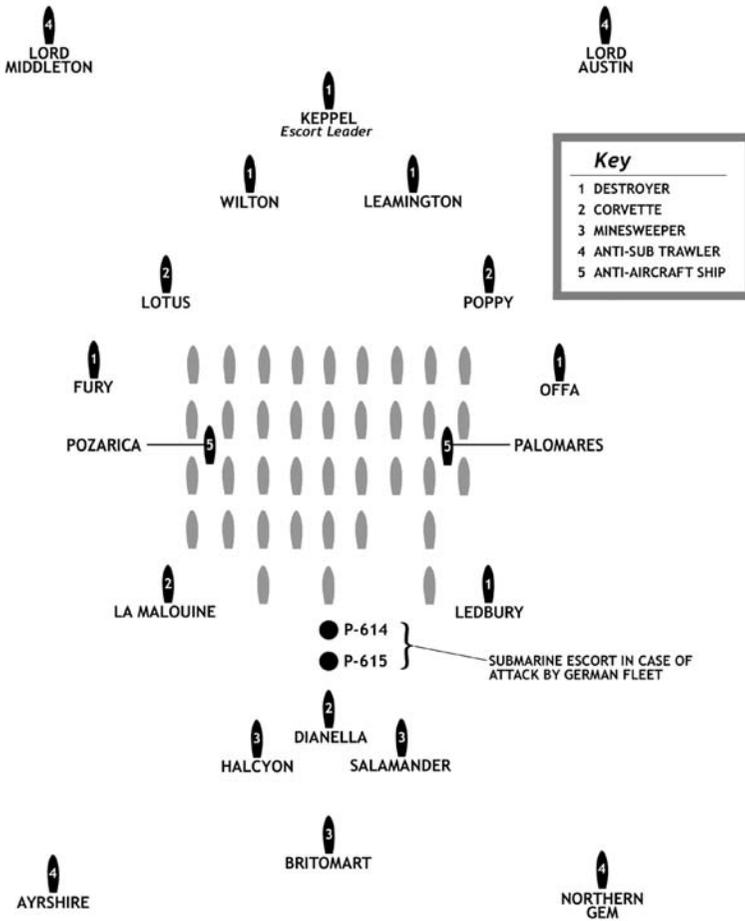
cue ship's holds, and prepared to operate on them as soon as peace was restored to the convoy.<sup>22</sup>

The Heinkel 115s were sturdy aircraft, and those that had come within gun-range withstood more punishment than seemed possible. One of the American freighter officers afterward reported that, "it seemed as though the .50 calibre fire was doing little damage – the shot hitting the planes and bouncing off."<sup>23</sup> Only one of the bombers was mortally wounded, and that probably by the heavy shell fired by *Zamalek's* sister ship, *Zaafaran*. The plane, piloted by the German squadron commander, had run the gauntlet of the maritime gun crews of the merchant ships as it flew straight on down between two columns of ships, limped right on through the advance screen of escorts, gradually losing height, until it suddenly nosed over and dived into the sea, right ahead of the convoy.

Thirsting for blood, the warships of Broome's close escort at once headed for the floating bomber. Commander Broome signalled the Hunt-class destroyer *Wilton*: "Aircraft shot down and in water," and added: "Investigate!"<sup>5</sup> Through binoculars, the destroyer officers could see the wretched German airmen clambering out onto the wing of their sinking bomber and struggling with a yellow rubber dinghy. It was possible to regard them as other than fellow human beings: these were the enemy. The airmen's plight could hardly have been more desperate. Two more destroyers were closing in on them from another quarter, possibly just over a mile away.

But then something happened of which PQ.17's survivors still talk in tones of awe and disbelief: a second Heinkel 115 suddenly appeared below the low overcast, and began descending. Obviously it was going to land beside the wreck and dinghy in the sea, right in the path of the destroyers. *Wilton's* captain, Lieutenant Adrian Northey, turned to his gunnery officer and asked if he wanted to take a pot shot. "We aren't supposed to do this

## CONVOY PQ.17 SCREENING DIAGRAM



kind of thing in war, shooting at a man when he's down, but by Hell if we let him get away he may be back another day and sink the lot of us. Open fire!" The destroyer opened fire on the downed aircraft with her main armament, all the while racing to close the range still further. Columns of water were thrown up all round the Germans as the shells exploded closer and closer. The other destroyers also opened fire.

---

---

The second Heinkel raced across the wavetops at zero feet toward the dinghy and the German airmen, throttling back to a perfect halt amidst the giant spouts of salt water thrown up by the shells crashing down around them. Within moments the three airmen had climbed into the rescue plane; its pilot opened the throttles wide and careered across the sea between the shellbursts until it had gathered enough speed to lift off and vanish into the clouds.

The episode had happened so quickly that it was over in a matter of minutes. *Wilton's* guns ceased firing and, with that peculiar sense of disappointment that only the cheated hunter can understand, returned to her station in the van of the convoy. They passed the abandoned wreckage and yellow rubber dinghy some minutes later. The Germans had lost their first encounter with PQ.17: they had lost one aircraft, without claiming any hits on the ships. Nor had the submarines been able to penetrate the convoy's screen. As the rumble of aircraft engines faded, the gunners collected the precious cartridge cases and the merchant ships edged back into their exact convoy formation once again. But the shadowing aircraft was still in company.

## 4

LATE THAT evening, the two German battle groups left Trondheim and Narvik as planned for their advanced bases in Vestfjord and Altenfjord.

At eight o'clock, just half an hour after the dramatic rescue of the ditched German airmen under the very guns of British destroyers, the *Tirpitz* group sailed, exploiting the Leads – the protected channels between the Norwegian coast and its tight fringe of offshore islands – for as far as they went.<sup>24</sup>

Through the thickening swathes of mist, the battleship *Tirpitz*, the cruiser *Admiral Hipper* and their attendant destroyers nego-

---

tiated the tight and tortuous Närøy Sound; even the *Tirpitz* made no use of the tug standing by, a further evidence of Captain Topp’s outstanding seamanship. When the battleship had sailed for its nearly disastrous March sortie, the Norwegian pilots had warned Topp to give the treacherous Vegas fiord a wide berth; this time he eased the battleship right through it without difficulty. Topp had to abandon the shelter of the Leads only for the short stretch between Kaura and Grinna: he took it at a 25-knot run, crossing the gap in less than three-quarters of an hour.

By half-past midnight – the time the Narvik group weighed anchor in Bogen Bay – the mists had thickened and dense fog was blanketing Tjeld Sound.<sup>25</sup> At a quarter-to-three, as Vice-Admiral Kummetz’s flagship *Lützow* was nosing through the fog into the tightest part of the entrance to the sound, the pocket-battleship touched bottom, extensively damaging her hull and flooding several watertight compartments.

Those versed in naval superstitions could enjoy their *Schadenfreude* at this confirmation that all warships whose names are changed are under a curse in some degree. The battleship had been launched as *Deutschland*, but upon the outbreak of war Hitler had deemed it psychologically prudent to have her renamed *Lützow*. It would never do for a “Deutschland” to be sunk or scuttled.\*

Now the *Lützow* had run aground and would have to be written off for the rest of *The Knight’s Move*. Kummetz transferred his flag to *Admiral Scheer* and sent the other unhappy warship back to Bogen Bay.

\* See the record of Hitler’s lunch-time comments on 4 July, when discussing this episode. He said he had rejected the idea of a battleship named *Adolf Hitler*, as it would be a disaster if he had to spend six months in dry-dock; and for the same reason *Deutschland* had been renamed *Lützow*, as “the loss of a ‘Deutschland’ would resound more strongly upon the German people than any other event.”<sup>26</sup>

---

The Trondheim group fared little better. As the warships entered Vestfiord's Gimsøy Narrows, three of the destroyers accompanying *Tirpitz* ran one after another into a submerged rock lying just off the deep-water channel incurring such damage to their propeller-shafts and screws that they too were forced to drop out. *Tirpitz* and *Admiral Hipper* – both closely following the main channel – avoided this uncharted obstruction. Norwegian mailboats had used the same channel for decades, and even the shallow-draught Norwegian coastal warships had escaped injury; but the German destroyers, with their deep-thrashing screws, drew some 3 feet more than the Norwegian boats.

These casualties showed the Germans once again the hazards of using the Leads: they were inadequately charted and notorious for the swiftness with which unexpected fogs blotted out the narrower passages. The Germans took the casualties in their stride and reassured themselves that they need have no influence on the operation. Grand-Admiral Raeder learned of the setback at a small, highly confidential briefing session during the morning in Berlin. The Naval Staff stressed that regrettable though the dropping of *Lützow* from the operation was, it would have “no bearing” on the execution of *The Knight's Move*. Indeed, the ship's engines and armament were still fully serviceable, and her captain was requesting to be allowed to resume his rôle in the operation.<sup>27</sup> Naval Group North left a final decision on this to Admiral Schmundt in Narvik, but the latter heard the expert's reports on the damage and ruled the possibility out altogether. *Lützow* had to return to Germany for four months of repairs.

BY THE TIME the first battle group had left Trondheim the previous evening, three more U-boats had sighted the convoy, bringing the total up to five. During that night, however, the weather had thickened, and the campaign to keep the submarines down had

---

---

begun in earnest. All night long, the depth-charges of the escort vessels churned the water, jarring the merchantmen and making sleep impossible for the three thousand officers and men manning the escorts and their charges. Lieutenant-Commander Heino Bohmann, who had been forcing his *U-88* ahead of the convoy all afternoon through the fog, had planned to deliver a textbook attack on it: he would submerge ahead of it, and rise to periscope depth once the anti-submarine screen had passed over him. Twice he surfaced, but both times too soon, to find destroyers bearing down on him only a few hundred yards away on the beam. The second time he surfaced, the fog had closed in to 200 yards and the convoy had vanished. Commander Günther La Baume's *U-355* had a similar experience:

At pinpoint AB4895 forced back by destroyer [he reported]. Contact again at pinpoint AB5159 but sighted by corvette at pinpoint 5271 during convoy-overhauling manoeuvre and forced to dive. Six depth-charges, no damage.<sup>28</sup>

At 9:30 P.M., only *U-476* (Teichert) and *U-255* (Reche) still had the convoy in sight; Teichert had reported that visibility was steadily deteriorating. Ten minutes later, after Reche had fired a spread of two torpedoes at a destroyer and missed, he surfaced to find that the convoy had vanished, leaving only *U-456* in contact. Visibility had remained poor, and at 10:30 P.M. Teichert was following the convoy only by its oil track and the soundings on his hydrophone gear. Then he too lost it altogether.

The Air Force had held on until about midnight, and then the convoy had been swallowed up by the fog. The Allied heavy covering forces had still not been found by the Germans.

It was not until the following morning that submarines sighted the convoy again. This did not prevent the Admiralty from transmitting a “Home Fleet Operational” signal at a quarter-past seven

---

that morning, reporting that their direction-finding bearings had indicated that PQ.17 had been reported by the Germans at 4.47 and 6.37 A.M.; in fact, if anybody had reported the convoy it was not the Germans. The only U-boat signals transmitted during these early hours were by *U-456*, which reported at 3:30 A.M. to Narvik that he was still running in the convoy's oil track; by *U-355*, reporting his position (apparently well to the south of the convoy) and an improvement in visibility at 7 A.M.; and by two submarines, *U-376* and *U-251* at 4.07 and 8.40 A.M. respectively, that they were down to their last 35 tons of diesel fuel, which would enable them to follow the convoy until about 30° East, at which meridian they would have to return to Kirkenes to refuel.

There again seemed to be some danger of the submarines falling behind the convoy. Schmundt radioed them at 7.48 A.M., giving the convoy's position, heading and speed as last ascertained at midnight, and informing them that he now intended to establish a new patrol line off Bear Island. Soon after, *U-255* and *U-456* both sighted large patches of floating oil, with oily tracks leading away from them. *U-255*, ploughing through fogbanks with visibility down to 200 yards, picked up convoy sounds far away on the port quarter: "It's well known how far sound carries under water," Commander Reche later explained.<sup>29</sup> He hastened to transmit an immediate signal to Narvik, and turned his craft in the approximate direction of the convoy sounds.

The other submarines listened steadily for further reconnaissance reports from Narvik. *U-88*'s hydrophone gear was faulty, but by dead-reckoning and on the basis of Reche's sighting report Bohmann worked his way forward until at 2:30 P.M. he was able to log: "Convoy in sight again."

One of the reasons why the submarines had found it difficult to relocate the convoy was that at about seven o'clock that morning, it had altered due east. During the convoy's approach to this

---

turning point, Hamilton had purposely kept his force of four cruisers and three destroyers out of sight of the Germans, cruising in low visibility well to the north to avoid his force's being detected by any shadowing aircraft which might overshoot the convoy.<sup>30</sup> Hamilton had credited the Germans with sufficient insight to suspect that there would be cruisers covering the convoy, but by remaining hidden he intended to keep them guessing at his whereabouts. His original appreciation had been that to decoy Tovey's battle fleet, *Tirpitz* might be sailed in the direction of the QP convoy, now far to the south, while the two pocket-battleships, which Hamilton's force could fight, would deliver a separate attack on PQ.17, probably somewhere near Bear Island. The longer he remained unseen, therefore, the better his chances of trapping the two pocket-battleships and bringing them to action. By midday on 3 July, however, it seemed that this appreciation had not been correct: *Tirpitz* had not been sighted heading for the QP convoy yet, and Hamilton was possessed of the “uncomfortable feeling,” as he put it, that he was now on the wrong side of PQ.17 for protecting it against surface forces: “There was a possibility that the pocket-battleships might get in their attack and escape unscathed.”<sup>30</sup>

He decided the time had come to put into effect the second part of the Admiralty's “general plan”: the enemy should now be allowed to sight his cruiser force as soon as the weather cleared.

At 8.45 A.M. Hamilton accordingly turned his force eastward, on a course parallel to the convoy's, while still 25 miles to the north of it. Within a short time the cruisers were ploughing through seas littered with several waterlogged lifeboats and empty rafts – a keen reminder of the punishment taken at this spot by PQ.16 at the hands of the German Air Force five weeks earlier. Some time later, the last doubts that the German battle fleet was to attack this convoy were dispelled, as the cruiser force received an urgent signal indicating that the German main units

were at sea. At 2.20 P.M. a British Spitfire reconnaissance plane had broken through the clouds over Aasfiord, 15 miles east of Trondheim, and found *Tirpitz's* berth empty. The Admiralty signalled the cruiser force that photographic reconnaissance of Trondheim had shown *Tirpitz*, *Admiral Hipper* and four destroyers to be at sea. The patrols south of Iceland and in the Denmark Strait were strengthened to ensure against a breakout into the Atlantic, and all available aircraft patrols were flown to find the missing German warships.<sup>31</sup> Narvik had still not been covered.

It was, in Hamilton's view, high time the Germans learned of the presence of his force. Visibility had by now increased to maximum, under a sky still totally overcast; the first signs of the convoy that he saw were the German shadowing aircraft, and then the convoy itself came up on the horizon, the tips of its masts looking like an uneven picket fence. He quickly turned his force away, hoping the German aircraft had sighted and reported him to Norway, but by 5 P.M. there was still no Admiralty confirmation that such a report had been transmitted. The Germans seemed to have eyes only for the convoy.

AS THE GERMAN High Command now realised from the stream of sighting reports coming in, the PQ convoy intended to hug the icepack for most of its route, keeping as far to the north as possible. PQ.17 was apparently now some 90 miles west of Bear Island, and it seemed to be heading for the passage between the island and Spitzbergen – the first PQ convoy to sail north of Bear Island. The convoy, reported as comprising thirty-eight freighters in four columns, was hidden behind a screen of destroyers and was towing barrage balloons.

The sea's glassy surface still made it quite impossible for the submarines to come to close quarters with the merchant ships; they would have to content themselves with homing in the German aircraft. At 4.44 P.M. Schmuntt wirelessly the only two

---

submarines still in contact with the convoy: “Main task – shadowing.”

It was indeed the Admiralty’s intention that PQ.17 should give North Cape a wide berth. Some three hours earlier, Whitehall had wirelessly Admiral Hamilton the unexpected results of the latest aerial reconnaissance of the ice-barrier to the north. *London’s* Walrus aircraft was just about to be catapulted on ice-reconnaissance when this signal arrived at 5.45 P.M.<sup>32</sup>

A sortie the previous afternoon had shown that the passage between Bear Island and the icepack was 90 miles wide now; the ice was breaking up and melting away. There was one patch of probably navigable loose ice in the convoy’s path, and occasional small bergs about 30 feet high. Until now, Hamilton had no reason to suppose that the passage was more than 40 miles wide, as shown by reconnaissance a week before. Hamilton said afterward that the future was now “very much more hopeful.” He cancelled the Walrus’s assignment and sent it instead to *Keppel*, the convoy’s escort leader, with a signal suggesting to Commander Broome to pass 70 miles north of Bear Island and then aim for the 400-mile radius from Banak air base in Norway.

*Keppel* was oiling from *Aldersdale* when the aircraft approached at 7 P.M.; this was the second round of refuelling already for the thirsty destroyers. Commander Broome watched the aircraft’s Aldis lamp blink the new instructions to him, and also the information that Hamilton intended to remain 30 miles to the northward; finally, the American destroyer *Rowan* was to be returned to the cruiser squadron. At 8 P.M. Commander Broome altered the convoy’s course to a more north-easterly one – 53°.<sup>33</sup>

The Admiralty had meantime had the same idea as Hamilton and at 7.08 P.M. they had sent a signal ordering *Keppel* to pass at least 50 miles north of Bear Island. But when the Senior Officer of the escort signalled his amended convoy route to the Admiralty at 9.30 P.M., he had decided to take the convoy on a very

much more easterly course than either Hamilton or the Admiralty had thought advisable in view of the danger of enemy air attack. There were grounds for arguing that it made very little difference from the point of air attack whether a lumbering, 8-knot convoy was 300 or 500 miles from enemy aerodromes. Broome was more anxious to make progress to the eastward in the beneficial low visibility on his current route than to waste time skirting round the outer limits of the German bombers' range.<sup>34</sup> Had not the Admiralty's orders a week before expressly stated that the convoy was to be kept "moving to the eastward even though it is suffering damage"? Tovey subsequently supported his contention.

At about 9 P.M. a coded signal arrived from Whitehall advising Hamilton that *Tirpitz*, *Admiral Hipper* and four destroyers had definitely left Trondheim, but about five hours later the Admiralty added that although these warships were moving northward, there was no immediate danger. Since the foggy weather in the Barents Sea was favourable to the convoy's passage, the Admiralty was taking no further action for the moment, but would await developments. In merchant ship and warship alike, an element of nervousness displaced the buoyant optimism of the previous nights, now that they were entering the probable battle zone. Many sailors avoided sleeping in their assigned quarters for fear of a midnight torpedo; the cooks and others who normally spent most of their time below decks found themselves places to sleep as high above the waterline as possible.<sup>35</sup>

At 4:30 A.M. Hamilton signalled his force that they would maintain their present course until about six o'clock, when they would turn south until they reached the convoy, then take up station on the convoy's southern flank – closest to Norway.

WITH THE EXCEPTION of the damaged *Lützow* and the three destroyers which had dropped out, all the German warships were

now at Vestfiord and Altenfiord. The warships awaited only the codeword from Kiel to sally forth to attack the convoy. But Kiel could not act without the authority of the Naval Staff in Berlin, and Berlin was bound by the Führer’s injunction that the Allied “aircraft-carriers” were to be located before the attack and rendered harmless.

By late afternoon on 3 July, the German Naval Staff stood before the main decision, for such an Allied warship had been located, only to be lost again. At 1:50 A.M. a reconnaissance aircraft had sighted and shadowed for three hours a heavy enemy naval force, including an aircraft-carrier, some 300 miles southwest of the convoy. The aircraft had in fact sighted Admiral Tovey’s battle fleet as it was moving up to its covering position south of the convoy’s tracks.\*

An element of uncertainty had entered the German side of the story, as one hour after the initial sighting a second German aircraft claimed to have sighted a similar enemy force 100 miles to the south-east of the first. Apparently this second force also included an aircraft-carrier and two battleships. In fact, this second force did not exist; neither Tovey nor Hamilton (who was keeping his presence hidden hundreds of miles away to the north) reported sighting any aircraft at that time. The obvious effect of this wrong sighting on the German planning was to place a second aircraft-carrier somewhere in Arctic waters – a carrier that had to be located and neutralised before the German fleet could sail. A crippling hesitancy was introduced into the German decision-making.

The Germans realised at once the possibility of error. With considerable acumen, their Air Force operations staff set up the

\* “At 2.00 A.M. on 3rd July, the Fleet was . . . sighted by air reconnaissance, and shadowed until 4:30 A.M.” The two aircraft were both from *KG.40* reconnaissance wing, based at Trondheim.<sup>36</sup>

---

hypothesis that there was in fact only one force, which one or other of the two aircraft had inaccurately fixed. The total force might then credibly comprise *one* aircraft-carrier, two battleships, three cruisers and five destroyers.

Notwithstanding Lofoten Air Command's loyal defence of its two pilots' faculties of observation and navigation, Admiral Schmudt also held that the concentration of two such heavy forces would be "unlikely." Naval Group North in Kiel also associated itself with this view, while warning that the presence of two such forces could not be ruled out altogether. It did not, for example, explain what had happened to the other heavy ships, one "battleship" and three cruisers – presumably Hamilton's squadron – that had definitely been identified in the large force off Iceland two days before. Uncertainty and hesitation prevailed in Germany, even though at every level in the Navy – from Schniewind the fleet commander through Carls and right up to Raeder – it was not thought that such remote enemy force could seriously endanger the operation. In any case, the fleet's attack could be broken off at a moment's notice if necessary.

The German Naval Staff was convinced that the movement of their two battle groups had not yet been detected by the enemy. Yet the Führer's restriction still stood, for the enemy aircraft-carriers, although found, had not been neutralised; and fog was preventing all attempts at relocating the enemy's battle fleet.

During the early afternoon, therefore, General-Admiral Carls ordered Schmudt:

Operate submarines low in fuel (especially Timm and Marks) against heavy enemy battle fleet, using the rest of their fuel for attack and return to nearest fuelling base.

Schmudt was greatly put out by this unrealistic order. As Carl's subordinate, he had to carry it out, but he protested to Carls:

---

nothing had been heard of the enemy fleet for ten hours; the two submarines named were 400 miles away; he had planned to exhaust their remaining fuel in the operations against PQ.17 now approaching “a decisive phase” and then return them to Kirkenes to refuel; and operations against enemy fleets could more appositely be executed by submarines in greater force and adequately fuelled for lengthy operations.<sup>37</sup>

Carls did not reply to this for several hours. At four o’clock that afternoon, Carls telephoned the Chief of Naval Operations in Berlin to ask for a decision, one way or the other, on whether *The Knight’s Move* was to go ahead or not. He suggested that in the meantime the *Tirpitz* group should move up from Vestfiord to join the other group at Altenfiord; both battle groups could then sail together, as circumstances permitted. The Naval Staff put this suggestion to Raeder, but he was unwilling to approve even this without Hitler’s permission.\* He ordered first that a report be made to the Führer on this. The report was to make it clear that while he, Raeder, was aware that all the conditions had not been met, and that air reconnaissance had failed to establish clearly the enemy battle fleet’s recent movements, both the Naval Staff and Naval Group agreed that the *Tirpitz* group should be transferred to Altenfiord with the other battle group, to avoid wasting time when – and if – the order for the attack should be issued. Vice-Admiral Krancke was particularly instructed to make it plain that the Führer’s permission was desired only for the provisional transfer, not for any attack itself as yet.

General-Admiral Carls expressly asked that the final order for the attack should be issued by 10 P.M. that night if possible. But

\* The real value, in terms of hours gained, of such a move is open to doubt. The battle fleet’s advance would have been governed by the speed of the pocket-battleship, which was at Altenfiord already. Perhaps the psychological reason underlying Carls’s suggestion was that he wanted his superiors to commit themselves, to resign themselves to an eventual sortie.

---

although Krancke (Raeder's naval representative at the Führer's headquarters) made an attempt to see Hitler to place Raeder's request before him, he learned that the Führer was "not available."<sup>\*</sup> Krancke reassured Raeder that, from the general tenor of Hitler's discussions with him, he was satisfied that there would be no objections raised from that quarter. Naval Group North was ordered to see to the transfer of the *Tirpitz* group from Vestfiord to Altenfiord at once.

Convoy PQ.17 was already approaching the northern barrier of pack ice. Shortly before seven o'clock, the Asdic trawler *Lord Austin* signalled an anxious warning to *Keppel* that she had sighted a "suspicious vessel" ahead; a few minutes later she corrected this to, "iceberg in sight." Half an hour later a second iceberg hove into view, and then a third. Soon the German submarines trailing the convoy were wirelessly back to Narvik that the convoy was surging at a steady 8 knots through fields of icefloes often jutting 25 feet and more out of the leaden sea.

At the same time, the Admiralty wirelessly the convoy escort:

Single D/F bearings at 4.21 and 5.10 P.M. suggest presence of enemy unit or units, probably U-boats, in the vicinity of PQ.17 – probably shadowing.

That the Admiralty's Submarine Tracking Room was able to secure only single direction-finding bearings on wireless transmissions in these hazardous northern waters must be borne in mind in a later context. Normally two bearings on an enemy transmitter would suffice to locate it; but in the waters north of North Cape, the position was less favourable as – for reasons not hard to divine – the Russians had refused permission for the

<sup>\*</sup> Hitler had flown out of his Rastenburg HQ at 4 A.M. for an all-day visit to the HQ of Army Group South at Poltava.<sup>38</sup>



Admiral Sir Dudley Pound,  
First Sea Lord



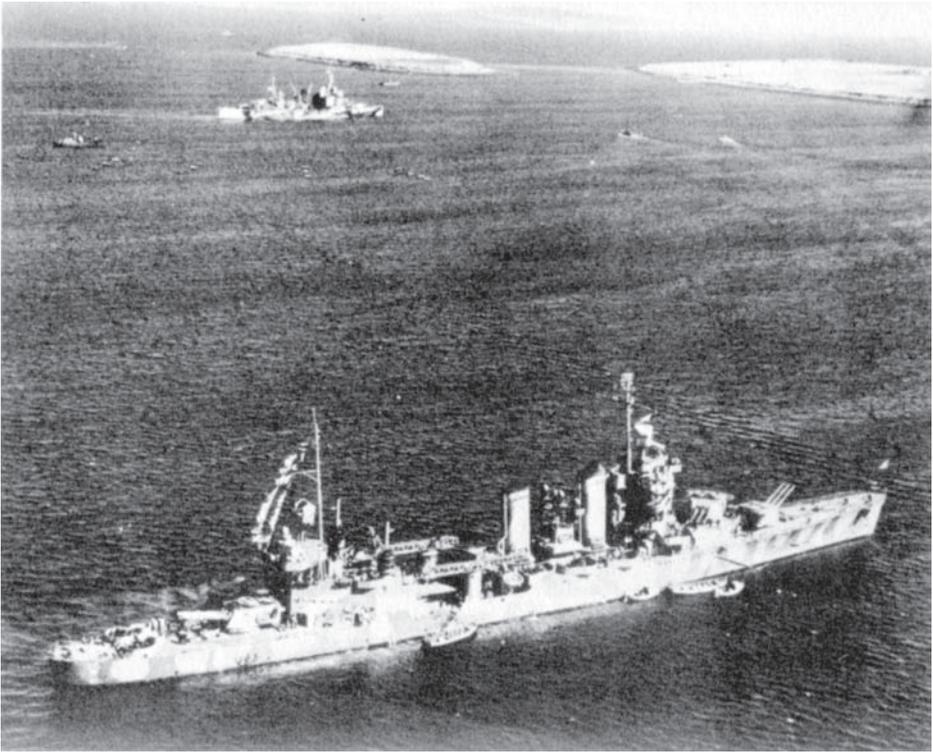
Rear-Admiral L. H. K. Hamilton, commanding  
the First Cruiser Squadron



Admiral Sir John Tovey,  
Commander-in-Chief,  
Home Fleet



Captain Jack Broome, who,  
as Commander Broome,  
led the First Escort Group in HMS *Keppel*

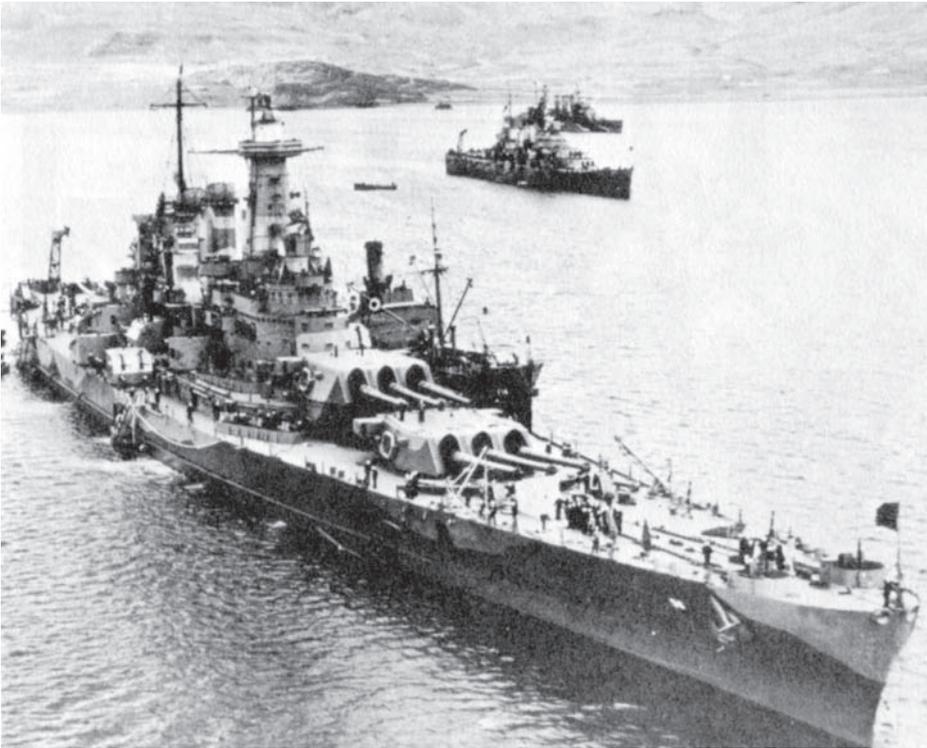


The American cruiser *Tuscaloosa* (foreground) and Admiral Hamilton's flagship *London* at Scapa Flow, April 1942



Convoy Commodore J. C. K. Dowding reports to Admiral Tovey





The battleship *USS Washington* and the cruiser  
*HMS Norfolk* at Scapa Flow, May 1942



PQ.17 assembling – Hvalfjord



A Convoy Conference. Commander Broome's telling cartoon, "Subscriptions in Advance," can be glimpsed at the rear right

On 27 June 1942, the convoy sailed. "Like so many dirty ducks, they waddled out past the nets and to sea"





Adolf Hitler with Grand-Admiral Raeder, Commander-in-Chief of the German Navy



Colonel-General Stumpff, commanding the German Fifth Air Force in Norway



Vice-Admiral Otto Schniewind, German Commander-in-Chief afloat, in the battleship *Tirpitz*

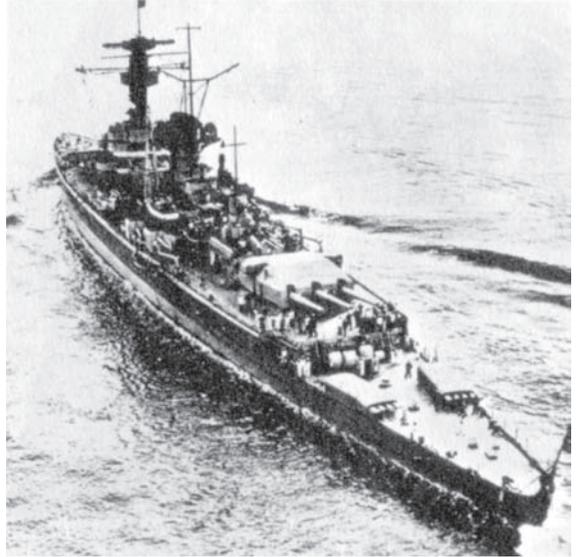


General-Admiral Carls, Admiral Commanding Naval Group North, with his Führer



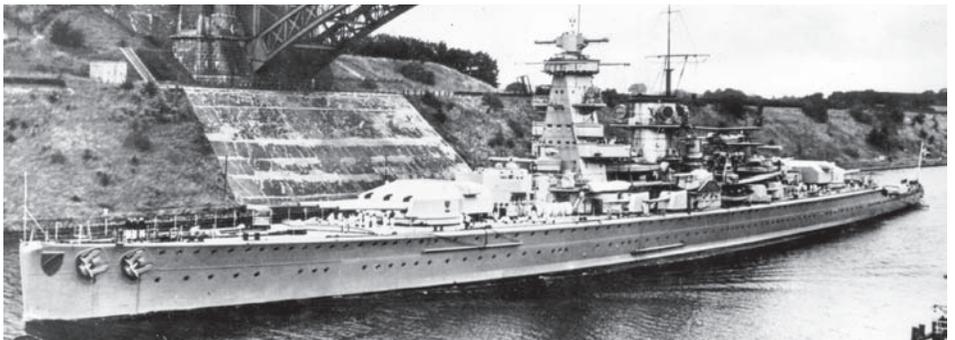
*Tirpitz*

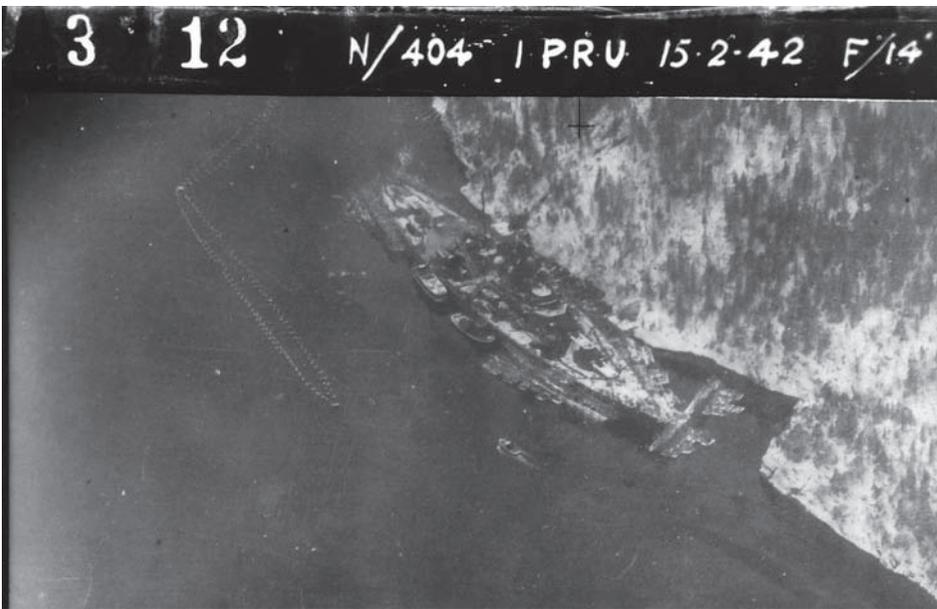
*Lützow*



*Admiral Hipper*

*Below: Admiral Scheer*





*Tirpitz* in Foetten Fiord, near Trondheim, on 15 February 1942.  
A photograph taken by a low-flying RAF reconnaissance aircraft

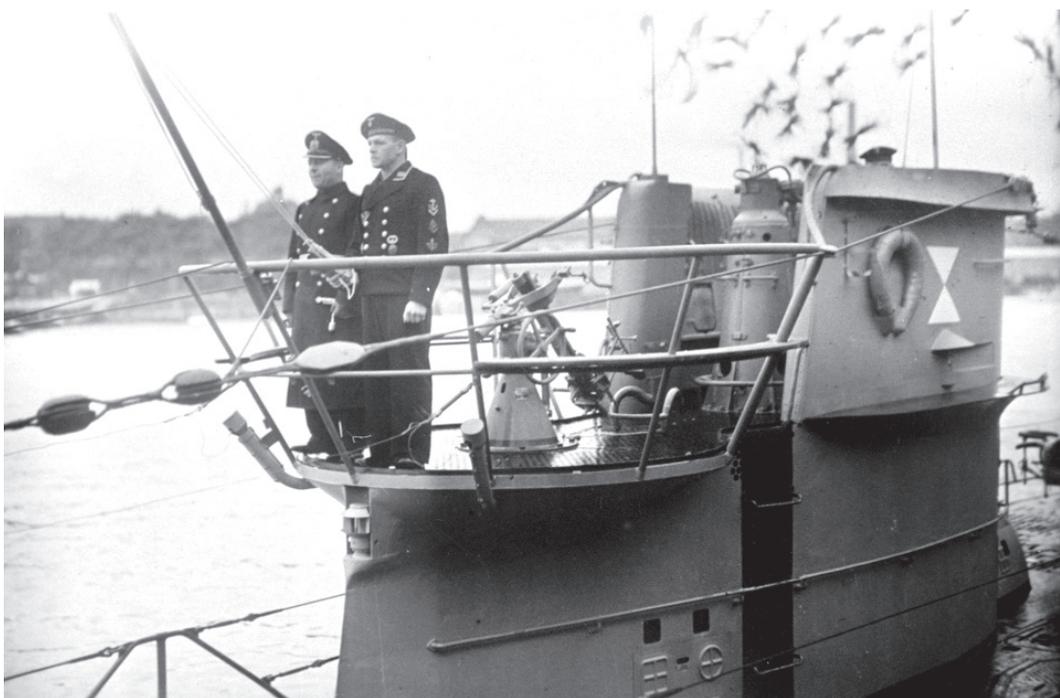
The German air-raid on Murmansk on 1 July 1942  
made it impossible to unload ships there.  
PQ.17 was therefore diverted to Archangel





Commander Reinhard Reche, commander of *U-255*, reports to Clausen, commander of 11th U Boot Flotilla (left)

Commander Heinrich Brodda brings *U-209* back into port



British to establish a wireless monitoring station on their northern territory. At the time of PQ.17, only long-range and very narrow-angle bearings could be obtained on U-boat signals north of North Cape, and these were not adequate.<sup>39</sup>

By this time the Anglo-American battle fleet was moving up to a new position, in readiness to strike at the German battle fleet. Admiral Tovey, who had been in “considerable doubt” as to where the German U-boats were, had now gathered from the Admiralty that the submarines were congregating to the north-eastward near the convoy.

At 5.23 P.M. the British Commander-in-Chief accordingly altered his battle fleet to northward, so that it would cross well astern of the convoy’s tracks and avoid being sighted by any U-boats that might be straggling behind the main pack.<sup>40</sup> It was important that his fleet should not be detected moving up into its new covering position in the north.

Tovey calculated that the German surface attack on the convoy was unlikely to materialise before 6 A.M. the next morning, 4 July, and by that time his fleet would be so positioned on the far side of the convoy that his aircraft-carrier would be well within range for an air strike. When the Germans appeared, his carrier-aircraft could suddenly pounce on their heavy vessels and perhaps disable them long enough for his fleet proper to arrive and deliver the *coup de grâce*. The hook was baited and the trap was set, but would the Germans blunder in?

## 5

TO THE GERMAN Commander-in-Chief afloat, Admiral Schniewind, aboard his flagship *Tirpitz*, the continued delay in the arrival of the final codeword for launching the battle fleet’s attack was by now both oppressive and inexplicable. Unaware of the telephone calls that were passing between Kiel and Berlin,

---

and between Berlin and the Führer's headquarters, he could see no reason why the two battle groups – his own at Vestfiord and the pocket-battleship *Admiral Scheer* at Altenfiord – should not leave at once. Both battle groups had anchored without further complication in their two advanced bases, the *Tirpitz* and *Admiral Hipper* at 2 P.M. in Vestfiord's Gimsøy Narrows and the *Admiral Scheer* and her attendant destroyers almost four hours later at Altenfiord.<sup>41</sup> The destroyers had by now finished their refuelling programme.

At five o'clock, an aircraft catapulted by *Tirpitz* arrived at Narvik bringing three signals that Schniewind wanted Schmundt's nearby headquarters to transmit for him. To his consternation, Schmundt saw that the first of the three signals was the executive order for the launching of *The Knight's Move* at 10 A.M. the next morning. Schmundt commented: "Obviously the fleet has made a mistake, as Naval Group North has not yet issued the codeword ordering the attack."

Schmundt suppressed the signal. An immediate command-level teleprinter "conversation" took place between Narvik and Kiel. Schmundt told General-Admiral Carls of the fleet commander's action and of the other two signals he had received from Schniewind, one of which asked for closer information on the enemy's movements, while the other reported for the first time the damage suffered by the three destroyers – *Riedel*, *Galster* and *Lody* – in the *Tirpitz* group. Carls approved Schmundt's action in suppressing the premature sailing order and promised for his part to secure an early decision on when the codeword should finally be issued.

Admiral Schniewind was signalled, "Await the return of your ship's aircraft."

None the less, fifteen minutes later, at 6.00 P.M., the German fleet commander had weighed anchor in Vestfiord, and *Tirpitz* and her consorts were putting out to sea.

THE SUCCESSFUL British reconnaissance of *Tirpitz*'s earlier berth at Trondheim sent a ripple of agitation through the teleprinter networks of the German Navy. The Germans realised that the Allied discovery that the *Tirpitz* was on the move would probably have a profound effect on their plans for covering the convoy's passage.

At about the time *Tirpitz* was nosing out of Vestfiord, General-Admiral Carls sent a detailed signal to Schmundt, Kummetz, the Naval Staff, the Fifth Air Force and Admiral Schniewind:

APPRECIATION OF SITUATION AS OF 6 P.M.

1. Distant covering force last sighted 4:30 P.M. Probably only one carrier force, but two not ruled out. Carrier force possibly following eastward.
2. Battle groups will accordingly first link up in Altenfiord; further decision follows.
3. PQ.17 sighted by submarines at pinpoint AB.3740 [West of Bear Island] at 3.25 P.M. Spitfire sortie over Aasfiord [Trondheim] at 2.20 P.M. may bear upon enemy's movements.
4. *Lützow*, *Riedel*, *Galster*, *Lody* have dropped out.

*Naval Group North. Most Secret.*

Two hours later, Carls signalled the fleet commander: “Transfer to Altenfiord. Decisions whether internal or external route will be left to you. Decision on issue of codeword follows later. Report intentions.”\*

*Tirpitz*, however, was not at anchor patiently awaiting orders from Kiel. At the time Carls's first signal arrived, the battleship was already advancing on the convoy. The second signal was already being transmitted when *Tirpitz*'s aircraft returned to

\* The two signals originated at 6 P.M. and 7.57 P.M. respectively.

Narvik; from its pilot Schmudt was shocked to learn that *Tirpitz's* battle group had on Schniewind's own initiative sailed at six o'clock.

Upon receipt of General-Admiral Carls's order, the group now changed course and headed for North Cape.\* By ten o'clock the next morning – Saturday, 4 July – the entire German battle fleet was obediently lying at Altenfiord waiting for the order to attack to reach them from Kiel.

LATE ON THE EVENING of 3 July, Hamilton again felt it important for the success of the Admiralty's general plan that the Germans should be afforded another careless glimpse of his cruiser force, and at nine o'clock he had accordingly altered to the south-east to close to within 20 miles of the convoy.<sup>32</sup> At 10.15 P.M. he sighted the convoy's barrage balloons over the horizon, and almost immediately was himself sighted by two Blohm & Voss shadowers. The convoy was passing only about 30 miles north of Bear Island. Hamilton learned some minutes later from Whitehall that the Germans had at last reported him, "which pleased me considerably," he reported to his Commander-in-Chief.

Having achieved his purpose, he turned his cruiser force parallel with the convoy once more, 30 miles to the north. He broke wireless silence for the first time to inform the Admiralty and his Commander-in-Chief that he had been shadowed, adding that he intended both the convoy and the cruiser force to pass 70 miles north of Bear Island.

\* *Tirpitz's* plane brought the following signal for transmission to Naval Group North in Kiel: "I infer from your 5.49 P.M. orders to proceed to Altenfiord. Proceeding externally as far as Naja, then internally. Pinpoint Richard One at 1 A.M., minesweeper there. (2) As at present informed on enemy, I support continuation of *The Knight's Move* early tomorrow morning. (3) Urgently require clear picture of enemy heavy forces' movements by then. *Fleet Commander.*"

---

During the evening, the net of submarines began to close in on the convoy. The U-boats made repeated attempts to come to close quarters, but the patchy fog and glassy sea effectively thwarted them. “The conditions are the most unfavourable imaginable for submarines,” complained Admiral Schmundt that night.<sup>37</sup> His U-boat commanders could clearly see the heavy merchant ships, and counted four of their barrage balloons waiting to be sent aloft. One by one Reche, Teichert, Bielfeld, Bohmann and Siemon picked up the convoy again, but none could attack. “Numerous subs are closing in,” wrote the Second Officer of the American freighter *Bellingham* in his diary that night. “Depth-charges have been jarring the vessels all day long.”<sup>42</sup> Half an hour before midnight, at Commander Broome’s request, Hamilton’s flagship catapulted its Walrus aircraft on an anti-submarine patrol astern of the convoy. Hamilton furnished the Walrus crew with a renewed suggestion to Commander Broome to route the convoy 400 miles from Banak airfield.

The Walrus, cumbersome, ugly and slow, was crewed by three Fleet Air Arm officers, and its top speed was just below that of the German Blohm & Voss 138 floatplanes, of which there were now between two and four constantly circling the convoy, keeping a respectful distance from its anti-aircraft defences. It was therefore no problem for *London*’s Walrus to fly into the convoy and to harass the U-boats impudently trailing it on the surface some miles astern. But when its fuel endurance was running low, the Walrus found itself unable to extricate itself and return to its cruiser, because one or other of the German shadowers pounced on it and opened fire each time. After several attempts, the Walrus pilot gave up and resolved to land inside the convoy, to be taken in tow by one of the escorts.

The plane still had its anti-submarine depth-charges, with which it could not land, so as it came in over the convoy for the last time its observer released the two depth-charges in a clear

space of water. Unfortunately he had forgotten to drop them safe, and the bombs exploded as they hit the sea; the bemused ships' gunners were convinced this must in fact be a German plane. The corvette *Lotus* and the trawler *Lord Middleton* both opened fire on the plane with their pom-poms.<sup>43</sup> The Walrus landed safely nevertheless and was taken in tow by the trawler, to wait for the weather to deteriorate sufficiently for it to rejoin the cruiser force.

The submarines continued to close in. Soon after midnight, Whitehall signalled PQ.17 that German aircraft were using beacon procedure to home in submarines on to the convoy, and they added that they had obtained direction-finding bearings indicating that several submarines were shadowing and reporting on the convoy.<sup>5</sup> But that was all; while the visibility even at midnight remained so good, the U-boats could not attack. The German Naval Staff noted without comment that none of the submarines had yet scored any victories against the convoy.

When Admiral Schmudt renewed his protest at the order to two of his submarines to engage the enemy battle fleet although they were almost out of fuel, and the enemy was well to the west of the Lofotens, General-Admiral Carls replied tartly that as far as the remaining eight U-boats were concerned "the lack of any kills so far makes it seem probable that with shadowing their repertoire is virtually exhausted – in which case eight submarines are enough."<sup>44</sup> Schmudt retired to bed to lick his wounds.

During the night, the wireless officer of the *Bellingham* tuned in to "Lord Haw-Haw," broadcasting from Germany. A notice was pinned to the ship's bulletin-board announcing that William Joyce had promised the American seamen that they would get a "real display of fireworks" on their Fourth of July.<sup>45</sup>

In the SS *Carlton* another seaman was reminded of the good old days back home: "I realized," he later wrote to his wife from a German prison camp, "that this was the eve of Independence

---

---

Day, and my daydreams rested on the memories of the fireworks and thrills that Baltimore enjoyed on every Fourth of July; and I wished then that I was there to see them. Oh God, how ignorant we are of the future!”

It was shortly after midnight that the German Naval Group North first learned that at 10:30 P.M. one of their aircraft had sighted what seemed to be a heavy enemy force cruising some 35 miles north-west of Bear Island, in the immediate vicinity of convoy PQ.17.

Alas for the best laid plans, for the aircraft had reported Rear-Admiral Hamilton’s force as comprising one “battleship,” one heavy and two light cruisers, and three destroyers.

The German Naval Staff immediately realised that it was “possible that this is the convoy’s close covering force of cruisers and destroyers, and that the identification of one of them as a battleship is a mistake.”<sup>46</sup>

The “battleship” was in fact really a cruiser, probably Hamilton’s flagship: *London* had been modified to have two funnels, rather like *Duke of York*, and the confusion was understandable.<sup>47</sup> But as soon as the Germans even began to suspect the presence of a “battleship” with the convoy, the Admiralty’s carefully laid plan began to come unstuck. As General-Admiral Carls put it, if there were only cruisers covering the convoy then all was still well; but if there was a battleship in close company, then a raid by *Tirpitz* would have to be ruled out altogether, unless both the “battleship” and any aircraft-carrier that might consequently be nearby could be neutralised.

It had to be assumed that the Allies either already had detected, or shortly would detect, the transfer north of both German battle groups. This left four possible courses of action open to the Allies. As the German Naval Staff saw them, these were:

1. turn their precious convoy back; or

2. move their battle fleet up so close to the convoy, and accompany it so far, that it will no longer be practicable for us to engage it with our own surface forces; or
3. if two battle groups *are* out there, keep one group with the convoy while stationing the other north-west of the Lofotens, in order to deprive our battle fleet of its tactical freedom, and attack it with carrier-borne aircraft; or
4. keep their heavy forces well out of the range of our bomber- and torpedo-aircraft, being thus compelled to leave the convoy's protection to a few light cruisers and destroyers.<sup>48</sup>

In the first case, the Germans would no longer be able to surprise the Allies, but on the other hand the convoy would either not reach its destination at all, or at least be delayed a long time. The second alternative would equally result in the Allies exposing their forces to German submarine and bomber attacks, while the third was hemmed in by such formidable imponderables that it would be unrealistic to risk the German fleet.

Only in the fourth and last situation envisaged did the Naval Staff see "all the prerequisites basic to the operational plan for '*The Knight's Move*' satisfied." This is the situation which would have arisen, had the British Admiralty's plan been adhered to.

As the hours of midnight passed – hours of darkness in Berlin, but of eerie brightness in the latitudes of Bear Island – the German Naval Staff waited tensely for the next reconnaissance report to confirm or deny the existence of vessels larger than cruisers in close company with PQ.17. "If this force should not continue eastward, or if it should transpire that it does not consist of heavy units, the way would be open for our own battle groups to sail into the attack on 4 or 5 July." But when the German shadowing aircraft looked again, there was no sign of the elusive cruisers. Admiral Hamilton's force had headed to the north again, satisfied that they had been sighted, and in Germany the doubts

accordingly remained unresolved. At 2.20 A.M. Naval Group North telephoned Schmundt's office at Narvik and ordered a change in the emphasis of the submarine offensive for the time being: the U-boats were to concentrate on seeking opportunities of attacking “aircraft-carriers and battleships”; shadowing the convoy and attacking its freighters were of secondary importance. The three submarines, by now low on fuel, were to return at once to refuel.

## 6

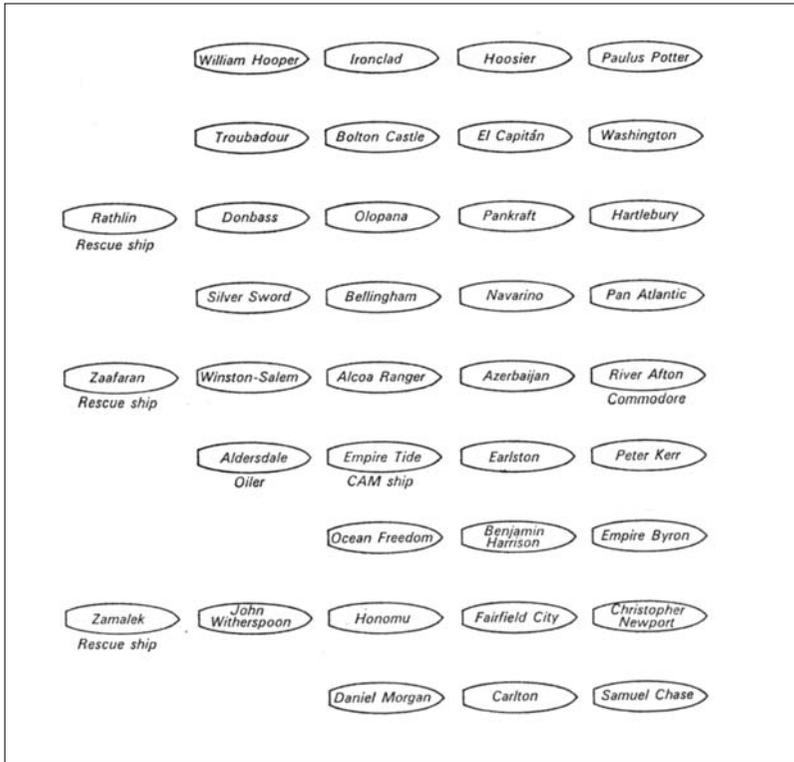
AT ABOUT the same time, the lookouts in the convoy's merchant ships became aware that numbers of aircraft were circling the convoy. At 2.19 A.M. *Keppel* had signalled all the escorts that “enemy aircraft are coming in to attack on the starboard side.”<sup>5</sup> The attack did not materialise at once, which may have been because the aircraft were having difficulty in sighting the convoy, now shrouded in a thick sea fog, with the cloud ceiling right down to only about 200 feet. There was not a breath of wind, and the sea was smooth save for the wash of the three score merchant ships and escort vessels steaming steadily to the north-east. The merchant ships could see nothing but the fog buoys trailed by the ship ahead of them, but they were keeping almost perfect station none the less. Once an aircraft did break cloud and head across the convoy, barely 30 feet up. Its pilot was perhaps as surprised as were the freighters' gunners, for the few ships which did have time to open fire scored no hits, and the plane dropped no torpedo. “General quarters” was sounded on all ships.

For two hours, the aircraft engines could be heard muttering vaguely through the fog. Then, at 4.50 A.M., one of the aircraft, a Heinkel 115 torpedo-bomber of the Coastal Command *Staffel I./906*, turned abruptly in from perhaps half a mile away, cut its engines, and glided silently toward the convoy, falling to a height

of less than 30 feet above the waves. Its pilot saw the dim shapes of three or four large merchant ships looming up grey across its path, and swung round until his plane would head diagonally into the starboard flank of the convoy. "The plane was not heard until it was seen," reported the Armed Guard officer of the American Liberty ship *Samuel Chase* afterward.<sup>49</sup> His ship was right in the path of the attacking aircraft.

Aboard the SS *Carlton*, the next in line astern of the *Samuel Chase*, in the extreme starboard column of the convoy, panic broke out as the Heinkel was suddenly spotted gliding noiselessly toward her through the luminous fog. When the aircraft was only a very short distance from the column, it released two torpedoes, then switched on its engines again to roar out of range of the ships' guns. The torpedoes scudded rapidly toward the leading ships of the starboard column. *Carlton's* Chief Officer shrieked for the helm to be put over hard to port, and the engines went Full Astern; with the ship shuddering from stem to stern, she lost way, the salt water boiling in a mass under the reversed tread of the screws. The torpedoes missed the American's bows by about 10 feet, watched by a dazed ordinary seaman standing lookout on the fo'c's'le-head. The torpedoes sped diagonally on through the gap between the *Carlton* and *Samuel Chase* to the next column to port – column eight. The copper-yellow war-head of one torpedo was clearly visible just below the surface of the sea.

*Carlton* sounded her siren to warn the leading ships in column eight, but too late: the weapon was heading straight for the midship section of the 7,197-ton Liberty ship *Christopher Newport* at the head of that column.<sup>50</sup> The ship's Armed Guard officer kept his head and ordered the machine-guns to be turned on the torpedo racing toward them. The *Newport's* merchant seamen loading the guns lost their nerve and scrambled to the ship's port side. One gunner remained at his post, directing a hail of



### LAYOUT OF MERCHANT SHIPS IN CONVOY PQ.17

*before the loss of Christopher Newport on 4 July 1942*

bullets at the torpedo; but the water deflected them and the torpedo sped on. It slammed into the ship's engine-room, tearing a gaping hole and knocking the steering gear out of action. A tongue of flame and smoke licked momentarily out of the wound, and it was all over. The gallant gunner who had risked so much was lying unconscious on the deck, three men in the engine-room were dead or dying, and the helpless ship was yawing out of control across the sixth and seventh columns of the convoy, narrowly missing the other ships, before she wallowed right round in the opposite direction to that of the convoy and slowed to a standstill.<sup>51</sup> The surviving ships rolled past her, and the convoy was swallowed up by the fog.

---

*Christopher Newport* – code-number in the convoy, “Penway 81” – wirelessly *Keppel*: “Hit by aerial torpedo.” Commander Broome ordered *Leamington*, *Ledbury* and *Poppy*: “Take all possible action to keep U-boats down.” Some of the escorts would have to stay behind to tend to, and if necessary finish off, the torpedoed ship, and they could themselves fall an easy prey to any submarines; in fact none of the U-boats was in contact with the convoy now.

Her buzzers sounding “Rescue Stations,” Captain Morris’s little *Zamalek* (1,567 tons) was already making for the American ship; her crew had needed no orders to abandon ship. Even before the torpedo hit, the vessel’s lifeboats had been swung out ready: two of the four had been destroyed in the blast, but the other two were already pulling away from the merchant ship, which while she remained in sight showed no signs of settling at any time, according to the eye-witnesses.<sup>49</sup>

Twenty-five minutes later, the rescue ship had picked up all the American’s forty-seven survivors, including the Master, Captain C. E. Nash. It was a strangely varied crew: one of them, the boatswain, was over eighty, while the youngest of the gunners was only seventeen.

The seamen were headed, as they climbed aboard, by an elderly Scots engineer; behind him came a throng of laughing, shouting, happy seamen. Captain Morris had never seen shipwrecked seamen as exuberant as this. Most of them were Negroes, and all of them seemed to be carrying little brown and grey suitcases as though they were going to the City; some of them were in their “Sunday best,” complete with collar and tie. All were dryshod, so smoothly had the abandonment and the rescue operation run.<sup>52</sup> When Morris saw his seamen labouring to help the American crew aboard, loading up their suitcases and luggage, he finally lost his temper and shouted to his men not to mind about the baggage.

---

They were by now 7 or 8 miles behind the convoy, and only a corvette and one or two minesweepers had remained behind. The oiler *Aldersdale* was signalling that she was willing to take the crippled American in tow. Commander Broome ordered the corvette *Dianella* to stand by, and signalled the minesweeper *Britomart* “Vet 81,” meaning that they were to investigate the ship’s state and report back. At 5.20 A.M., after Morris had picked up the last survivors, *Britomart* signalled *Keppel*:

Master of *Chris Newport* reports engine-room and stokehold flooded. Might float if bulkheads hold. Steering gear out of action.

Broome knew there was no time to get the Liberty ship under way again. He ordered *Britomart* to resume her station one mile astern of the convoy, and signalled *Dianella* to take a submarine over to the abandoned freighter and sink her. *P-614* fired one or two torpedoes into the ship, but the American showed no signs of going down. *Dianella* even tried a couple of depth charges, but they had equally little effect.<sup>53</sup> By now even *Zamalek* was disappearing over the horizon toward the convoy, so the corvette and submarine finally gave up their attempts to sink the *Christopher Newport* and headed after them. The brand-new Liberty ship was left on the surface.

Aboard the rescue ship, Captain Morris ordered his Chief Officer to bring the American Master up to his bridge. He also ordered his Chief Steward to make a big pan of steak-and-kidney pudding, so that if his rescue ship were now hit, then at least everybody would have adequate sustenance for survival. Some moments later, Captain Nash was brought to see Morris with his Armed Guard officer; the little Welsh Captain suspiciously eyed the heavy American service revolver strapped to Nash’s waist. Morris interrupted Nash’s long-winded description of the

loss of his ship to inform him that he could not allow the Americans to wear revolvers on his ship; would they please hand them to *Zamalek*'s Chief Officer, Mr. Macdonald?

For a moment Nash could only gape; Morris was a good eighteen inches shorter than he was. He protested, "Well good God, kid! What are we going to do? These are all nigger boys!"

Morris quietly ordered Mr. Macdonald to collect their revolvers. Nash was shouting: "They're all Negroes – if they start a panic, you've got to shoot them, you see." Morris told him that there was not going to be any shooting in his ship. He further intimated that if the Americans disliked accepting orders from him, they could go back where he had found them – in their lifeboats. For a moment it was in the balance, then the two Americans unstrapped their guns and handed them over. Throughout the rest of the voyage to Archangel, during which at one stage *Zamalek* was under air attack for four hours continuously, not one of the Negroes showed the least signs of panic.

At 5.45 A.M. *Britomart*, by now closing on the convoy, informed *Keppel*: "One officer, two men killed in *Chris Newport*. *Zamalek* has 47 survivors." As for the ship herself, her former Armed Guard officer reported to the American authorities that she had "sunk stern first, as result of gunfire of British escort vessel."

THE LOSS of the freighter had a second consequence. The noise of the torpedoes, the depth-charges and the increased movements of the escorts carried far through the medium of the water, and at 5.03 A.M. Commander Reche picked up the convoy on the sound-location equipment in *U-255*; it was the first indication of it since midnight.

This, together with a 4.50 A.M. report from the naval radio monitoring service that an aircraft had reported hitting a ship with an aerial torpedo, convinced Admiral Schmundt that the convoy would shortly be found again. At seven o'clock, *U-457*

(Lieutenant-Commander Brandenburg) sighted a single merchant ship and a shadowing aircraft, having picked up convoy sounds an hour before.

He switched on a signal transmitter for the other U-boats to home in on him, and closed on the vessel himself. But the ship was lifeless and abandoned – it was the hapless *Christopher Newport*, which had successfully defied the efforts of both the German Air Force and the British Navy to sink her.

At 8.23 A.M., having satisfied his curiosity about the freighter’s identity, port of origin and cargo, he put a torpedo in her and watched her sink.

The only Intelligence the convoy now received from Whitehall was a wireless message at 8.54 A.M. to the effect that the convoy had last been reported at 5.15 A.M., while direction-finding bearings had indicated that the convoy had been shadowed and reported “throughout the night.”

Once again this was not strictly accurate, but it was not the kind of error that caused damage. In fact by 11.30 A.M. both the German Air Force and the U-boats were forced to admit that neither was in contact with convoy PQ.17.

Independence Day had dawned. In London it was bright and sunny; in the Arctic it was foggy, windless and cold. The temperature was now 3° below zero, and still the convoy had farther north to go.

In the American merchant ships, the tattered Stars and Stripes were hauled down and clean new Ensigns were run up in their place.

From the bridge of the British cruiser *Norfolk*, the daylight signalling lantern was flashing a Fourth of July greeting across to the American cruiser *Wichita*: “Many happy returns of the day. The United States is the only country with a known birthday.” Captain H. W. Hill, USN, made the reply: “Thank you. I think England should celebrate Mother’s Day.”

From his flagship *London*, Rear-Admiral Hamilton sent a more formal greeting to the other cruisers and the three destroyers of his screen:

On the occasion of your great anniversary, it seems most uncivil to make you stationkeep at all, but even today Freedom of the Seas can be read two ways. It is a privilege for us all to have you with us and I wish you all the best of hunting.

It was a typically RN salutation; but underlying it was the grim conviction that today was to be the day when they might well be meeting the German battle fleet. A loyal Captain Hill replied: "It is a great privilege to be here with you today in furtherance of the ideals which 4th July had always represented to us and we are particularly happy to be a portion of your command."

The celebration of Independence Day, he reminded Hamilton, always required large firework displays: "I trust you will not disappoint us."

## Decisions and Disaster

*Saturday, 4 July – Sunday, 5 July*

*Hearty congratulations. The petals of your flower are of rare beauty.*

– ADMIRAL POUND TO DESTROYER COMMANDER, HAVING EXAMINED LATTER'S CAPTURE OF A GERMAN U-BOAT'S SECRET CODEBOOKS IN MAY 1941

IT WAS NOW of overriding importance for the Germans to establish exactly what their enemy's intentions were, so that the German battle fleet could be sailed into the attack.

On the previous evening, General-Admiral Carls had rephrased the Navy's requirements of the German Air Force in a signal to Fifth Air Force headquarters: should their search for signs of the enemy's heavy forces remain fruitless during the night, he asked the Air Force to give him, at 5 A.M. and 9 A.M. the next day – 4 July – “authoritative statements” on those sea areas which had been thoroughly swept by air reconnaissance and found to be devoid of enemy units.<sup>1</sup>

By mid-morning of 4 July, however, the Air Force had lost convoy PQ.17 as well, while there was still no news either of the suspected battle fleet, or of the heavy force apparently accompanying the convoy – Rear-Admiral Hamilton's cruiser force, in

fact. The German battle fleet had perforce to remain at anchor at Altenfiord.

It was not until shortly before 7:30 A.M. that the Air Force found the convoy again. It was steering due east in “five columns of seven ships each”; the aircraft reported that there was a strong escort screen, and strangely enough a “double-decker” seaplane in the convoy too – the Walrus which had had to be taken in tow at about midnight by one of the trawlers. If the battle fleet was not going to attack, it seemed to Admiral Schmundt (who was unaware of this aerial sighting) important that his submarines should exploit the situation as best they could. At 11.20 A.M. he wirelessly all the Ice Devil pack’s submarines, from Narvik:

None of our naval forces [is] in operational area. Whereabouts of enemy’s heavy group at present unknown: this is to be main target of submarines as soon as it arrives. U-boats in touch with convoy are to stay on its trail.<sup>2</sup>

“Turtle” Hamilton’s cruiser force was certainly entering its danger zone. His movements were still governed by the Admiralty’s instructions given him a week before, to remain in a covering position until reaching the meridian of 25° East and then to turn back. He would very soon be crossing that meridian.

Twenty minutes after Schmundt had signalled the U-boats to make the “heavy force” their main target, Hamilton decided the time had come for his cruiser force to be completely revealed to the enemy. He again altered course to close on the convoy, and within an hour he was again being shadowed by a German aircraft.

Referring to the amended route which Commander Broome, the convoy’s escort commander, had signalled to the Admiralty on the previous evening, Hamilton fully expected to pick up the convoy about thirty minutes after turning south. In fact, it took

---

him an hour and a half to find it, and by the time he sighted it, the convoy was already at 24° East – one degree short of the meridian at which he must turn back. He took his four cruisers and three destroyers ahead of the convoy and remained there, zigzagging across its van some 10 to 20 miles ahead of it.<sup>3</sup> “Cruiser force in sight,” wrote a corvette officer in his diary. “A great morale booster.”<sup>4</sup>

Admiral Tovey’s battle fleet was in the meantime heading almost due east, well to the north of the convoy, keeping out of range of the Norwegian air bases but waiting all the time for the German heavy units to put in an appearance.

AT THE ADMIRALTY in London, the Intelligence of the enemy’s movements was still incomplete: as each side was now waiting for the other to make the first visible move, this was predictable. The Admiralty had originally assumed the German heavy forces would attack the convoy to the east of Bear Island. The convoy had passed that island at midnight, and all that was known of the German heavy warships was that on the previous afternoon aerial reconnaissance of Trondheim had shown that *Tirpitz* and *Admiral Hipper* were gone. In other words, they could be attacking PQ.17 by this coming midnight, or two hours later if accompanied by the rather slower *Admiral Scheer* and *Lützow* from Narvik; but all attempts to reconnoitre that port had so far been thwarted by fog.

At 11.16 A.M., the American naval authorities in London cabled to Washington a report on the latest developments with PQ.17: “Visual reconnaissance confirmed by photographs of Trondheim reports *no* heavy units present. Admiralty believes that enemy heavy units’ [move] to the northward is in progress.” Moreover, the Admiralty had an Intelligence report, probably the one from Stockholm, graded by them as “A2” – a very reliable source – that “warships are expected to attack PQ.17 between 15° and 30°

East.” So there seemed little doubt that during the night of 4–5 July, the destruction of convoy PQ.17 would commence.

On 3 July, the Ultra-intercepts had also started ripples of concern in the Admiralty about the *Tirpitz*. An intercepted German radio message revealed that the battleship had slipped out of her berth. Another intercept showed that the *Admiral Scheer*-group had anchored in Altenfiord. Since then there had been an Intelligence blackout.

It was in the light of this uncertain knowledge that the British First Sea Lord, Sir Dudley Pound, convened a staff conference that was to last, with interruptions, throughout the day until its desperate conclusion that evening. In the middle of the morning Pound telephoned Admiral King’s office in the Admiralty’s Trade Division and asked for Captain G. R. G. Allen to drop whatever he was doing and come to his room at once. Allen was directly concerned with the organisation of PQ convoys.

When Allen entered Pound’s room, he found a number of other high-ranking Admiralty officers present, including Rear-Admiral Rawlings, Rear-Admiral Brind and Vice-Admiral Moore.<sup>5</sup> Pound’s question of Captain Allen was a significant one: “Captain Allen, are the merchant ships of PQ.17 equipped with one-ship pads?” These were the simple encoding and decoding systems which could be used for communication with the individual merchant ships.

Allen acknowledged that most of them were so equipped, so far as he knew. Pound continued: “So if the ships were for some reason to be scattered, it would still be possible to communicate with them independently?” Allen affirmed that this was so. This brief conversation was the clearest possible indication that Pound, who had objected to the sailing of the convoy in the first instance, was still possessed of the idea of scattering it should the German battle fleet appear. Even so, until further Intelligence and primarily the aerial reconnaissance reports on the where-

---

abouts of the German warships came in, there was no firm action to which the First Sea Lord was prepared to commit himself.

At 12:30 P.M., the Admiralty wirelessly informed Hamilton that unless he was ordered otherwise by his Commander-in-Chief, who was therefore also sent a copy of the signal, he was now permitted to proceed east of the meridian of 25° East, should the situation demand it. This was *not*, however, to be taken as urging Hamilton to proceed eastward against his discretion.<sup>6</sup> As this signal reached Hamilton at the very time when he should have been preparing to turn back, he was greatly relieved to receive it.

As he privately confessed, he had from the outset despised the prospect of having to desert the convoy in the very waters where it would most need the presence of a heavier escort. Having attended both the Convoy Conference at Hvalfiord and the Escort Conference at Seidisfiord, he felt more than usually bound up with the convoy itself, and “could not divorce” himself from its conduct and well-being.

To Hamilton, it appeared that the present situation did indeed demand that his cruisers proceed beyond 25° East; he resolved in fact to remain with PQ.17 until 2 P.M. of the following day, which would be pushing the prudent limit of the two American cruisers’ fuel-endurance. “It was evident from the vague information concerning enemy main forces then available that it was my duty to remain with the convoy as long as possible,” he explained two days later.<sup>7</sup>

He sent the destroyer *Somali* to fuel from the oiler in the convoy, and with her he sent a signal to Commander Broome to the effect that he considered the convoy to be 30 miles to the southward of where it should have been. He again advised the Senior Officer of the Escort to steer for the 400-mile radius from Banak, and to inform him of his intentions via *Somali*. Visibility on the surface was now at its maximum, with very brief patches of fog.

---

---

Commander Broome accepted Hamilton's advice, and soon after (at 4.45 P.M.) the convoy's course was altered to northeastward.

AT 3.20 P.M., after reporting the only casualty so far – the SS *Christopher Newport*, torpedoed by an aircraft that morning and “sunk by own forces” – Hamilton informed his Commander-in-Chief and the Admiralty of the use he intended making of the Admiralty's offer:

First Cruiser Squadron remaining in vicinity [of convoy] until enemy surface situation clarifies, but certainly not later than 2.00 P.M. 5th July.

As though to stress the usefulness of his cruisers to the convoy, Hamilton simultaneously ordered two of *Wichita's* aircraft to be catapulted, to maintain continuous patrols round the convoy to keep the U-boats down. Meanwhile, the Admiralty's offer to Hamilton had also been transmitted to Admiral Tovey and – indignant that this was a “reversal of [the] policy agreed between the Admiralty and myself” on 27 June – he determined that the four cruisers should not be exposed to unnecessary dangers. No information in his possession justified the change, and he signalled Hamilton at 3.12 P.M. categorically objecting to the Admiralty's intervention from afar:

Once the convoy is to the east of 25° East, or earlier at your discretion, you are to leave the Barents Sea unless assured by the Admiralty that *Tirpitz* can *not* be met.

By this time, the convoy was in fact already east of 25° East; and at 4 P.M. Tovey's battle fleet altered to the south-westward to conform to the cruisers' withdrawal he had just ordered.<sup>8</sup>

Admiral Tovey's signal was hardly in the most glorious traditions of the Royal Navy. Hamilton knew this, and with his flag captain was keen to see some kind of a scrap with the German warships.

Not until shortly after 6 P.M. did he answer his Commander-in-Chief's objections, but only evasively. He affirmed that he now intended to withdraw to westward at about 10 P.M., as soon as his destroyers had completed oiling in the convoy. ("I endeavoured," he wrote, "to comply with the spirit of both signals" – i.e., both his Commander-in-Chief's and the Admiralty's.<sup>9</sup>) Admiral Tovey plainly resigned himself to Hamilton's obstinacy, for although he must have realised almost at once that by ten o'clock that night the cruiser force would be far – about 250 miles – beyond the 25° East meridian, he raised no further objection.

The Admiralty had arranged for continuous patrols up the Norwegian coast by a number of RAF Catalinas being ferried from Sullom Voe to Archangel. These sorties, which had begun three days before, had been reinforced by regular reconnaissance sorties by British shore-based units. Because of an aircraft accident, there had been no aerial reconnaissance of the fiords since eleven o'clock on that morning, 4 July, but from "Ultra" it was "tolerably certain" that *Admiral Scheer* and *Lützow* were now at Altenfiord.\* Of *Tirpitz* and *Admiral Hipper*, which had certainly left Trondheim by the time it had been photographed at 2.20 P.M. the previous afternoon, 3 July, there was still no trace. Thus for all the Admiralty could know, all four heavy warships might by the afternoon of 4 July be at sea already and heading toward the convoy.

\* Roskill, *The War at Sea*, vol. II, p. 139, mentions that "there had been no verification of the photographic reconnaissance" which had revealed the departure of the German warships from Vestfiord (i.e., Narvik). But there had been no such reconnaissance, nor does he mention such a reconnaissance earlier. The source was "Ultra."

Early in the evening, the Admiralty wirelessly a signal to Hamilton, referring to the earlier signals from Tovey and himself about how far east the cruiser force should proceed: “Further information may be available shortly. Remain with convoy pending further instructions.”

At 6.15 P.M., the destroyer *Somali* returned to the cruiser force, now zigzagging just ahead of the convoy, and Hamilton sent the American destroyer *Wainwright* in to refuel. *Somali* had brought with her the amended route Broome was now following with the convoy – course 45°.

Hamilton was satisfied that the escort commander had accepted his advice.

## 2

AT TEN-THIRTY that morning – at about the same time as *Tirpitz* was anchoring in Altenfiord and Captain Allen was being interviewed by Admiral Pound in London – the German Naval Staff had informed Vice-Admiral Krancke (Grand-Admiral Raeder’s permanent representative at the Führer’s headquarters) and the High Command’s operations staff that the presence of a heavy force with the convoy stood in the way of launching *The Knight’s Move*, and would continue to do so unless German aircraft or submarines could cripple these warships.<sup>10</sup> Convoy PQ.17 was now being shadowed by both aircraft and submarines.

During the morning, still smarting under General-Admiral Carls’s strictures during the night about his U-boats, Admiral Schmudt proudly reported to the Naval Staff in Berlin that *U-457* had sunk the first freighter, *Christopher Newport*; he did not mention that the ship had first been crippled by the Air Force and was abandoned at the time of the attack.

In response to Carls’s earlier request, the German Air Force had carried out an extensive reconnaissance of the waters to the

---

---

west of Norway, covering the entire area up to the latitude of North Cape and Altenfiord (71°), but no trace of the enemy had been found. To the north of this, the reconnaissance was still incomplete. The War Diary of Naval Group North observed:

Thus the sea surrounding the reported position of yesterday's aircraft-carrier force has been completely swept, and no trace of this force has been found. In all probability it has also proceeded northward, and can be presumed to be at sea somewhere north of 71°N. This further underlines the impossibility of launching "*The Knight's Move*" at the present time.<sup>11</sup>

Informing the German Naval Staff of this at 11.20 that morning, the Group had added that both German battle groups had none the less been put at three hours' sailing notice.

At noon, a German aircraft had sighted the Anglo-American cruiser force – as Hamilton had anticipated – and correctly identified it as comprising four cruisers and three destroyers, although there was some confusion over their nationalities; no "battle-ships" had been seen at all.

The German Naval Staff correctly deduced that this was the convoy's close covering force; but if they briefly entertained hopes of sailing the German battle fleet after all, these hopes were shortly dashed, and the comedy of errors had begun again.

At 1.27 P.M., *U-457* had sighted Hamilton's cruiser force heading eastward, and half an hour later Lieutenant-Commander Brandenburg further identified it as comprising "one battleship, two cruisers and three destroyers." Schmundt at once informed Group North of the sighting, and the various aircraft and submarines that sighted Hamilton's cruiser force up to about a quarter-to-ten that night reported nothing to dispel the impression that it included a battleship.<sup>2</sup>

Nor was that all. Although no aircraft-carrier had actually been located by the Germans, their shadowing aircraft had reported two “torpedo-planes” complete with “torpedoes” heading east near the convoy at 6:30 P.M. The German Naval Staff was obliged at least temporarily to suspect the presence of an aircraft-carrier within striking range of the convoy. In fact these were *Wichita*’s two floatplanes, which had been catapulted on Hamilton’s orders to keep the U-boats down.

## 3

WHILE THE GERMAN NAVY had hesitated, the German Air Force had arrogated to itself the duty of despatching convoy PQ.17.

By midday on 4 July, they would hold back their planned mass attack no longer, even though the possibility of a joint operation by torpedo- and conventional bombers was ruled out by the weather. The Fifth Air Force decided that, as the Navy was still vacillating on whether or not to operate its battle fleet in view of the Allied “battleship” reported in the convoy’s close covering force, they must launch the main air attack now if the convoy were not to pass out of bomber range altogether.<sup>12</sup>

During the morning, crews of three squadrons of Heinkel 111 torpedo-bombers were briefed at Bardufoss air base for the attack. These aircraft were long familiar to Londoners, as they had been the workhorse of the German Air Force during the 1940 Blitz. Now converted to act as torpedo-bombers, they attacked from only a few feet above the waves, where they would release their torpedoes and escape the wall of enemy gunfire as best they could.

The Heinkels’ crews were told that convoy PQ.17 consisted of thirty-eight ships sailing in columns, in line abreast, with destroyers and other light escort vessels ahead and on either flank; two British and two American cruisers were not far to the west.

---

The plan was for one formation of the Heinkels to deliver a beam attack on the convoy's starboard flank while the remaining aircraft attacked obliquely from the rear. A small force of Junkers 88s supplied by Major Erich Bloedorn's *KG-30* Wing would launch a high-level bombing attack shortly before the torpedo attack began, to divert the ships' gunners from the extremely vulnerable Heinkels coming in at almost zero feet over the horizon. *KG-30* would also supply a Junkers 88 aircraft to rendezvous with the Heinkel force and pilot it in the last few miles to the convoy.\* Early that afternoon, the Heinkels took off at Bardufoss and headed northward across the Arctic ocean.

As they vanished from sight, the German radio monitoring service picked up an Allied signal warning of an imminent air attack on PQ.17. The planes that were now coming in to attack with torpedoes were not the *KG.26* Heinkels but rather Heinkel 115 floatplanes of the German Coastal Command squadron 906. As soon as the aircraft were sighted by one of the convoy's anti-submarine trawlers, just before a quarter-to-five that afternoon, Commander Broome signalled all his escorts to "close the convoy at best speed to give air support." Three minutes later the air attack warning was sounded aboard the escort screen's vessels, and the Convoy Commodore ordered the merchant ships to man their guns and prepare for instant action; Flag "Q" – "air attack imminent" – went up in all the naval vessels. The ships of the escort closed in from their 3,000-yard stations to 1,000 yards from the nearest merchant ships.

During the two hours that followed, the German floatplanes circled clumsily round the convoy, trying to force a way into attacking range, or catch the gunners off their guard. But Broome's

\* All three *Staffeln* of *KG.26*'s first squadron took part, involving twenty-three Heinkel 111-Ts in all, according to Brief Air Staff Report. The crews' briefing is described from the reports on the interrogations of the four German airmen shot down in the attack.<sup>13</sup>

---

escort vessels were at their best and eventually the planes withdrew, some of them having jettisoned their torpedoes well out of the convoy's range.

Several times during the next hour or two, the Allied sailors heard the sounds of aircraft circling overhead. Shortly before half-past seven, three bombs hurtled down through the grey overcast and missed the U.S. destroyer *Wainwright* by a bare 150 yards on the port bow, as she approached the convoy to refuel from the oiler *Aldersdale*. As Captain Moon took the destroyer through the convoy's lines he could see the gun-crews on the merchantmen tensely waiting at action stations for the next attack. He and *Keppel* patrolled the van of the convoy in a search for submarines, constantly alert for any renewed airborne attack. Flag "Q" still flew at the warships' mastheads. The escort vessels could hear the U-boats and shadowing aircraft broadcasting almost continuous homing signals now, so they knew the biggest air attack was yet to come. Visibility on the surface had now increased to maximum, below a low cloud layer; the lookouts could see that this low bank of cloud ended abruptly not far ahead, with nothing but blue sky beyond.<sup>14</sup>

Since three that afternoon, Commander Brandenburg's *U-457* had transmitted a constant radio-beacon signal, while keeping the convoy under close observation. He reported that the cruiser force was standing off to the north-east of the convoy, with a "destroyer shuttle-service" between them. In rapid succession during the afternoon, Bielfeld, Bohmann and Siemon also reported sighting the convoy as they closed in on *U-457*'s beacon. From Narvik, Admiral Schmudt wirelessed the Ice Devil pack that Bohmann and Bielfeld were to shadow the convoy, while Brandenburg was to beacon in other submarines on to what he still called the "battleship force" (i.e., Hamilton's cruisers). At 4.12 P.M., Brandenburg reported that this heavy force was 50 miles north of the convoy, zigzagging like the convoy itself.<sup>15</sup>

In the meantime, Bohmann had taken *U-88* ahead of the convoy and delivered a further determined underwater attack. He submerged in front of the convoy, allowed the anti-submarine screen to roll unsuspecting over him, then surfaced to periscope depth. The sea was oily and smooth, so he had kept out of the convoy formation proper, firing a spread of four torpedoes as three overlapping freighters moved across his field of fire. He aimed at the foremast of the last ship. Nothing happened. He brought *U-88* round and fired her stern tube about twenty minutes later, taking the centre of three overlapping steamships as his target. Again the torpedo missed. Bohmann quickly submerged and let the rest of the convoy roll overhead.<sup>16</sup>

Commander Brandenburg continued to shadow the cruiser force until late evening, while Bielfeld several times wirelessly to Narvik reports of the convoy's progress. Bielfeld was unable to attack because of the glassy seas and bright sunshine. Schmundt commented that Bohmann's *U-88* had "apparently found more favourable attacking conditions." At about 10 P.M., *U-456* (Teichert) also reported in: his submarine was lying ahead of Hamilton's cruiser squadron as it headed east, and he was planning to attack.

BY EIGHT O'CLOCK that evening, the twenty-three Heinkel 111 torpedo-bombers of the first squadron of *KG.26*, commanded by Captain Eicke,\* were only a few miles from convoy PQ.17 and closing in at 265 MPH.<sup>13</sup> Each aircraft carried two standard F4B aerial torpedoes, provisionally set with an "angle of lead" to compensate for an assumed convoy speed of 10 knots. The fine adjustment would be made when the convoy was encountered. As the aircraft reached a point some distance ahead of the con-

\* Eicke was actually only commander of the first squadron's 3rd *Staffel*, but the *Gruppe's* CO, Lieutenant-Colonel Hermann Busch, was acting as AOC North-West Air Command.

voy, which was hidden in a thin, low mist over the horizon, the promised Junkers 88 pilot-aircraft dived over the formation and showed them the way to their target.

At about the same time, a number of Junkers 88s approached the convoy from astern at about 1,000 feet, but before they could offer a serious diversion they were driven off by the accurate gunfire of the escort vessels there.<sup>17</sup> The merchant ships and the naval escort vessels had remained at general quarters since the earlier attacks, and the escort screen had remained – rightly or wrongly – at its closed-in formation. In the hospital of the rescue ship *Zamalek*, the surgeon had just begun the delicate operation to save the sight of the gunner shot during the attack two days before, when the alarm bells shrilled again.

The cruiser force was by now just 10 miles ahead of the convoy, with visibility extremely good. At 8.10 P.M. Hamilton signalled the convoy: “How does she go?” He added a reminder about what he considered the convoy’s proper course: “Convoy is to steer 045° until further orders.”

Commander Broome read more significance into this signal than Hamilton had intended and was left with the suspicion that the German battle fleet was moving up for its attack.<sup>18</sup>

At 8.17 P.M. Hamilton wirelessly to the Admiralty in London the convoy’s exact position, course and speed, and added that he was preparing to carry out an ice reconnaissance. *Norfolk*’s aircraft was readied for launching, and its two-man crew climbed aboard.

Minutes later, it was obvious that Captain Eicke’s main Heinkel force had arrived, and the most dramatic of the air attacks on the convoy suddenly began. As the destroyer *Wainwright* was starting down the convoy’s starboard flank, her radio direction-finder began to pick up a stream of “A”s on the convoy’s starboard quarter, and almost at once a line of torpedo-bombers was seen at the horizon, very low down.<sup>19</sup>

“Stand by!” crackled the loudspeakers of one of the AA ships. At 8.18 P.M. the trawler *Northern Gem* signalled, “Eight torpedo-bombers bearing 210°, 5 miles.”

Moments later she corrected her count to ten torpedo-bombers. One of the AA ships began to broadcast the readings by powerful loud-hailer, so most of the convoy’s ships could hear. At 8.20 P.M. *Ledbury* began signalling, “Eight air-torpedo bombers 210°, 5 miles,” and then two minutes later, “for eight read ten.”

Suddenly all the escorts began blinking signals at once. The loudspeakers were booming, “Bombers approaching . . . there’s twelve . . . there’s eighteen . . . good God, there’s twenty-five!”

The anti-aircraft ship lurched forward and altered course to head off the attack. Commodore Dowding signalled *Keppel* to ask if the convoy should make an “emergency turn.” It was too late for that kind of manoeuvre now – half the ships would probably miss the signal altogether – and Broome flashed back, “I do not think it worth it.”<sup>20</sup>

From the bridge of *Wainwright*, Captain Moon could see the attacking torpedo-bombers splitting into two groups – one coming in on the starboard quarter in line abreast, and the other circling round to attack the convoy on the starboard bow, seemingly at right angles to the other force.

The aircraft on the bow would have farther to go before launching their attack, but it would be the more dangerous because of the additional run afforded the torpedoes by the convoy’s advance, so *Wainwright* dashed out through the close-escort screen still bunched round the merchantmen to try to head them off.

The close-escort vessels similarly altered course to bring their batteries to bear on the attackers, and all opened fire at once. Undeterred by the hail of low-angle shell fire and magnesium tracer bullets sweeping across the sea toward them – “when a gunner begins firing on a plane that is all he appears to see,” complained Moon afterward – *Wainwright* continued toward the

---

---

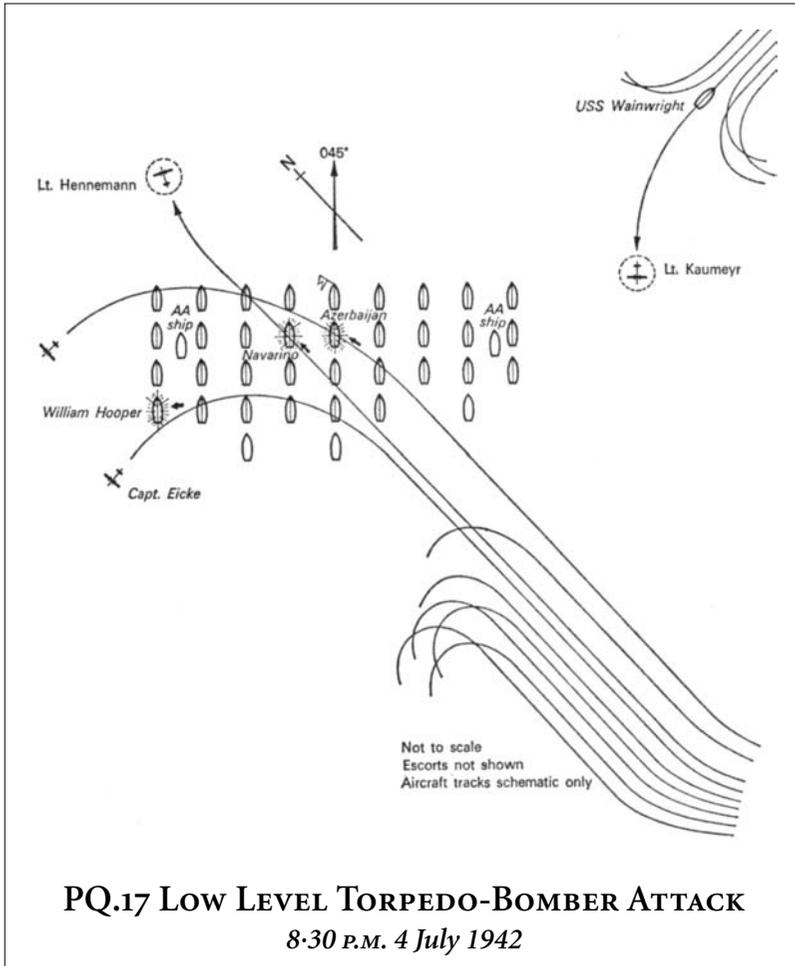
approaching bombers at over 32 knots. When she was some 4,000 yards out from the nearest merchantman, Captain Moon swung hard round to port so as to bring the full weight of his starboard batteries to bear on the attacking aircraft.

One by one these planes dropped their torpedoes, all short even of the *Wainwright*, and fled, causing the destroyer's captain some anxious moments as the sea around his ship became alive with the scudding torpedoes.

The consternation of the Heinkel pilots can be imagined. They had approached only 60 feet above the waves, coming in from the south-east in a comforting veil of mist; this had vanished as they covered the last 5 miles to the convoy, leaving the crews momentarily blinded by the sun. Those who saw the destroyer barring their way turned tail and ran.

One of them, Heinkel 1H+MH, hurtled on toward the convoy, oblivious of anything but the ships. Its crew saw only at the last moment that they were heading straight for a destroyer with all its anti-aircraft guns blazing at them. The observer panicked and released the port torpedo without making any further adjustment to it; before they could drop their second torpedo, they were caught in a hail of shell fire. One shell caught the aircraft's nose, and a second its port wing. The pilot, Lieutenant Kaumeyr, and his observer were wounded. The port engine choked to a standstill and fire broke out in the cockpit. The crew tried to bring the aircraft round to head back to Norway, but another shell hit its cockpit and the fire intensified. The observer jettisoned the second torpedo – the only one to hit the sea beyond the *Wainwright* – and the plane smacked into the sea about 4,000 yards from the destroyer, on the convoy's starboard bow.

They were not far from another destroyer, *Ledbury*. Captain Moon saw four German airmen climbing into a rubber dinghy, and the bomber sank soon after. Commander Broome later made a nonchalant signal to the Americans in *Wainwright*: "Thank you



for your great support and congratulations on your anti-aircraft fire which impressed us all, and definitely left packing room for one in a German hangar.”

The sight of the ditched Heinkel seemed to have weakened the resolve of the remaining crews attacking PQ.17 from the starboard flank. The whole of this group’s action was over within two minutes, and all the aircraft jettisoned their torpedoes while still as much as a mile from *Wainwright*.

Before the bow attack was over, the second attack had begun from the convoy's starboard quarter, led by Lieutenant Henne-mann, a *Staffel* commander who only a few weeks before had received a personal letter of commendation from Göring for having sunk 50,000 tons of Allied shipping.

On the starboard quarter there was no U.S. destroyer standing boldly out to meet the attack, and it was here that the British tactic of closing up in face of air attack showed its unsuitability for torpedo attacks. Nine of the torpedo-bombers were able to press their attack to well within torpedo range. At 6,000 yards, five turned off to port and the remaining four came straight in.

The noise now was terrific. The merchant ships were firing every defensive weapon they had, including "pig-trough" rocket-launchers, parachute-and-cable rockets, Holman projectors, 4-inch guns, Bofors, machine-guns, Brownings, Oerlikons and Lewis guns.

Two of the Heinkels headed straight for the American merchant ship *Bellingham*, and at 1,500 yards her guns opened fire. The after plane veered to port and dropped two torpedoes; the *William Hooper's* forward .50-calibre machine-guns opened up, scoring several hits on the plane, which was probably Eicke's. Its port engine began to smoke.

A third Heinkel raced in, making a straight and level run, and dropped its torpedoes some 500 yards away; the green-bodied weapons bounced once, then slid below the surface. The bomber continued for the ship, making straight for its wheelhouse.

The ship fired off all her rockets at the German, but by then it was too late. As her Armed Guard officer looked back to where the bomber, its starboard engine now on fire, had come from, he could see the wake of its torpedoes streaking straight toward the deckhouse. One torpedo struck the ship and penetrated the starboard settling-tank before exploding; the starboard boiler was blown up through the engine-room skylight. The *William Hooper*

---

---

began to settle in a cloud of flying asbestos and soot, and with a cacophony of noise coming from below.<sup>21</sup>

Few people saw the explosion, however, for all eyes were upon the apparent German squadron-leader's aircraft. This man, Lieutenant Hennemann, seemed to have singled out a ship in the heart of the convoy – “a very brave action,” as Captain Moon later said – and to have shut his eyes to all else around him – the inferno of Bofors and machine-gun fire and tracer shells flying at his plane as it roared in over columns six and five and four, lower than the ships' bridges, even, and seemingly heading straight for *Bellingham's* bridge.

Four of the ship's .50-calibre machine-guns were pouring a murderous hail of armour-piercing shells into the aircraft at point-blank range. The *El Capitán* alone pumped 95 rounds of .30-calibre and 200 rounds of .50-calibre armour-piercing shell from her Brownings into the plane; her first officer saw a little fist-sized ball of fire suddenly appear in the fuselage, and at once the whole plane was ablaze.<sup>22</sup>

Hennemann was far ahead of his comrades and he drew almost all the fire. His plane was so low that the merchant ships were caught in their own crossfire, and several casualties were sustained. One of *Empire Tide's* gunners was struck in the thigh by a machine-gun bullet from another ship, and much of the ship's rigging, derrick spans and gun telephones were shot away. Another ship put a 4-inch shell into the bows of the indignant American *Ironclad*.

As the Heinkel came up to *Bellingham*, the ship's Second Officer seized a Lewis gun and fired a dozen rounds at it until the gun jammed. He watched as two torpedoes detached themselves from the burning aircraft and starting “skipping” through the water on a course converging with the ships, easily visibly with their green bodies and bright yellow warheads. One torpedo headed across *Bellingham's* bow, missing it by 10 feet; the other headed

---

straight for the midships of the British *Navarino* right in front of *Bellingham*.

It struck the freighter under her bridge, and the crew started jumping overboard. Every window in the wheelhouse and bridge was shattered, and the ship suddenly took on a list to starboard as water cascaded into her No. 3 hold. The engine-room telegraph had jammed, and the ship fell off sharply to port.<sup>23</sup> Two of her lifeboats were hastily lowered and capsized. *Bellingham* had to haul out to starboard to avoid ramming the crippled *Navarino*. As *Bellingham* passed through the seamen floundering in the water, one of them waved a fist and shouted, “On to Moscow . . . see you in Russia!” – which must have taken some courage in those icy waters.<sup>24</sup>

Lieutenant Hennemann’s blazing bomber crashed into the sea on the port bow of the *Washington*, the leading freighter in the second column. As the plane hit the sea, a roar of applause went up from the American cruisers in Hamilton’s force, only a few miles away. “We cheered as if we were in New York watching ‘dem bums’ from Brooklyn,” one of them reported.<sup>25</sup> And Rear-Admiral Hamilton, who had taken the cruisers toward the convoy when the Germans’ attack had started, and had thus had a “front seat in the stalls” throughout, commented more formally: “In my opinion they are no longer amateurs.”<sup>26</sup>

As the convoy surged past the burning wreck of the bomber, *El Capitán*’s crew clearly saw the enemy airmen struggling inside their blazing cockpit. They were close enough to shout at the plane as it floated past on the starboard side; the seamen jeered and hurled insults at the dying Germans. There were no feelings of sympathy, and awe at this crew’s courage would emerge only in the cold afterlight of the battle.<sup>27</sup>

AS THE GUNFIRE reverted to the other attackers, their pilots threw their planes into violent snaking manoeuvres, weaving from side

---

to side to present more difficult targets; but none of them could emulate the gallantry displayed by Hennemann. One Heinkel released its torpedoes at the Russian tanker *Donbass*, trailing the convoy's third column. *Donbass*'s gunners fired on the torpedoes and deflected them. As the plane came in over *Olopana*, directly in front of *Donbass*, it met such a wall of gunfire that it broke off to port and raced out of the rear of the convoy over the crippled *William Hooper*, losing height and trailing a plume of smoke.<sup>28</sup> It looked unlikely to reach base, as it disappeared over the horizon.

All the other aircraft dropped their torpedoes even while outside the close-escort screen, some of them so hastily that their torpedoes went in at bad angles and tumbled end-over-end toward the ships before sinking. Several more of the aircraft were hit; in one, the air-gunner was killed outright by the ships' gunfire. The sight of their leader's fate disheartened all of them. Lieutenant Hennemann's unquestionable bravery was posthumously rewarded by the Germans with a Knight's Cross. Among the Allied records, there is not one ship's report which does not mention his brave attack in the face of certain death.

AT 8.25 P.M. the attack was over. An observer aboard the destroyer *Wilton* wrote with trembling hand, "One down – three merchant vessels hit."<sup>29</sup> Apart from *William Hooper* and *Navarino*, only the Soviet tanker *Azerbaijan* – in the middle of the convoy, astern of *River Afton* – had been torpedoed. From *Wainwright's* bridge Captain Moon was watching as the tanker was struck by the torpedo: a sheet of flame enveloped its whole length to a height of about 200 feet, then the flame quickly subsided to be replaced by clouds of smoke and steam. The torpedo's explosion had been inaudible, so great was the general tumult of gunfire.<sup>30</sup>

At 8.31 P.M. relative silence returned, broken only by the distant boom of *London's* 8-inch guns, still firing on the departing

bombers at extreme range. Lieutenant Kaumeyr and his three crewmen were being picked out of their rubber dinghy by the destroyer *Ledbury*; the charred wreckage of Lieutenant Hennemann's brave Heinkel and his perished crew were settling in the icy waters. *William Hooper*, *Navarino* and *Azerbaijan* were falling out of station, and three rescue ships and two minesweepers were dropping back to begin the hazardous rescue of their crews. Convoy PQ.17 had survived its biggest test yet – not unscathed, but proud and undaunted by the ordeal.

On *Keppel's* bridge, a signalman was again at Commander Broome's elbow, handing him a fresh pink naval message form. It was a signal Hamilton had made to him just a few minutes before, at 8.40: "Due to proximity surface forces, report when convoy is on 045°."<sup>31</sup>

How close were the German ships? Probably Hamilton did not even know himself. Broome signalled back that the convoy was already on the course ordered by the Admiral.

ON THE AMERICAN warships' decks, liverwurst sandwiches, pie and coffee were handed round by messboys. In the British escort vessels tea was served.<sup>32</sup> Flag "Q" still flew, and the guns remained close up at action stations. In the cruisers five miles away they could hear the crackling radio-telephone exchanges between convoy and escort. Broome was asking the Commodore how he was faring. Dowding replied, "Still doing fine, thank you – fine."<sup>33</sup> Broome was proud of the convoy: it had "gone from peace to bedlam and back to peace."

From the bridge of *Keppel* he scanned the merchantmen to see how they had borne the heavy German attack. "Steaming back through the convoy was a tonic," he later wrote. "Everyone was still in station, and the ships looked prouder than ever."<sup>34</sup>

The decks of every ship were littered with brass cartridge-cases and empty ammunition boxes; most of the ships had kept firing

---

until their guns jammed or their ammunition was exhausted. Broome went down into his destroyer's charthouse, opened his diary, and indulged in a little boasting: "Provided the ammunition lasted, PQ.17 could get anywhere."

For eighty hours of intermittent air and U-boat attack, Broome's force of nineteen escort vessels had provided a very competent protection. The many U-boats – *Ledbury* alone had sighted seven – had scored no kills at all.

On the horizon, the Blohm & Voss aircraft were still maintaining their relentless shadowing patrol. At 8.55 P.M., *Wainwright* finally headed for the oiler *Aldersdale* to refuel.\*

Throughout the attack, and much to Hamilton's surprise, the bombers had paid not the slightest attention to his cruiser force steaming ten miles ahead of the convoy – "yet another example of the singleness of purpose and short-sighted policy" of the Germans, he said.<sup>35</sup>

MORALE IN PQ.17 was now at its zenith, as several incidents could show. At the height of the attack, one of the two British submarines at the rear of the convoy – *P-614* (Lieutenant Beckley) – had made an anxious signal to Commander: "Please may I go home to Mum?"

At about the same time, the anti-submarine trawler *Ayrshire* (Lieutenant Leo Gradwell) had nonchalantly enquired of her nearest neighbour, "Are you happy in the Service?"†

Again, the American freighter *Hoosier* had dealt summarily with one torpedo heading straight for her engine-room by opening

\* Throughout this dramatic air attack, an official photographer in the USS *Wainwright*, Frank Scherschel, was on deck taking a most remarkable series of photographs in which the attack by Hennemann and the torpedoing of *Azerbaijan* (wrongly referred to by *Life* magazine, who published the photographs on 3 August 1942, as an American merchantman) are graphically shown.

† The corvette had replied that she wished time to consider her reply.<sup>36</sup>

---

fire upon it, blowing up its warhead while it was still some distance away. One of her officers rushed down into the Chief Engineer's room to tell him he had all but been blown to bits, but the gun crew had saved him in the nick of time by blowing the torpedo up. Without even looking up the engineer dourly bellowed back, "Well, keep a good look out and just keep blowing 'em up!"<sup>37</sup>

The unfortunate *William Hooper's* neighbour, the Panamanian *Troubadour*, adopted the same ploy. When an erratically weaving torpedo began heading for them, the *Troubadour* fired not only her 30 Lewis guns at it but the 37-millimetre guns of the tanks on deck as well. After about seventy-five rounds had been expended on it, the torpedo stopped, turned up on end, and sank from sight, tail first.<sup>38</sup>

Even though the enemy had long departed, one ship's gun was still banging away spasmodically – in the bows of the tanker *Azerbaijan*, torpedoed but still afloat and falling astern of the convoy, together with *Navarino* and *William Hooper*.

The sea around them was dotted with lifeboats, rafts and swimming seamen.

The gun crews of both *William Hooper* and the tanker had been knocked, or had jumped, into the sea, and only one of *Navarino's* lifeboats had survived the blast. With their buzzers sounding "Rescue Stations," the rescue ships *Zamalek*, *Zaafaran* and *Rathlin* were all closing in on them and lowering their rescue launches.

From the rescue ship *Zaafaran*, officers had seen the Russian tanker engulfed in a mushroom of smoke, and had feared the worst. The second officer's launch headed toward the tanker through a sea covered with a thick layer of oil which they feared might ignite at any moment. But the Russian's bows slowly emerged from the smoke, and she showed little sign of sinking. She had been carrying not petrol but linseed oil. The heavy gun in the ship's bows, manned entirely by women, was still firing in

the direction of the long-departed bombers.\* Behind the tanker, seven of the Russian's gunners were thrashing about in the sea.

*Zaafaran's* motor launch was just picking them up when an eighth man jumped into the sea from the tanker and swam in their direction. He was taken on board too. Apparently he was an OGPU officer, for he indicated to the British Second Officer that the launch was to be turned about and the seamen returned to the Russian tanker. The British officer, James Bruce, ignored him, especially as one of the Russians left aboard the tanker was brandishing a healthy looking gun. Once all the seamen, some of them badly injured, had been picked up, the launch returned to the *Zaafaran*.

At the same time a launch lowered by the other rescue vessel, *Zamalek*, was nearing the wallowing Russian tanker from the other side. Making himself heard with difficulty above the noise of the tanker's 12-pounder, the British Second Officer, C. T. R. Lennard, asked the Soviet captain whether he and his men wished to abandon ship.

The Russian officer became very agitated and began waving his arms about: "We don't want you! Go away!" *Zamalek's* launch pulled away from the tanker. Once, when Lennard looked back, he saw to his amazement that the Russian captain was firing a machine-pistol in the direction of the eight Russian seamen who were making off in what he took to be a ship's launch.† Lennard

\* The presence of women aboard Russian merchant ships was a constant source of wonderment. According to *Troubadour's* Action Report, *Azerbaijan's* captain was married to the chief engineer, and her chief officer to the boatswain; the stewards' department was manned entirely by women. It caused a minor sensation in nearby ships when word was passed round that *Azerbaijan's* boatswain had had a baby.

† *Zamalek's* Report, 4 July: "Master of Russian ship *Azerbaijan*, though ship torpedoed, reported that he would rejoin convoy: ship not sinking. Some of her crew deserted her and were picked up by *Zaafaran*." *Zaafaran's* Report says that eight Russian seamen "panicked and jumped overboard when their ship was hit," but this was not so.

steered his launch to where the burning *Navarino* lay, her engines stopped. He ignored the seamen in the lifeboat and on the rafts, for they were safe already; but he saw a sailor drifting idly in the sea, kept afloat only by a pocket of air in his oilskin.

He hauled the body up; it felt cold and lifeless, and the eyes were fixed and staring. He pushed the man back into the sea, but one of the launch's crew, *Zamalek's* carpenter, said he had heard a groan.

The man was hauled back in and was found to be just barely alive. The launch raced back to its parent ship, while the seamen tore the sodden clothes from the body and wrapped it in dry blankets. The man was carried to *Zamalek's* operating theatre, where Surgeon-Lieutenant McCallum stripped off the blankets and found the man was stone cold, "three inches through," he reckoned, but still just alive.

While the sick-bay attendant gave artificial respiration, McCallum switched on two electrically heated blankets in the sick bay's cot. Slowly, fitfully, the man began to breathe again. He was lifted onto the operating table and McCallum checked the body functions as they gradually returned to normal. Within an hour, the man had almost completely recovered. Only one thing never returned to him – his memory. Who he was, how he came to be aboard the vessel, the circumstances of his rescue – all were a complete void in his memory.

For some hours he rested, wrapped in electric blankets in the cot of the sick bay. After that, he found his way to the *Zamalek's* boiler room, where he made a little blanketed nest for himself on a ledge right on top of the boilers. "He would not move from it," McCallum later described, "not even during the heaviest air attacks that followed. He never wanted to be cold again."<sup>39</sup>

SO THAT WAS the score. Or was it? Three ships had been torpedoed in this first determined German attack on the convoy, but

---

to everyone's amazement the Russian tanker *Azerbaijan* signalled "No. 52 reporting in" and limped after them.<sup>28</sup> Her engine-room crew had succeeded in repairing her damage, and within half an hour the plucky ship had regained her station in the convoy.

The American *William Hooper* and the British *Navarino*, though still afloat even now, an hour after the attack, had been abandoned by their crews and were beyond repair. Commander Broome detailed the minesweepers *Britomart* and *Halcyon* to dispose of the two lame merchantmen by gunfire. The former had expended twenty rounds of semi-armour-piercing 4-inch shell on them, leaving them "sinking and on fire," when he received a signal from *Halcyon* to rejoin the convoy. Commodore Dowding accurately reported that, when last seen, both ships were still afloat.<sup>40</sup>

The convoy was by now ten miles or more away. The few small vessels that had stayed to pick up the survivors from the lifeboats and rafts dotting the sea were now exposed to acute danger from the patrolling German submarines.

One of the ten survivors from *Navarino* who had taken to a raft described how the ships of the convoy steamed past them, with nobody stopping to pick them up:

The horizon emptied, and we were on a raft in the middle of the Arctic Ocean, and we began to fear that the others had reported that we had gone down with the ship. We saw one ship approaching, but it turned out to be a minesweeper hastening to catch up with the convoy.

We knew they wouldn't stop for us, but we jokingly stood up and tried to "thumb a lift"; the men in the minesweeper, which passed less than 200 yards away from us, crowded the rails and cheered us, but their ship did not pause.

It had been an act of bravado on our part, but we would have liked it better had they stopped.<sup>41</sup>

---

Commander Broome had been busy tidying up the convoy when Hamilton's signal warning of the "proximity of surface forces" reached him. He warned the two submarines to remain in the vicinity of the convoy and to endeavour to attack the German warships as they arrived, and he reformed his destroyers into two divisions in readiness for immediate attack or shadowing. There was still no further news, but he felt sure Hamilton knew more than he did.

What next? In all probability the shadowing aircraft was at that very moment homing in the German surface forces.

At 9.15 P.M. Broome radioed *Empire Tide*, with her Hurricane waiting to be launched from its catapult, "Can you kill shadower?" By way of answer, the merchantman immediately hoisted the aeroplane flag, and the roar of the Hurricane's engine warming up reached Broome's ears.

Captain Morris's rescue ship *Zamalek* stayed long enough to make sure nobody had been overlooked in the chaos, then he too set the engine-room telegraph to "Full Ahead Both."

Every minute of delay increased the danger of submarine attack. At almost the last moment, he caught sight of *Navarino's* raft drifting low in the waves a mile away with ten men on board, and at 9.20 P.M. they were brought on board. Almost simultaneously, the decision was reached in London which was to bring disaster to convoy PQ.17.

4

AS THE BATTERED Heinkels were returning to their base in northern Norway, and as the three British rescue ships were struggling to catch up to the proud convoy, now marching once again in perfect formation across the Barents Sea, a report arrived at the Berlin headquarters of the German Naval Staff from the naval radio-monitoring station at Kirkenes. It had intercepted a num-

---

ber of British “operational signals” which had been transmitted between 7 P.M. and 10 P.M. that evening from Scapa Flow and Cleethorpes, addressed to the Commander-in-Chief, Home Fleet, and the naval forces from Scapa Flow.<sup>10</sup>

The first, transmitted soon after 7 P.M., was the signal we have already met, warning Rear-Admiral Hamilton and Admiral Tovey that “further information” might be available shortly, and ordering the cruiser force to remain with the convoy pending further instructions.

Soon after, Hamilton had confidently ordered *Norfolk’s* Walrus seaplane to be catapulted on a 2½-hour ice-reconnaissance patrol.

The aircraft was just about to be catapulted when *Norfolk’s* radio room telephoned up to the bridge that a further signal, MOST IMMEDIATE, was coming through from Whitehall.

This was the second signal the Germans had intercepted. Captain Bellars asked Hamilton for permission to delay flying off his Walrus until the contents of the signal had been decoded; Hamilton refused, and the plane was catapulted off the cruiser.<sup>42</sup>

Literally seconds later, the decoded signal was arriving on the bridges of the four cruisers and of Tovey’s flagship, hundreds of miles to the west. Timed 9.11 P.M., it read:

SECRET. MOST IMMEDIATE. Cruiser force to withdraw to westward at high speed . . .\*

*Norfolk’s* seaplane had not yet paid out her trailing aerial, and neither wireless nor searchlight signals succeeded in recalling her; the sailors lined the rails watching the little aircraft disappear over the northern horizon, its crew unaware that when they returned the cruisers would have gone.

\* There was a closing sentence.

---

Minutes later a new Admiralty signal arrived, bursting like a bombshell on Hamilton's bridge. Timed 9.23 P.M., this one was addressed to the convoy's escort commander and Tovey too:

SECRET. IMMEDIATE. Owing to threat from surface ships convoy is to disperse and proceed to Russian ports.

Seconds later, an even more urgent injunction:

SECRET. MOST IMMEDIATE. My 21.23B of the 4th. Convoy is to scatter.

To the two Admirals, this startling sequence of signals could mean only one thing: the German battle fleet was in the convoy's immediate vicinity and about to begin its attack.

FAR FROM IT: the enemy warships were still at anchor at Altenfiord, and the Germans saw little prospect of their being used.

While extreme anxiety still governed the Admiralty in London, resignation ruled the German Naval Staff in Berlin. At 5 P.M. General-Admiral Carls, growing increasingly impatient for a decision from Berlin, had indicated that within twenty-four hours the time for executing *The Knight's Move* would be up; if the fleet had not sailed by then, he planned to recall all the warships with the exception of *Scheer* and two destroyers to Narvik and Trondheim.

At 8:30 that evening, as the big air attack on the convoy was ending, Grand-Admiral Raeder telephoned from Berlin agreeing to this course of action.

At the end of the day, the Naval Staff were still in two moods: while they correctly suspected that the two "carrier-aircraft" sighted near the convoy were probably scout planes catapulted by Hamilton's cruisers, they were still forced to admit that there

was no logical explanation for the behaviour of this cruiser force – to which all German submarines not shadowing the convoy had meantime been ordered to direct hostile attention. “We can only hope that the hours of darkness and the early morning will bring some clarity in this respect,” the Naval Staff concluded.<sup>43</sup> Until then there was no prospect of their battle fleet weighing anchor.

THE HOUR WHICH had preceded the British Admiralty’s transmission of the signals withdrawing the cruisers and scattering the convoy was the most dramatic in the experience of the British Naval Staff in London.

During the early evening of 4 July, the Ultra cryptanalysts in England broke the naval cipher settings for the twenty-four hours ending that noon; the messages now deciphered confirmed the suspicion that *Tirpitz* and *Admiral Hipper* had been due to enter Altenfiord too that morning. More ominously, the Ultra cryptanalysts now unravelled the German fleet commander’s order of 7.40 A.M. to his cruiser commander. This had read:

IMMEDIATE. Arriving Alta 0900. You are to allot anchorages *Tirpitz* outer Vagfiord (as received). Newly arriving destroyers and torpedo boats to complete with fuel at once.

Admiral Pound calculated with a pair of dividers and chart that in six hours’ time – around 2 A.M. – those German warships could be attacking the convoy.

At about 8.30 P.M. the First Sea Lord, together with a number of other officers, descended to the “Citadel,” the concrete bunker constructed behind the Admiralty building in Whitehall to house the subterranean Operational Intelligence Centre. Pound’s first visit was to Captain J. W. Clayton, the Centre’s Deputy Director. A minute or two later, all of them, including now Clayton, walked along the corridor and packed into the office of Paymas-

ter-Commander Norman E. Denning, the principal Intelligence officer for operations of the German surface units. Into this room flowed virtually all Intelligence data on the movements of all German warships, including the “Ultras” and agents’ reports.

Admiral Pound asked him whether *Tirpitz* had yet sailed from Altenfiord. Denning replied that if she had, he was certain he would have heard of it. Pound persisted, “Can you say for certain that the *Tirpitz* is still at Altenfiord, then?” The Intelligence officer replied that his sources were such that he would learn not that the battleship was at anchor, but only whether she had put to sea. In reply to a further question, he added that there was no evidence of the battleship’s preparing to sail for the next few hours. Subsequently Denning was to blame himself for not having been able to put over to Pound with sufficient conviction his confidence that the ships were still at anchor.

He was basing his opinion that the *Tirpitz* was not at sea on negative evidence. No radio signals had yet been picked up between Group North and *Tirpitz*; Admiral Commanding Arctic’s intercepted radio signals to the U-boat group Ice Devil contained no warning to look out for German surface forces. And the Norwegian agent at Altenfiord would surely have radioed word of any sailings. But Pound did not ask the junior commander for his evidence, and Denning did not volunteer it. When the First Sea Lord finally left Denning’s room he certainly gave the impression that he accepted the commander’s contention.<sup>44</sup> Later it became apparent that he had not.

To Pound it seemed that Denham’s Stockholm report was coming true down to the last detail: “Simultaneous attacks when convoy on meridian of Bear Island by two surface groups supported by U-boats and aircraft.” That was what Denham had predicted.

Pound crossed the corridor into the Centre’s Submarine Tracking Room. This was the equivalent of Denning’s office, as far as

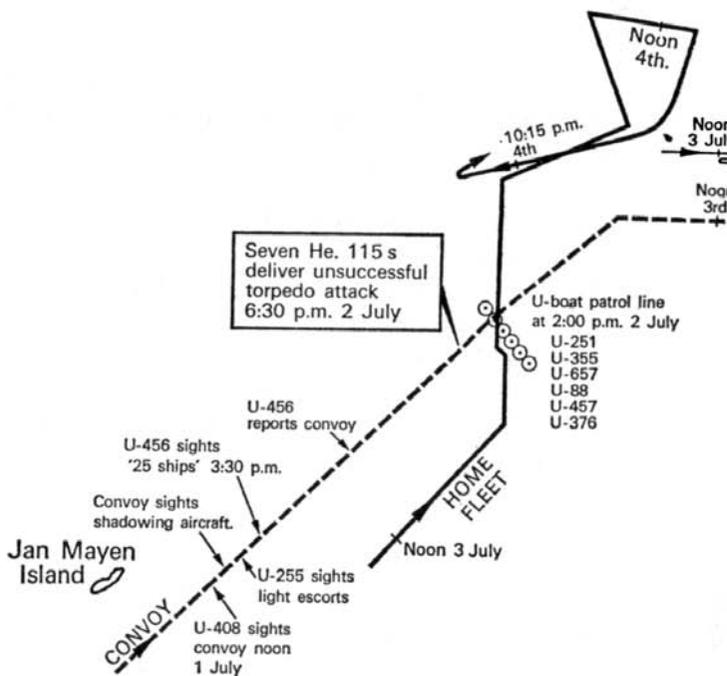
---

the enemy U-boats were concerned: all Intelligence and radio-monitoring reports on the whereabouts and activities of enemy U-boats promptly reached this room – a large chamber, dominated by a square table in the centre, and with charts of special areas on every wall. The room’s commanding officer, Commander Roger Winn, RNVR, was with Denning one of the most astute Intelligence officers produced by any of the three Services: he could detect every nuance of German submarine strategy even as it was being developed by the authorities in Berlin. German U-boat commanders soon learned that the ones who lived longest were the ones who transmitted least.

WE HAVE ALREADY noted the extreme difficulties under which Winn’s staff were labouring when trying to locate U-boats in the Arctic by radio direction-finding means; but now the picture forming in Winn’s room was a most alarming representation of the dangerous situation developing for the cruisers in the Barents Sea. Commander Winn recalls having informed Pound that the U-boat situation was “very serious indeed.”<sup>45</sup>

The first result of Admiral Pound’s visit to the Citadel was that by the time he and his entourage returned to his first-floor room, he had resolved that the cruiser force must be withdrawn to the westward at once, as it could certainly not put up any lasting fight against *Tirpitz*. And – despite what Denning had assured him – the Germans must surely have sailed the *Tirpitz* squadron, or be on the point of doing so: there was no logical reason why they should not.

At 9.11 P.M., the first of the three fatal signals was sent out, ordering Hamilton’s cruiser force to withdraw to westward at “high speed.” For a reason no longer exactly ascertainable, the signal was prefixed MOST IMMEDIATE although there was no immediacy in the need for the force’s withdrawal: they had fuel for another day’s steaming eastward. The stress on “high speed” was the re-

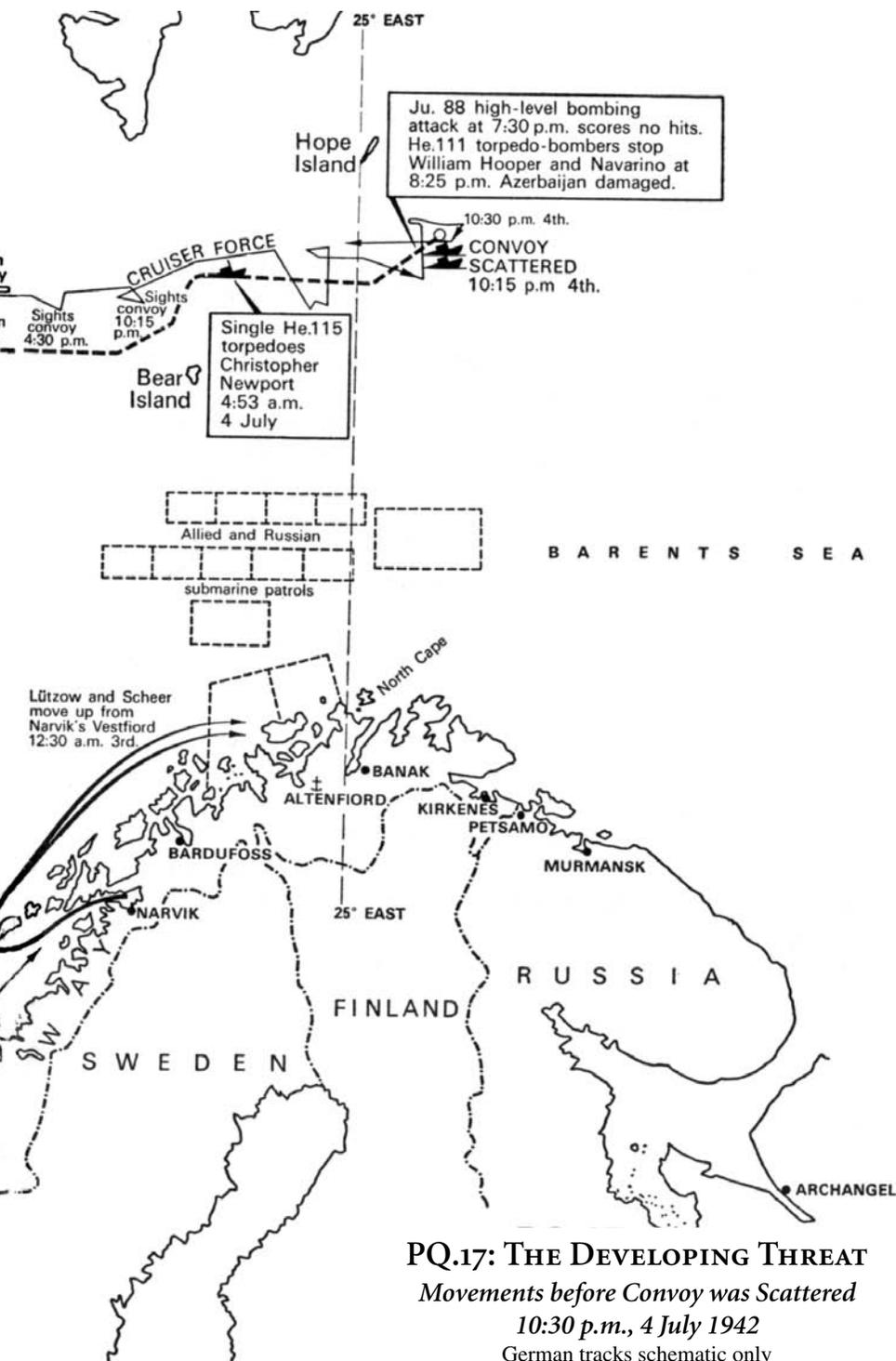


At 6 p.m. Tirpitz's group also leaves Vestfiord and joins Lützow's group at Altenfiord at 10 a.m. 4th.



Tirpitz's battle group leaves Trondheim Fiord 8 p.m. 2 July





**PQ.17: THE DEVELOPING THREAT**

*Movements before Convoy was Scattered*

*10:30 p.m., 4 July 1942*

German tracks schematic only

---

sult of Pound's visit to the Submarine Tracking Room, where the Germans' change of emphasis for U-boat attack from the convoy to the cruisers had been reported to him. Submarines were known to be lying across the cruisers' withdrawal route.

With Hamilton and the cruisers gone, Commander J. E. Broome, the Senior Officer of the Escort, would be the senior officer on the spot. Admiral Pound expressed great reluctance to place the burden for a major decision onto the shoulders of such a junior officer.<sup>46</sup> In any case, the Admiralty alone was in possession of all the relevant Intelligence, so it was the Admiralty that should make the appropriate decisions.

The First Sea Lord enquired of each of the officers in turn, seated round the conference table in his room, what line of action he would support for the convoy to avoid being slaughtered by the German battle fleet during the night. He himself favoured its dispersal. Each officer in turn said the convoy should not be dispersed yet, with the exception of Admiral Moore, the Vice-Chief of Naval Staff.<sup>47</sup>

He alone expressed himself in favour of dispersing the convoy; indeed, he thought it should be done immediately. Using chart and dividers, he argued that in five hours' time, the German warships could be attacking the convoy.

This was not an occasion when the convoy could wait until the enemy ships actually appeared on the horizon, as in the famous *Jervis Bay* incident in 1940; convoy PQ.17 was understood to be close to the icepack to the north, so dispersal could only be in a southerly direction, and this would bring the convoy's merchant ships right under the guns of the attacking German warships. If the convoy was to be dispersed, it must be dispersed at once.<sup>48</sup>

According to the Director of Operations<sup>49</sup> – one of the younger officers present at this historic moment – the way in which Admiral Pound reached his final decision was almost melodramatic. The First Sea Lord leaned back in his leather-backed chair and

---

---

closed his eyes – an invariable attitude of deep meditation when making difficult decisions. His hands gripped the arms of his chair, and his features, which had seemed almost ill and strained, became peaceful and composed.

After a few moments the youthful Director of Plans whispered irreverently, “Look, Father’s fallen asleep.” After thirty long seconds, Admiral Pound reached for a Naval Message pad and announced, “The convoy is to be dispersed.”

As he said this, he made a curious but eloquent gesture to the others, indicating that this was his decision, and he was taking it alone.

One can but admire his courage in reaching the decision in face of such opposition. That the decision was to prove wrong lent all the more poignancy to it. The dumbfounded Captain Clayton slipped out of Pound’s office and hurried down to the Citadel again.

Admiral Pound himself wrote out the signal ordering the convoy to “disperse and proceed to Russian ports” because of the threat from surface ships.

He handed it to Admiral Moore to see, and then it went down to the Registry for immediate transmission to Commander Broome, Admiral Tovey and Rear-Admiral Hamilton.

No sooner had the signal gone down, than it occurred to Moore that there was an error in its formulation: “disperse” meant that the ships would merely break formation and head in a bunch for Archangel, which would still leave them a worthwhile target for the enemy. He at once pointed this out to Pound, and informed him that the word laid down in the convoy orders was “scatter.”

The First Sea Lord agreed: “I meant them to scatter.”

Vice-Admiral Moore swiftly drafted a brief second signal as a correction to the first, and to ensure that it reached the convoy coterminously with the “dispersal” signal, he prefixed it most

---

IMMEDIATE. The new signal read, “My 21.23B of the 4th. Convoy is to scatter.”\*

Now the die was cast. The message went out at 9.36 P.M. The signals, unforgettable as they arrived in rapid succession on the ships’ bridges, were being flashed across the ether to the cruisers and to PQ.17.

Only now did a fresh Ultra intercept belatedly arrive in Commander Denning’s room. It was the order of Hitler’s Admiral Commanding Arctic of 11.30 A.M. that morning to the U-boat group Ice Devil. It began:

No own naval forces in the operational area. Position of heavy enemy group not known at present, but is the major target for U-boats when encountered. Boats in contact with the convoy are to keep at it. No aircraft in contact with the convoy at the moment. Reconnaissance is being operated.

Commander Denning was horrified. “*No own naval forces in the operational area*” – this confirmed his gut feeling that the German battle fleet was not at sea.

When Captain Clayton returned to the Operational Intelligence Centre, nearly a hundred feet below ground in the Citadel, he related to Commander Denning the decision that had been taken. Denning urged his superior that the German warships had, for some unknown reason, not put to sea; nor was there any indication that they were even planning to do so in the near future. He prevailed upon Clayton to return once more to Pound’s room, overlooking Horse Guards Parade, to persuade him to cancel the order for the convoy’s dispersal. Clayton hastened aloft and

\* Had a closer scrutiny of the last signal been made by Hamilton, it would have become obvious that it was essentially a correction of the former signal and this would have divested it of its apparent urgency. This can hardly be held against him, of course.

---

---

told Admiral Pound that the OIC was satisfied that the enemy warships were still at anchor. Pound answered, “We have decided to scatter the convoy, and that is how it must now stay.” There is some reason to believe that, after despatching the signal scattering the convoy, Pound had telephoned Mr. Churchill to tell him what he had done (the extent to which the First Sea Lord was in awe of the Prime Minister cannot be over-emphasised) and this was why he resisted Captain Clayton’s suggestion.\*

Clayton returned to the Citadel and related Pound’s reply to Denning.<sup>44</sup>

## 5

AT 8.43 P.M., it will be remembered, Commander Broome had received from Rear-Admiral Hamilton the first explicit warning about the “proximity” of surface forces, and he had begun preparing for the action that was to follow. At 9.47, twenty-three minutes before the Admiralty’s two abrupt signals “dispersing” and then “scattering” the convoy reached him, Commander Broome received an ominous report from the anti-aircraft ship *Pozarica*, which was watching the rear of the convoy with her superior radar arrays: “Suspected formation, 230°, 29 miles.”<sup>50</sup> That could be something coming from Norway.

Ordered now to scatter the convoy in such drastic terms, Broome at once complied. At 10.15 P.M. he signalled the corvette *Dianella*, “Tell submarines *P-614* and *P-615* to act independently and strike.”<sup>50</sup> When the corvette passed the signal on, *P-615* (Lieutenant Newstead) asked, “Where the devil is the enemy?” Broome

\* Commander Peter Kemp, who was Acting Deputy Commander of the OIC and had that day accompanied Pound through the Submarine Tracking Room and the main Operations Room and into the Duty Captain’s room, stressed to me (in May 1963) that definite information that the *Tirpitz* squadron was still at anchor did not come through until some hours later.

---

signalled back, “God knows.”<sup>51</sup> The other submarine, commanded by Lieutenant Beckley, signalled Broome that he intended “to remain on the surface.” A terse Broome replied, “So do I.”<sup>52</sup> Their dispositions thus assigned to them, the two British submarine commanders decided to patrol north and south of the line of the convoy’s track and wait for the enemy warships to appear.\*

The Convoy Commodore in *River Afton* refused to believe that this magnificent convoy was to be scattered without further ado, even with no enemy in sight. When Broome signalled the message across to them, Dowding thought there must have been some mistake, and he hesitated to pass it on to the freighters now keeping perfect station after the evening air attack. Broome was obliged to bring *Keppel* to within megaphone distance of the Commodore ship.

He confirmed that the convoy was to be scattered.

Only then, at 10.15 P.M., did the still incredulous Commodore hoist a red pennant with a white cross – Pennant Eight – on his signal halyards. On the bridge of every merchant ship, the officers reached for their codebooks. The pennant’s listed meaning was: “Scatter fanwise and proceed independently to destination at utmost speed.”

Each ship was to set off on a different bearing according to a prearranged scheme; but each ship now seemed to be waiting for the others to move first.

What lay ahead of them? Most had only magnetic compasses – inadequate for navigation in these latitudes – and some had only four obsolete light machine-guns as their armament. The fear of death lay like a pall over every ship.

\* They remained submerged until the next day. They then reported their positions to the Flag Officer Submarines (at Swiss Cottage, in North-West London); he ordered them to break off their patrol and proceed directly to the Russian naval base at Polyarnoe.

Finally, after the Commodore ship made the “execute” signal, the ill-armed merchant vessels slowly and hesitantly edged apart, “like dogs with their tails between their legs,” according to one of the Masters in his report.<sup>28</sup> *River Afton* was already surging ahead and away from the milling merchantmen, as Commodore Dowding needed no further persuading that the German battle fleet was after them. To the ship’s Chief Engineer he promised two cigars if he could coax an extra two knots out of his engines.<sup>53</sup> Poor *River Afton*. The elderly, creaking tramp was destined less than twenty-four hours later to meet the most horrible end of any of these merchantmen.

IT WAS NOW that Commander Broome had to make one of the most unpleasant decisions of his career on the bridge of his destroyer *Keppel*.<sup>54</sup> Whitehall had ordered the convoy to scatter, but what were the escort vessels of his command to do?

The Admiralty had mentioned none of these, and no provision had been made in Hamilton’s operational orders for an eventuality such as this.<sup>55</sup> Broome signalled to all the other escort destroyers: “Join me!” At 10.18 P.M. he signalled to Hamilton the proposal that the convoy’s close escort should join the cruiser force. Hamilton “approved this as regards destroyers.”\*

He had no hesitation in this, as the proper place for the destroyers was obviously with the forces which might meet the enemy attack, rather than with a scattering convoy. Besides, this would still leave twelve anti-submarine vessels with the merchant ships.

\* Hamilton’s Preliminary Report: “It later became apparent that the Admiralty expected that the destroyers had remained.” Hamilton had served in destroyers for most of his Service life, and had recently given up the appointment of Rear-Admiral Destroyers, Home Fleet. At that time there was a great shortage of destroyers; he remarked to *London*’s captain that there was little Broome’s destroyers could do to help a dispersed convoy.<sup>7</sup>

---

At 10.20 P.M. Commander Broome however signalled the remainder of his escort force:

All escorts from *Keppel*:

All convoy scatter and proceed to Russian Ports.

Escorts, negative destroyers, proceed independently to Archangel.

Destroyers join *Keppel*.<sup>50</sup>

At ten-thirty, he headed off toward the withdrawing cruisers in the east, taking his escort destroyers with him. The decks of every merchantman were crowded with bewildered seamen.<sup>4</sup>

At the time the cruiser force received the last of the Admiralty's fateful signals, the cruiser *Tuscaloosa* still had one aircraft in the air, and *Wainwright* was fuelling from the convoy's oiler. *Norfolk's* Walrus had vanished over the horizon and could not be recalled. The cruiser's captain proposed formally to Hamilton that he should be allowed to proceed eastward to the agreed rendezvous with the Walrus 50 miles farther east, but furnished with what seemed such categorical orders from Whitehall, Hamilton was bound to "regret" that this was impossible. The cruiser force carried on briefly to the eastward as *Tuscaloosa's* aircraft was recovered, and then at ten-thirty Hamilton turned his force to the south-west, so as to steer between the scattering merchant ships of the convoy and the probable direction of the "German surface attack."<sup>56</sup>

From *Wichita's* bridge, Lieutenant Fairbanks surveyed the sorry spectacle of the scattering convoy:

The ships are dotted around for miles. Some still burning and smouldering from bomb hits, while others are just getting up steam. Their smoke makes it look like huge black ostrich feathers are growing out of tubs.

S. 1320g. (For use with S. 1320f).		NAVAL MESSAGE.		(Revised—October, 1935.)
Write across		12		55
	4/7/42.			60
		ALL DESTROYERS FROM	KEPPEL	65
		JOIN ME !!		70
	2032/4	ALL ESCORTS FROM	KEPPEL	75
		ALL CONVOY SCATTER AND PROCEED TO		80
		RUSSIAN PORTS.		85
		ESCORTS NEGATIVE DESTROYERS.		90
		PROCEED INDEPENDENTLY TO		95
		ARCHANGEL.		100
		DESTROYERS JOIN KEPPEL = 2020Z/4		105
				110
		5/16 JULY 1942.		115
		P.L. 17 @ ADMIRALTY FROM S.B.N.O.		120
			NORTH RUSSIA	125
	SS. EARLSTON IN ACTION WITH U-BOAT		130	
	075° 43'N 038° 02'E at 1600Z/5		135	
	(1) SUBMARINE DISTRESS -		140	
	VESSEL 075° 02'N		145	
	038° 00'E TORPEDOED.		150	

Keppel's signal, recorded on the naval message pad kept by Lieutenant Frank Petter of the corvette *La Malouine*

As the cruisers approached the convoy, they saw Commander Broome's destroyers coming to meet them, accompanied by USS *Wainwright*. "She comes boiling over the water at us looking very smug and self-conscious," wrote Fairbanks. "Wonder what hap-

pened to our young Ensign on the *William Hooper* who only had 90 rounds for his 4-inch guns?"<sup>33</sup>

Broome led his six destroyers round at 20 knots, and headed off in line ahead to join Hamilton's cruisers and destroyers racing off to the south-west into a wall of fog. By 11 P.M. his destroyers were drawing very close to the cruisers. The destroyer *Wilton* signalled *Ledbury*, "How fast are you going?" *Ledbury* replied, "Full ahead."<sup>57</sup> From the bridge of his flagship, Hamilton told Broome's destroyers not to rupture themselves – they were to cut the corners. At 11.18 P.M. Broome's destroyers took station astern of Hamilton's flagship, now heading almost due west.

As the destroyers and cruisers passed the confused merchant ships at 11.30 P.M., Commodore Dowding wished Broome well: "Many thanks. Good-bye and good hunting!" Broome signalled back to all his charges he was leaving behind: "Sorry to leave you like this. Good luck. Looks like a bloody business."<sup>58</sup>

The Admiralty had ordered "high speed." Rear-Admiral Hamilton increased to 25 knots. Soon the warships were speeding through the oil, débris and wreckage of the evening's big air attack. In preparation for what Hamilton also took to be imminent action with the enemy, ships' buglers sounded "general quarters" and the flashproof shutters began closing on the crews locked into the cordite and shell-rooms of the magazines beneath the cruisers' main batteries.

At Hamilton's request, Captain Don Moon, Senior Officer Destroyers, in *Wainwright*, reorganised all the destroyers into two flotillas, ordering them to form up in line abreast, ready to deliver a torpedo attack on the German warships "at closest possible range" – less than 2,000 yards. "In case of surprise contact at close range, attack without orders and exploit surprise to maximum."<sup>59</sup> (Moon's plan overlooked the fact that Broome's two Hunt-class destroyers were purely escort destroyers, designed for little other than anti-aircraft and anti-submarine rôles; they had

---

no torpedo tubes.) The word that they were going into action spread rapidly through *Keppel's* company; the sailors sat down to hasty meals and began preparing their weapons for action.<sup>60</sup>

Hamilton imposed strict wireless silence on the force. Shortly after midnight, the cruisers and destroyers ran into dense fog, and this was to persist for the next six hours.

THE OTHER CONVOY escort vessels had been flabbergasted by this turn of events, and their late Senior Officer's instructions had been anything but comprehensive. The fleet oiler *Aldersdale*, laden with 8,000 tons of fuel oil for the convoy's warships, tried to contact Broome by signal lamp as the destroyers raced past. Captain Hobson wanted to know whether to turn his oiler back, or to scatter with the merchantmen.<sup>61</sup> To this Hobson did not receive a reply.

Lieutenant Gradwell, Captain of the armed trawler *Ayrshire*, recalled Hamilton's words at the escort conference a week before, to the effect that the convoy might well be the cause of another fleet action, "perhaps another Jutland."

From the sight of the cruisers running off to the west, Gradwell drew what seemed the only possible conclusion: it would not be long before *Tirpitz* appeared over the horizon. He ordered his crew to lash every available depth-charge to oil drums. His plan was to drop them across the battleship's path, if he could get close enough, then place *Ayrshire* squarely across her bows and blow the trawler up as they collided.<sup>62</sup>

The captain of the anti-aircraft ship *Palomares* cleared lower deck and explained to all hands that if they sighted *Tirpitz* they and two corvettes they had collected were to behave as though they were a cruiser and two destroyers, heading straight for the Germans to delay them while the merchantmen escaped. The Captain held a short service, and all hands not on watch were released to snatch what sleep they could.<sup>63</sup>

WAS THE DECISION for the cruisers to withdraw partly motivated by the First Sea Lord's realisation that half the endangered cruiser force was American? Mr. Churchill offered this explanation in his post-war memoirs, first serialised in 1950 in the *Daily Telegraph*. There is nothing in the naval records to suggest that this was so. Although the passage of the memoirs describing the PQ.17 disaster was "ghosted" by Captain G. R. G. Allen, one of the many authors who helped the former Prime Minister on this monumental task, Captain Allen has informed me that the unlikely explanation for Pound's actions was inserted by Mr. Churchill himself: "He was trying to make excuses for his old friend."<sup>64</sup> We are told that on occasion Mr. Churchill was wont to invent such extenuating circumstances to mitigate the errors of his protégés.

Contrary to what the Official Historian suggests, Mr. Churchill did not, however, know at the time that it was in fact Sir Dudley Pound who had taken the fatal decision to scatter the convoy.

Captain Allen would relate,

When I told [Churchill] one morning in 1949 that my researches among the official papers and my interviews with naval staff officers had yielded the information that Pound was responsible for these decisions concerning PQ.17, I could see real pain and grief written across his face; he had *not* known about it.

In the Churchill memoirs, Allen accordingly wrote, "So strictly was the secret of these orders being sent on the First Sea Lord's authority guarded by the Admiralty, that it was not until after the war that I learned the facts."<sup>65</sup>

---

Whatever subsequent historians were to make of them, the effect of the Admiralty's signals on events in the Barents Sea was quite irreversible, as Rear-Admiral Hamilton privately explained soon after.

Although I had no intention of seeking action with the *Tirpitz*, it seemed probable that I might not be able to avoid it.

It is evident that *Keppel* appreciated the situation in the same way, and his signalled intentions and my approval for the destroyers of the escort to join me were based entirely on this inference. The scattering of the convoy in waters infested by U-boats and enemy aircraft could only mean the probability of immediate surface attack, and in these conditions the proper place for the destroyers seemed obviously to be concentrated with the forces which might meet that attack, rather than being scattered with the convoy.<sup>9</sup>

He pointed out that he had provided for twelve anti-submarine vessels to remain with the convoy, despite Broome's proposal that they too should withdraw. "I had no hesitation in approving that the destroyers should join my force."

Admiral Tovey made it clear in his report to the Admiralty however that he considered the actions of both Hamilton and the destroyers ill-advised. "The form of the signals ordering the Cruiser Covering Force to withdraw and the convoy to scatter was such that it was reasonable for [Hamilton] to deduce that an attack by the *Tirpitz* was imminent," he admitted. He added that in these circumstances he considered Hamilton to have been correct in "ordering" the screening destroyers to join him:

Once he was clear of the convoy, however, and in default of further information to confirm his impression that the *Tirpitz* was in the close vicinity, I consider that he should have re-

leased these destroyers and instructed them to rejoin the convoy. Their value for anti-U-boat purposes, even though the convoy was scattering, would have been considerable, and if the enemy main units had appeared the destroyers might have been a considerable distraction and anxiety to them, especially in low visibility.<sup>66</sup>

Mr. Churchill echoed this criticism in his memoirs: “Unfortunately,” he wrote, “the destroyers of the convoy escort also withdrew.” Commander Broome, agonised by the implication that he was somehow at fault in this, wrote in reply:

This statement may reasonably create the impression that the destroyer force was free to remain with the convoy or to withdraw. It was from no misfortune that the destroyers under my command withdrew; it resulted from a direct order from the Admiralty to scatter the convoy. This order could only have been justified by the proximity of the enemy, and it demanded therefore that I should concentrate my destroyer force with the nearby cruisers.<sup>\*67</sup>

At the time, Hamilton and all his officers still believed that *Tirpitz* was at sea and advancing on the convoy’s ships behind them. The warships were still at action stations, and they were still rushing headlong through the fog, heedless of the many small “growlers” and icebergs infesting the sea.

But still nothing happened.

\* Broome also wrote in *Make a Signal*, p. 149: “The correct way to scatter a convoy is explained in the signal book, but it is not explained there or anywhere else how to round up a convoy once it has been scattered.” Referring to the Admiralty’s signals, he added with feeling: “It seems that wireless telegraphy came forty years too soon for PQ.17.”

The events of the last few hours had had a shattering effect on Hamilton's officers and men: assuming – as they all did – that the Germans were about to pounce upon the scattering merchant ships, they were running away from the enemy, and at “high speed.”<sup>3</sup> Up to the time he had received the signals, Hamilton's belief had been that *Tirpitz* could not arrive at the convoy until midnight at the earliest, or at 2 A.M. the next morning if *Admiral Scheer* was in company.

The precipitate arrival of three Admiralty signals, one prefixed IMMEDIATE and two MOST IMMEDIATE, had left him convinced that the Admiralty had come into possession of the “further information” they had hinted at two hours before, and that *Tirpitz* was at sea and in the near vicinity of the convoy.<sup>9</sup> “I acted accordingly.”<sup>3</sup> Had he known otherwise, he would have remained with his force in a covering position until the convoy was widely dispersed, and would then have departed from the convoy's sight in a less painfully exposed manner. “I fear,” he told Tovey two days later, “that the effect on morale was deplorable.”

It was indeed. An officer of the poorly-armed American freighter *John Witherspoon* wrote in his diary that night: “Received orders to disband convoy. It is unbelievable that we are being put on our own without protection – some ships with no guns at all. Everyone going every way on horizon. Some ships sticking two or three together. We are going off alone.”<sup>68</sup>

WHAT BECAME of the twelve Royal Navy escort vessels left behind by their Escort Leader? It was in these that Rear-Admiral Hamilton had reposed his confidence for the salvation of at least some of the convoy's transports.

The corvette *Dianella* (Lieutenant Rankin) had interpreted Broome's last orders literally, and was heading in a straight line for Archangel.<sup>69</sup> At 11 P.M. the anti-aircraft ship *Palomares* (Captain J. H. Jauncey), as senior escort vessel after *Keppel's* departure,

merely signalled all the escorts, "Scatter and proceed independently."<sup>70</sup>

She realised some time later however that in scattering the escorts she had left herself as denuded of anti-submarine protection as the merchant ships. She signalled the minesweeper *Britomart*, 7 miles to the north of her, the one word "Close"; ten minutes later she signalled the instructions, "Take station on my port beam, one mile. Course 077°, 11½ knots."

Soon after, *Palomares* ordered the minesweeper *Halcyon* to take station on her other beam. *Britomart*'s Lieutenant-Commander Stammwitz afterward observed, "It seemed wrong that my anti-submarine minesweeper was being used only to escort a heavily armed anti-aircraft ship. But *Palomares* seemed more concerned with the safe passage of his ship than the merchant ships."<sup>71</sup> The anti-submarine vessels were of course in return afforded excellent AA protection in this way.

The corvette *La Malouine* had initially shaped an easterly course with her sister-ship *Lotus*, the latter having newly oiled. "Fog failed us when most needed," wrote Lieutenant Caradus, *La Malouine*'s Asdic officer, that night. The corvette *Poppy* was not far away, and *Ayrshire*, the little anti-submarine trawler of whom everybody had grown so fond, was in the distance. For two hours, those with naval codebooks worked on the continuing stream of cipher signals from Whitehall: "Submarines were ordered to certain positions," recorded Caradus, "and we knew that the German fleet was at sea." By midnight the dispersal was complete, and so far apparently successful.\*

Hoping to salvage something from the convoy, the other anti-aircraft ship *Pozarica* had asked permission to take the seven northernmost merchant ships with her and five other escorts.

\* Even the corvettes were ill-equipped for navigating these latitudes. Caradus recorded that *La Malouine* signalled *Poppy* at this stage, "What is your DR [dead-reckoning] position?" and received the reply, "Hopeless!"

---

The Senior Officer had signalled back a blunt refusal – the convoy was to scatter and keep as separate as possible. Faced with this, at 1 A.M. *Pozarica* requested the corvettes *La Malouine* and *Lotus* to provide anti-submarine protection to port and starboard of her.

Together they set a north-easterly course, heading for the ice-barrier at their best combined speed, which was of necessity restricted by the lower speed of the corvettes and their need to conserve sufficient fuel to reach the nearest land. *Pozarica*'s action caused some dismay in the corvettes. Ignorant, perhaps, of Captain Lawford's categorical orders that the convoy was to scatter, *La Malouine*'s First Lieutenant raged, "We should burn the Ensign and put a yellow flag up." He did not think the anti-aircraft ship should be escorted, and he expressed his disgust at the RN escorts' general "lack of guts" by throwing a chair across the wardroom. From the vibration, all knew the corvette was making maximum speed.

Lieutenant Caradus retired to his bunk until 4 A.M., fully clad in his kapok padded oilskin and with an inflated life-vest as his pillow. "Very tired but head full of thoughts and heart very heavy," he wrote in his diary. "Sleep wouldn't come." Like all the seamen, he had been on the alert for twenty-four hours and more; he wanted to keep abreast of the fast-moving events, but although the spirit was willing the flesh was weak. He remembered hoping they would be hit before he woke up again.

Caradus was wakened by the words of the Morning Prayer. It was Sunday, 5 July. He was aware that the corvette's engines were now throbbing less. The rescue ship *Rathlin*, laden with survivors of the torpedoed *William Hooper* and *Navarino*, joined company and was given a station five miles on *Pozarica*'s port beam. At 8 A.M. the first icecaps were sighted, looking unpleasantly like U-boats from a distance. There was a cold, biting wind and patches of fog. The cluster of vessels nosed to within 800

---

---

yards of the ice and altered course to the south-west. They followed the ice-edge all morning.

AFTER RECEIVING the order that all escorts were to make for Archangel, *Ayrshire's* Lieutenant Gradwell had withdrawn to his charthouse to examine the trawler's few charts of the area.

He decided there was little future in obeying Broome's order: the Germans would be studying the very same charts and would immediately bar the route to Archangel with submarines or with bombers, or with both.<sup>72</sup> The track to Archangel seemed to Gradwell to spell certain disaster. He resolved instead to steam to the north-west – in exactly the opposite direction – heading generally for Hope Island. It seemed improbable that the Germans would detect him there, and he hoped to be able to conceal his trawler alongside the island. "I also thought," Gradwell reported deferentially a few days later, "that I might escort one or two ships in that direction without defeating the object of scattering."<sup>73</sup> He accordingly indicated to *Ironclad*, one of the merchant ships shaping in the most northerly direction after the scatter, to follow him. A corvette enquired of him, "Where are you going?" Gradwell noncommittally replied, "To Hell. And the first one to come back, we hope."<sup>74</sup>

Captain George Salvesen of the Panamanian freighter *Troubadour* had also set course for Hope Island, and a while later Gradwell caught sight of him heading to the north-west.

Although the Panamanian was making a lot of smoke, Gradwell saw in this an advantage rather than a disadvantage, for the smoke showed the freighter to be a coal burner, and this would help him out of a rather awkward situation. As the vessels drew abreast, the lieutenant hailed the freighter: "Are you a coal burner?" The reply was that she was. Gradwell asked, "What supplies have you got?" "Six months." Gradwell ordered: "Come with me!" *Troubadour*, glad of the escort, joined company.

---

The three vessels proceeded together toward the north-west as the night passed. Gradwell was glad of his crew – fishermen for the most part, and tougher than any naval complement. He felt ready for any assault the Germans might be planning. At about 7 A.M., as they approached the northern ice-barrier, they came across yet another American merchant ship from the convoy, *Silver Sword*, running close to the great fields of icefloes extending to the north. As he took this third freighter into his charge, Gradwell realised there was no hope of breaking through to the islands where he had planned to “lie doggo”; and at eight o’clock that evening he signalled to the three ships that he was going to lead them into the ice to avoid detection by enemy aircraft.

This was an extraordinarily courageous action for a trawler captain to make: one false calculation and his ship would be crushed by the vast expanse of shifting ice. Gradwell had the Asdic dome removed from the underside of *Ayrshire*’s hull, and she steamed at slow speed into the icefloes, which became ever denser as the ships pressed further north. All through that night and the following day the four ships ploughed on into the ice, the three freighter Masters trusting implicitly in Gradwell’s good judgement.

Finally the ice was almost too thick to break. The vessels were now some 25 miles from the open sea. On Gradwell’s instructions they stopped engines, damped down their fires and blotted out every trace of smoke. He sent his First Officer, Lieutenant R. Elsdon, RNVR, on foot across the ice to the other ships. With his authority, the gunners loaded and manned the guns on the M-3 tanks in their deck cargo, as well as their own ships’ armament. In the event of a surface attack, the German raiders would encounter a most remarkable broadside.

This was not the only surprise Lieutenant Gradwell had in store. On the way into the ice, *Troubadour*’s Master had investigated his paint-locker and found that he had an exceptionally large

---

stock of white paint. As the ship's Armed Guard officer afterward described:

The *Ayrshire's* skipper ordered all the ships to use as much paint as they could on their starboard sides, which were exposed to the direction of Norway. In a matter of about four hours all of the ships had carried out this order. The *Troubadour* was painted from stem to stern, from the water line to her foretop, in less than four hours. All of the deck cargo, deck-gear, hatches, superstructure, had been covered with this coat of white paint.<sup>75</sup>

So effective was this camouflage that they saw aircraft passing 20 miles away but failing to detect the little convoy.\* Two of the vessels were only painted on the one side – “rather,” as Gradwell later remarked, “like playing Hamlet and Othello with a very small cast.” So long as they stayed in the ice they were concealed, and so long as they were concealed they felt secure.

7

AS HAMILTON'S cruiser force drew farther and farther from the scattering convoy, his British and American sailors' morale slumped.

During the night of 4–5 July, the mystery deepened. The suspicion that the cruisers had apparently abandoned the convoy to engage enemy warships had not been dispelled, but now that the German warships had failed to appear, why did the cruisers not turn back? They were still ploughing westward at 25 knots.

\* On the evening of 5 July, the German Fifth Air Force reported to the Naval Staff in Berlin the position of the ice-edge, and added: “It will be impossible for ships to be in there. The pack ice extends 20–25 miles northward, then there is solid ice.”

---

At one stage, as the warships raced out of a fogbank, the cruiser *Norfolk* saw a German U-boat sitting on the surface right in her path. Captain Bellars tried to ram it, but with klaxon hooting the submarine crash-dived and escaped below *Norfolk*'s hull.

Hamilton did not yet know it, but these submarines were the only reason his withdrawal had been ordered at "high speed."

The rumour began to circulate that the Royal Navy had been ordered to run away from the Germans; it spread like wildfire through the cruisers' lower decks. *London*'s Captain said later:

I vividly recall one detail. I always lived in my bridge during these operations, and that night as I was having my evening meal on the bridge, my old chief steward came up to me, and as he cleared away my plate and cutlery he whispered to me, "It's a pity, Sir, that we had to abandon that convoy. . ." I knew then that the story was round the whole ship, and that something would have to be done to bolster the crew's morale.<sup>76</sup>

He told Hamilton that the ship's company would have to be informed in full of all that had happened, in order to kill the rumours. This Hamilton promised to do.

At 1.15 A.M. Hamilton signalled the other warships of his force a general explanation of the situation as he saw it, in an attempt to quell the growing dismay.

I know you will all be feeling as distressed as I am at having to leave that fine collection of ships to find their own way to harbour. The enemy under cover of his shore-based aircraft has succeeded in concentrating a far superior force in this area. We were therefore ordered to withdraw. We are all sorry that the good work of the close escort could not be completed. I hope we shall all have a chance of settling this score with the Hun soon.<sup>77</sup>

The American Captain Hill replied from the senior U.S. cruiser, *Wichita*, “Thank you. I feel the same way.”

From Hamilton’s wording of the signal it is obvious that he still believed the German battleships were at sea. This impression was rudely dispelled two hours later when, at 3.22 A.M., the cruiser force received from the Admiralty a message to the effect that reconnaissance had shown that enemy heavy units had moved from Trondheim and Narvik, and were “believed” to be in the Altenfiord area.\*<sup>78</sup>

It was a cruel shock for Rear-Admiral Hamilton. Were the German warships not at sea, then, and already striking out amongst the scattered ships of PQ.17? It was out of the question in his view to send Broome and his destroyers back. The convoy’s ships were by now too well-scattered – over 7,500 square miles of sea – for him to hope to achieve anything by returning Commander Broome’s destroyers to them.

The most they could do would be screen individual merchant ships, should they be able to find them. But by now they were already getting low on fuel.

Hamilton considered that with the possibility of an offensive by the battle fleet against the German heavy warships, perhaps using the aircraft-carrier *Victorious*, the most useful service Broome’s unhappy destroyers could perform would be to the Allied fleet.

With this in view, at 11.30 A.M. Hamilton began a lengthy fuelling programme to ensure that all the newcomers were topped up with fuel from the cruisers, and within the next few hours four of the six had been completed.

\* Admiral Tovey’s battle fleet received the news at about the same time. The War Diary of Commander, Task Force 99, Admiral Giffen, recorded this on 5 July: “At 3 A.M. a message was received from the Admiralty stating that it was thought that enemy heavy units were north of Tromsø, but uncertain as to whether or not they were at sea.”

---

Commander Broome was equally aware of the complicated situation, and during the early hours of 5 July he communicated his uncomfortable feelings to the British admiral:

My final brief instructions to PQ.17 and remaining escorts were as follows: convoy scatter and proceed to Russian ports; remaining escorts proceed independently to Archangel; submarines remain to attack if enemy approaches before convoy dispersed, then act under orders of Senior Officer.

*Palomares* has doubtless taken charge, but I feel I let my excellent escort down by leaving them thus, and therefore submit these hurried and inadequate instructions requesting they may be re-adjusted or amplified as necessary at the first opportunity.<sup>79</sup>

In the Barents Sea, nobody had “taken charge.” With the few exceptions we have noted, each ship – escort vessel and merchant ship alike – was withdrawing at maximum speed, intent only on its own salvation. Filled with mounting foreboding, Hamilton that afternoon signalled Commander Broome again:

Had you any original instructions concerning the conduct of the escort when the convoy scattered?

What led you to assume the destroyers should concentrate and act under orders of Senior Officer?

Personally, I thoroughly approve of your suggestion.<sup>80</sup>

Encouraged perhaps by Hamilton’s closing sentence, Broome replied:

No instructions. The suggestion to join your force was my own. My appreciation from slender information at the time was that action was probable in holding off enemy while con-

voy scattered, and that destroyers would be most useful under your orders.

His signal concluded with the sentence:

The decision to leave the remaining escorts was most unpleasant and I am always ready to go back and collect them.\*<sup>81</sup>

IN THE TWO American cruisers, the “retreat” left the sailors bewildered and bitter. “What kind of High Command have we that with such great force in operation we cannot fight it out?” asked Lieutenant Fairbanks. “Have the British become gun-shy? How can wars be won this way?” These were the angry questions heard throughout the U.S. cruisers: “It was the mood of the morning.” Captain Hill sat in his chair on the bridge of *Wichita* staring blankly out at the bright and now peaceful sea. He sensed the feeling of dismay spreading through the ship. The cruiser’s printing press produced a special edition of the ship’s newspaper relating the sequence of signals from the British Admiralty and the events of the previous day. The editorial was blunt:

No one can accuse us of ever having a faint heart, nor can anyone say the British lack “guts”; after all, they have been fighting this war for nearly three years; for one whole year

\* Since the war, a different interpretation has been placed on this signal by the Official Historian (Roskill, *op. cit.*, p. 141), who wrote: “Broome, on the other hand, felt certain that [his destroyers] would be ordered to turn back to help defend the scattered merchantmen once the anticipated threat had subsided, and on the afternoon of 5 July he had signalled to Admiral Hamilton ‘I am always ready to go back,’ which message he ‘intended as a hint as to where I knew my duty lay.’” Broome, in accordance with naval practice, came under Hamilton’s orders as soon as he joined him, and could thus only “hint.” But the full signal shows that Broome was hinting that he wanted to go back and *collect his escorts*.

they fought it alone, without allies, without a trained army, and without equipment – their fleet spread thin around the seven seas of the world.

Anyone who has seen the people of London, of Liverpool, Bristol, Portsmouth, Coventry or Southampton can testify to their worth. Anyone who has seen the Commandos in action, was at Dunkirk or at Malta, would be a good witness.

No, we are kinfolk and allies in more ways than one. We've only been at this game for seven months. We're fresh, and all we need is the chance – and we may be surprised at how soon that chance comes. In the words of a signalman 2nd class, "we'll get those sons of bastards yet, by God!" And so we will!

It was an inglorious end to the first great joint Anglo-American naval operation.

AT ABOUT THE TIME that Hamilton and Broome were exchanging their worried signals, and *Wichita's* printing press was producing the first copies of its special newspaper, Rear-Admiral Miles, head of the British Naval Mission in Moscow, was having a first "hurried meeting" with Admiral Alafusov at the Russian Admiralty building in Moscow.<sup>82</sup> For both officers it was an unpleasant experience. Miles had been awakened in the middle of the night by his secretary, who had precipitately entered his quarters brandishing a copy of the Admiralty signal scattering PQ.17 – the only one of all the thousands of Admiralty operational signals that Miles ever received. No sooner had Miles returned to a troubled sleep than he was reawakened, this time with the news that Alafusov, the Deputy Chief of Naval Staff, was demanding to see him at midday.

Alafusov was suffering from a severe bout of influenza and he had been roused from his sick-bed to deal with Miles. His face

looked tired and drawn when the British admiral was ushered in, and he was “sweating and shaking like a leaf.” Miles kept a respectful distance. The Russian upbraided him for the British Admiralty’s decision to scatter the convoy (they had apparently read the Admiralty’s signals). The merchant ships, he told Miles, were being decimated, and the Russian monitoring service had picked up scores of distress signals. Admiral Miles’s naval interpreter was hard-pressed to keep up with the Russian’s flow of invective. Alafusov concluded by demanding that Miles secure from the Admiralty a complete and detailed explanation of what had happened; this was to be presented to Admiral Kusnetsov, the Russian Chief of Naval Staff, within the next few days. Kusnetsov had been ordered to report to Marshal Stalin.

As the PQ.17 affair had obviously been elevated to an exalted political level, Miles hurried back to his office and sent an urgent request direct to Admiral Sir Dudley Pound asking for the Admiralty’s appreciation of the situation at the time of the decision to scatter the convoy.

## The Better Part of Valour

*Saturday, 4 July – Monday, 6 July*

*Has the British Navy no sense of glory?*

—JOSEPH STALIN TO WINSTON

CHURCHILL, PRIVATELY, 16 AUGUST 1942

IT WAS SOME TIME before the Germans began to grasp what was happening to PQ.17. The wireless signals from the U-boats that reached the Narvik headquarters of the German Admiral Commanding, Arctic, showed puzzlement and indecision. Shortly before 1 A.M. on 5 July, Admiral Schmudt passed to his U-boat commanders the results of the Air Force's latest reconnaissance: "Air Force reports at 12:30 A.M.: convoy extended over 25 miles."<sup>1</sup>

An hour earlier, he had received a signal from Teichert's *U-456* announcing that the Allied cruiser squadron – four cruisers in two columns, with destroyers on either flank – had suddenly departed to the south-west. Now Schmudt received a further puzzled signal from Teichert, reporting that by 11.15 P.M. parts of the convoy were making northward past him, while the cruiser squadron was far to the south and strongly changing course again. Lieutenant-Commander Hilmar Siemon's *U-334*, closely following on the convoy's trail, had come across the scene of the big

---

evening air attack. At about half-past midnight he found the two ships torpedoed by the German Air Force, *Navarino* and *William Hooper*. At 12.45 A.M. *U-334* launched a torpedo at the former from a little over 1,000 yards, but the ship turned over and sank before the torpedo reached her;<sup>2</sup> at 1 A.M. he fired two torpedoes at the other vessel, which still seemed perfectly seaworthy, and within five minutes of the explosion the vessel had sunk completely.

For some time after that, the U-boats' reports indicated that the convoy had been lost again, in a "wall of fog." But at 2 A.M. Teichert radioed that he had found scattered units of the convoy gathering near him, and soon after that Commander Brandenburg (*U-457*) reported that he had lost the cruiser squadron – which he was supposed to be shadowing – and could he have permission to attack the convoy's merchant ships which he now had in sight?

Schmundt's office commented that it now seemed certain that the cruiser squadron had, as Teichert had reported, run off to the west. At 3.15 A.M. news came from North-East Air Command that an aircraft shadowing the convoy had reported an hour before that it seemed to have broken up into a northern group comprising nineteen freighters, three "destroyers" and two corvettes, and a southern group of twelve freighters and a "light cruiser" – which may have been a wrong identification of one of the heavily armed anti-aircraft ships. The aircraft had expressly confirmed that there were no heavy warships whatsoever accompanying the merchantmen.

Unworried by the dangers of wireless telegraphy now, the U-boat commanders kept up a steady running commentary for Admiral Schmudt as they began to hunt down the stragglers – a submarine's paradise. At 3.35 A.M. *U-456* (Teichert) signalled that he had sighted the convoy scattering; there were "many unescorted lone freighters," steering north-easterly and south-

---

easterly courses. Five minutes later a signal was received from *U-334* (Siemon) reporting that he had sunk a damaged straggler – *William Hooper* – and had observed three ships sinking, including what might have been a heavy cruiser.\* Five minutes later still, Commander Brandenburg's *U-457* signalled that he was chasing a lone freighter, and gave his position. So the signals poured into Narvik, all night long.

At 7.45 A.M. Teichert wirelessed Narvik that the convoy was widely scattered and heading south-east; it was apparently slowly regrouping, in improving visibility. Admiral Schmudt ordered all the Ice Devil submarines to concentrate on attacking the "little convoys" and lone merchant ships, but they were to revert to attacking the cruiser squadron should it reappear.

BELOW THE SURFACE of the Barents Sea two German submarines were already preparing for torpedo attacks: *U-703* was steadily overtaking the brand-new British merchantman *Empire Byron*, and *U-88* was manoeuvring into position to destroy the American steamer *Carlton*. Captain John Wharton, Rear-Commodore of PQ.17 and Master of the 6,645-ton *Empire Byron*, had finally stretched himself out in an armchair in his day-room on the bridge and fallen asleep. He had been at action stations for thirty-six hours and more, and despite the cold daylight which had bathed his ship all night, he had been unable to stay awake any longer.<sup>3</sup> He had given his cabin to the lieutenant in charge of the maritime artillery unit, as he and his men had been on the alert even longer. The ship was carrying one of the first cargoes of the new Churchill tanks to Russia; it was her second north Russian convoy duty.

At a quarter-past seven, *U-703* launched her first two torpedoes at the target at a range of 2 miles.<sup>4</sup> Lieutenant-Commander

\* No cruiser had been sunk; the German Air Force subsequently made great play of the claim, however.

---

Bielfeld put the ship's speed at 10 knots, but both torpedoes passed harmlessly ahead of her. No bells shrilled the alarm, so the attack had passed unnoticed. Bielfeld believed the torpedoes had missed astern, so he gave the target a speed of 12 knots and fired tubes II and IV; the torpedoes missed even farther ahead. While his crew hastened to reload tube I, he swung the U-boat round so as to bring her stern tube to bear upon the vessel. An hour passed. He had now measured her speed exactly – 8 knots. She would cross his periscope sights at right angles and only 1,000 yards away. At 8.27 A.M. *U-703* placed her fifth torpedo in *Empire Byron*'s main engine-room. Bielfeld saw through his periscope a small white puff of smoke from the after hold. Everybody in the U-boat distinctly heard the metallic knock of the exploding war-head. The ship settled slightly lower in the sea.

By the time the torpedo struck, Captain Wharton was so soundly asleep that he never even heard the explosion. He was awakened by the gunnery lieutenant shouting that the ship had been torpedoed; he refused to believe this, as he could hear that the ship still had plenty of forward speed. Nevertheless he looked outside: there was pandemonium as the crew were already struggling to leave the ship; three of the four lifeboats had been lowered, and the fourth was on its way down. Wharton went to the bridge to see that all papers and documents were destroyed. The second radio officer, a Manchester man, asked whether he should fetch an emergency wireless for use in the boats; Wharton told him the set had already been sent aboard them. A dozen gunners had been trapped below by the explosion, and he could hear their shouts and screams above the noise of rushing water. There was nothing anybody could do to reach them.

Wharton dived into the sea. He was picked up by a raft and transferred to one of the lifeboats. He ordered all the men to concentrate in two of the lifeboats, one of which had an engine. There were several bodies in the sea, one of which he recognised

---

to his horror as being that of the young Manchester radio officer to whom he had spoken only minutes before. Twenty minutes after the attack the ship's boiler exploded, tearing a gaping hole in the hull. The roar of water cascading into the ship was now deafening, and within not many more minutes she finally went down. Bielfeld had in the meantime impatiently fired a sixth torpedo at her, nine minutes after the fifth, but this went wide and vanished into the distance. As the ship went down, the nearby American Liberty ship *Peter Kerr* broke wireless silence to broadcast an SOS for *Empire Byron*, but they neglected to give the ship's position.<sup>5</sup> There were forty-two survivors all told; eighteen gunners and seamen had lost their lives.

LIEUTENANT-COMMANDER Bielfeld ordered *U-703* to surface and moved across to the two lifeboats. Throughout the operation, he did not utter a word, but a tall blond officer climbed down onto the U-boat's deck, accompanied by a seaman in polished leggings toting a machine-gun, and began shouting to them.

Captain Wharton had already ordered his officers to take off their uniforms and not to betray his identity. The REME captain provided to advise the Russians on the new Churchill tanks, John Rimington, was reluctant to doff his magnificent pure-white duffel-coat and kept it on, while the lifeboats moved around, picking the survivors out of the sea.

The blond German shouted, "Don't they teach Merchant Navy seamen to row in Britain?" – a sarcastic reference to the difficulty the seamen were having using the unfamiliar oars to approach the submarine. When they were closer, he asked, "Why are you fighting this war? You aren't Communists are you? So why do you risk your lives to take tanks to the Bolsheviks? Who is your captain?" Nobody stirred or answered.

The German's eyes fell on the rather distinguished-looking Chief Steward, who hastily said that he was not the captain.

Finally, the officer saw Captain Rimington, and told him to step onto the submarine's deck; the Army captain's protests went unheeded and he was taken down below.<sup>6</sup>

The U-boat commander then returned to the lifeboats an engineer his men had fished out of the sea. At the same time, his crew gave the lifeboats tins of biscuits and apple juice, and a piece of sausage. "How far is the nearest land?" asked Captain Wharton. "About 250 miles," answered the blond officer. A klaxon sounded within the submarine and she submerged, taking the captured *Briton* with her.\*

Some time later, Admiral Schmudt received *U-703*'s victory signal in Narvik: "Ten thousand ton *Empire Byron* sunk, pin-point AC.2629. Cargo: tanks. Destination: Archangel. Captain John Rimington taken aboard as prisoner . . . Convoy in rout. Heading 120°. I am following hard."<sup>7</sup> The fact that the convoy had been destined for Archangel was of no small importance to Schmudt, of course.

At about the same time as Schmudt was reading Bielfeld's signal, Rear-Admiral Hamilton, 400 miles to the west of the *Empire Byron*'s lifeboats, advised the captain of *Wichita*:

I understand one ship has been torpedoed. But on the whole the convoy has been scattered successfully.<sup>8</sup>

2

WE HAVE MET *Carlton* before: an eccentric American freighter, she had shot down the British CAM ship's *Hurricane* during a

\* *Empire Byron*'s carpenter, Mr Frank Cooper, related in *The Times* (29 September 1942) how the engineer "was shown over the submarine's engine-room by the commander and given wine, bread wrapped in silver paper and a sausage." The U-boat commander had said he was sorry to sink the ship, but it was his duty.

---

German attack on convoy PQ.16, and she had been bombed and forced to turn back; she had narrowly missed being sunk by the airborne torpedo that had claimed *Christopher Newport* on 4 July. Now, laden with 200 tons of TNT, tanks and tank ammunition, she was plunging alone through the gently undulating sea toward Archangel. We have met too Mr. James Akins, the voluble seaman who has described for us all these events that befell *Carlton*.

Of her 44-man crew (including eleven naval gunners) there was none who suspected that the enemy was at this moment so close to them. For three hours, Lieutenant-Commander Heino Bohmann's *U-88* had been closing in on her, gradually overtaking the speeding freighter. Now, soon after 9 A.M., with visibility down to only 800 yards, Bohmann began the final attack manoeuvre. His submarine barely moving forward, he took her up to periscope depth and prepared tubes I and III for firing. The first tube he aligned on the ship's foremast, and the second on a point some 50 feet forward of the aftermast.<sup>9</sup> At 10.15 A.M., *Carlton* ran slowly across the crosshairs of Bohmann's eyepiece, just 600 yards away, and Bohmann fired both torpedoes.

Thirty-three seconds passed.

On this morning, the last in *Carlton's* four-month voyage from Philadelphia, Akins had been awakened at 9.45 A.M. to go on watch; he just managed to consume some toast and coffee in the fifteen minutes before going on duty.<sup>10</sup> As he took over the wheel, he had seen a fogbank lying ahead, "which I was hoping we could run into before a plane found us." It was warm in the wheelhouse, so he took off his coat and boots. A quarter of a mile away, and seven fathoms deep, the *U-boat's* crew was listening to the dwindling murmur of the two torpedoes' screws propelling their warheads at a depth of ten feet toward their target. One struck home, for there was a distinct clang, but then the screw noises could be heard again. There had been a detonator

---

---

pistol failure. Suddenly there was a violent explosion, and Bohmann saw “a black mushroom cloud spurt up, completely obscuring the target.”

Everything seemed to be falling around Akins. The second torpedo had struck home. He could not at first take in what had happened – he had only had aircraft on his mind, never thinking of U-boats. He seized his coat and boots, rounded up all the navigation instruments he could, and headed for the lifeboats. Two of the three surviving lifeboats had been smashed by the torpedo, including Akins’s. The ship’s entire company would have to abandon ship in one lifeboat and the four life-rafts secured to the stays of the fore- and aftermasts. The Second Officer and three others took the forward starboard raft, while James Akins and five others climbed onto the port raft.

Commander Bohmann brought *U-88* round stern onto the crippled *Carlton*, and at 10.22 A.M. he fired his stern tube at her. But the ship shuddered and began moving to port even as the torpedo left the tube, and it missed.

The raft with Akins aboard held on to the ship for some time, waiting for the Norwegian master. But Captain Hansen did not want to leave *Carlton*, not so much out of affection for his old ship but because *U-88*’s last torpedo was on the surface, running in erratic circles round her, missing the rafts and lifeboats by increasingly small margins. One of the less seasoned American seamen prepared to bludgeon the torpedo with an oar as it next passed, but the others successfully restrained him.

Finally it ran down and sank.

Hansen boarded the raft with Akins, then transferred to the lifeboat. At 10.50 A.M., as Bohmann was preparing to fire again, the seemingly indestructible *Carlton* rolled quietly over and sank by the bows.

Bohmann brought *U-88* to the surface. “We all stood by, waiting to be machine-gunned,” wrote Akins. “We had all been

---

---

pumped so full of propaganda that they all did this. But it seems he took the name of the ship and left – he had a busy day ahead.”

While on the surface, Bohmann wirelessly to Schmundt that he had sunk a 10,000-tonner, but he did not trouble even to ascertain her name.<sup>11</sup> The *Carlton*'s crew assembled all the rafts round the boat and lashed them together; they picked up everything they could salvage from the water.

A roll-call of the crew was held; all were accounted for but Fireman W. Pelt, Oiler Frey, and Fireman Stillwell, who had been on watch down in the engine-room. Some of the survivors were badly burned; they were moved to one of the rafts, where they could lie down. For about an hour the men rowed desultorily in what they took to be the direction of Russia. “Everyone was now happy,” reminisced Akins, “as we figured our troubles were over. The Captain wanted to take the lifeboat with the nineteen men and head for help as they could manage much better alone. All hands voted *that* down, and we decided to stay together.”

Nobody minimised the precariousness of their position. For the present, the sea was a mirror, with only a gentle swell; but they were 400 miles from land, and if a storm sprang up the men clinging to the rafts could not expect to survive long. The sea was empty on every quarter, the horizon uninterrupted save for the chilling glimpses of grey icebergs.

## 3

BY NOW, Naval Group North (General-Admiral Carls) had also been informed that a German submarine had sighted the cruiser force running off “westward at high speed.” There was still no news of the whereabouts of any “aircraft-carrier force, and there still seemed to be some warships, although probably only light cruisers, with PQ.17's ships, which were reported to be widely scattered.<sup>12</sup>

As soon as these reports reached Kiel, Carls determined to exploit this favourable situation immediately. His battle fleet would attack after all. During the early hours, Naval Group North formally proposed that, provided the “battleship” wrongly reported as being in the convoy’s vicinity could be disposed of by noon, and provided there was no aircraft-carrier there, the *Tirpitz* group should ignore any aircraft-carrier threat altogether.

The reasoning was sound: it did not seem likely that a carrier would advance into the zone of German air superiority; and any carrier would thus have to stand off so far that if *Tirpitz* were to delay its attack on the convoy until it was south of latitude 72°, any carrier-planes would have to operate at the limit of their endurance. The group again warned that for tactical reasons, the deadline for launching *The Knight’s Move* was one o’clock that afternoon.<sup>13</sup> They asked for authority to issue the codeword for the attack at once, should the enemy “battleship” be successfully disposed of.

Grand-Admiral Raeder, mindful of the Führer’s insistence that the aircraft-carrier be located and neutralised first, refused to condone this; and shortly after 9 A.M. Naval Group North was informed of this. But now the position was changed even more radically by another chance sighting by German aerial reconnaissance. At 6.55 A.M., the British battle fleet was found while in a clear patch between two banks of fog, retreating to the south-west.\*

Here was the aircraft-carrier the Germans had been seeking – some 220 miles west-north-west of Bear Island, over 400 miles from the German battle fleet’s lair at Altenfiord, and 800 miles

\* At 10 P.M. on 4 July, Tovey had reversed the course of the Anglo-American battle fleet to the north-east to cover the withdrawing cruiser force against any German surface attack; but by 4 A.M. the next morning he estimated that Hamilton was clear of the “danger area” and in fact some 160 miles south of him, and he resumed the battle fleet’s south-westerly course.<sup>14</sup>

---

---

from the probable location of the fleet attack the Germans now planned.

The German Naval Staff correctly concluded from this sighting that the Admiralty had no intention whatsoever of exposing the heavy Allied warships and aircraft-carrier to attack by German torpedo- and bomber-squadrons based in Norway, and was therefore keeping them at a respectful distance from North Cape. Besides, the Germans knew the Allied fleet had been at sea since at least 1 July – it had been seen cruising off Iceland on that date – so it seemed likely that it would be forced either to break off operations altogether for lack of fuel,\* or to take up a waiting position in the Arctic for completing from fleet oilers. The Naval Staff concluded that “one need scarcely expect any real danger from the enemy’s carrier group.”<sup>15</sup> Soon after 10 A.M., at about the time *Carlton* was being torpedoed, Lofoten Air Command confirmed that there was no sight of any enemy forces in the area between 14° East and 26° East right up to the ice-barrier. This added still further to the growing confidence in Berlin.

Naval Group North had already placed the battle fleet at one hour’s sailing notice from 9 A.M. At 10.52 A.M. the fleet was ordered to prepare to sail at a moment’s notice, and Altenfiord was filled with noise as the German fleet weighed anchor and prepared to get under way. The sight of both Hamilton’s and Tovey’s forces withdrawing westward had removed the last obstacles to the execution of *The Knight’s Move*. From Kiel, General-Admiral Carls telephoned first the Naval Staff Operations Division and then Raeder himself to repeat his proposal for the battle fleet to attack regardless of any aircraft-carrier threat. This time, Raeder could only agree with Carls. His representative at the Führer’s headquarters was directed to inform Hitler of the changed situation, and to ask for his approval for the operation.

\* See page 242. Tovey was certainly low on fuel.

---

---

At about 11:30 A.M., Vice-Admiral Krancke telephoned back that he had “successfully accomplished” this mission. The Operations Division in Berlin forwarded this good news to Group North in Kiel ten minutes later, with the additional warning that the conditions on the attack’s execution would still stand if there were no further favourable reports on the movements of the enemy’s aircraft-carrier, or if the German battle fleet’s movements were compromised by their premature detection by enemy air reconnaissance.

One minute later, just over an hour before the deadline, General-Admiral Carls had already issued the agreed codeword\* for the attack to begin.<sup>16</sup>

The prospects for an overwhelming victory now looked extraordinarily favourable to the Germans.

In fact, with considerable strength of character, the Commander-in-Chief afloat – Admiral Schniewind – had once again not waited for the codeword to arrive: to gain extra time he had already left Altenfiord shortly after 11 A.M. and was heading through the Leads when the codeword authorising him to weigh anchor arrived. And despite the Group’s orders signalled to him, stipulating that the “Fleet is to leave [Leads] at Nordkyn” – i.e., as far to the east as possible – Schniewind adhered to his own plan to leave by the exit passage west of Rölvsöy, as he thought the risk of submarines was lower there.<sup>17</sup>

Carls took over command of the U-boat operations for the duration of the fleet operation, and signalled Schmundt:

Attack of our heavy units on convoy planned for tomorrow noon. Time of this will be notified under codeword Con-

\* The “codeword” was in fact a complete sentence: “Secret. The practice ammunition provided as per Naval Group North secret signal No. 3756 is withdrawn.”

cord. Sightings of enemy battleships, aircraft-carriers, aircraft, to be reported at once.

At a quarter-to-one that afternoon, Kiel wirelessly a final appreciation of the enemy's movements to Admiral Schniewind, aboard his battleship. The Allied cruiser force was running "westward at high speed"; the carrier force was cruising at a more moderate pace in the same direction, at least 400 miles northwest of Altenfiord; no other heavy warships had been sighted right up to the ice-barrier for hundreds of miles on either side; the convoy, protected only by light escort forces, had disintegrated into two loose groups, with clusters of crippled freighters falling far behind.

The German fleet's presence at Altenfiord had apparently not been suspected by the enemy.

There were no German submarines lying across the battle fleet's own track; it would be plain sailing for the Germans until mid-day on Monday, 6 July, when the raid on the merchant ships was timed to begin.

Even so, these were Germany's most powerful and significant warships that were at stake, and none realised this more than Grand-Admiral Raeder: over the telephone that morning, he reiterated his anxieties to Carls, even now that the decision had at last been made. In the spirit of Raeder's misgivings, Carls signalled Schniewind as *Tirpitz* was already moving out of the Leads, an unusual appeal for hesitancy and circumspection which must have made the gallant Fleet Commander despair:

A brief operation with partial successes is more important than a total victory involving major expenditure of time. Report at once if over-flown by any enemy aircraft. Do not hesitate to break off operation if situation doubtful. On no account grant enemy success against fleet nucleus.<sup>12</sup>

But there was nobody in the German Navy who did not now believe that the most favourable light was already shining on the German battle fleet. At three o'clock that afternoon, *Tirpitz*, *Admiral Hipper*, *Admiral Scheer*, seven destroyers and two torpedo-boats finally glided out of the Leads and into the open sea.

IN THE MEANTIME, the German Fifth Air Force exercised its reconnaissance and attack functions to the full. Preparations had been made for the third squadron of KG.30 Junkers 88s at Bardufoss to join KG.26 at Banak air-base as soon as the weather permitted, so they could carry out combined bombing operations against the convoy; but it now appeared that the convoy was too widely scattered, and its fast vessels were heading for bad weather areas with utmost speed.<sup>18</sup>

The mass air attacks began for the first time that afternoon, as the Norwegian airfields were now clear of fog.

At 2.30 P.M. Schmundt's office in Narvik was informed that frequent air-torpedo and bombing attacks were taking place. Both North-East Air Command and Lofoten Air Command lent weight to the attack, and during the afternoon all three squadrons of KG.30 and several torpedo-bomber aircraft swept the Barents Sea, searching for the convoy's straggling merchantmen.

All the more regrettable were the consequences of the Admiralty's order scattering the convoy.

Lieutenant Gradwell, whose small Asdic trawler had voluntarily collected three merchant ships and shepherded them into the icefields, was the only officer who interpreted his orders in this way. As the ether filled with hapless victims' distress signals, the other freighters sought protection where they could. The corvettes were with the anti-aircraft ships *Palomares* and *Pozarica*, which were making their own courses to the east.

The trawlers, as always, were the object of opprobrium among the other escorts: they were noisy, conspicuous and slow. Grad-

well's First Lieutenant, Dick Elsdon, had even composed a bawdy seven-verse lyric on the "Trawler Boys," two of whose most apposite verses ran:

Why, we're nothing but a tyro,  
 Haven't even got a gyro,  
 And as for making smoke, well, bugger me!  
 We just belch it up to Heaven  
 As we do our hot eleven,  
 Keeping station on a PQ or QP.

We are given types of gun  
 Little use against the Hun,  
 And rounds of ammunition – bloody few,  
 Then sent out with destroyers  
 Whose job is to annoy us,  
 As we help escort a QP or PQ.

The anti-aircraft ships soon found that the Asdic trawlers *Lord Middleton* and *Lord Austin* – besides making a lot of black smoke – were too slow for their liking. They signalled to ask their best speed, and the trawlers replied, "Eleven knots." Nothing more was said, but soon the trawlers were left behind.

*Pozarica*, with Mr. Godfrey Winn aboard as a war correspondent for Beaverbrook Newspapers, had collected the corvettes *La Malouine* and *Lotus* and was running eastward along the ice-edge, with the rescue ship *Rathlin* trying to keep up and the corvette *Poppy* not far away.<sup>19</sup>

Early on the morning of the 5th, the American freighter *Bellingham*, which had been on a converging course, had sighted this little cluster of ships and despite her 25 years gradually overtook them.

After three hours the anti-aircraft ship *Pozarica* ordered her to alter course 45° to starboard because, according to Captain

Lawford, the course she was then making would have taken her into the ice. The order was taken amiss by the *Bellingham*, which flashed a curt “Go to Hell” back to the Royal Navy. The anti-aircraft ship signalled back “Cheerio and Good Luck”<sup>20</sup> and moved away from her. This resulted in some bitter comments by *Bellingham*’s second officer.\*

Other merchant ships had similar encounters with their erstwhile escorts. We have seen how the anti-aircraft ship *Palomares* had collected the anti-submarine minesweepers *Britomart* and *Halcyon* and sped eastward in solitary splendour. During the early hours, to Captain Jauncey’s embarrassment, the freighters *Fairfield City* and *Daniel Morgan* had caught up with him, showing a surprising turn of speed. Shortly after 6 A.M., *Benjamin Harrison* had arrived, and three hours later *John Witherspoon* was there as well – four American merchant ships clinging to the Royal Navy escort vessels in mute appeal for protection.

This cluster of ships was shadowed all night long by German Blohm & Voss patrol planes, obviously homing in submarines onto them. What happened then is related in the official reports filed by the American Armed Guard officers aboard the merchantmen. At 1 P.M., according to *John Witherspoon*’s officer, “the escort altered course and advised all the accompanying ships by blinker not to follow but to remain on their own course.”<sup>21</sup> The *Daniel Morgan*’s officer reported to his authorities: “The naval escort left, ordering us to maintain our course.”<sup>22</sup> And the *Ben-*

\* *Bellingham*’s Armed Guard officer reported on arrival in Archangel: “We were within three miles of an AA ship and three corvettes doing thirteen knots; they moved away without waiting for us.”

According to his obituary in *The Times* (14 October 1958), it was for his work as Senior Officer of the Escort that Jauncey was awarded his DSO after PQ.17: “With dogged tenacity he managed to collect and shepherd the few forlorn survivors, and by hiding these in the Matochkin Strait in Novaya Zemlya ultimately brought them to safety in Archangel.” There is no mention of the incident described in the text in *Britomart*’s report.

---

*jamin Harrison*'s officer described bitterly: "The AA ship changed course and ordered us to keep on our present course."<sup>23</sup>

Having shaken off the merchant vessels, *Palomares* and the others moved off eastward at superior speed.

The four American ships ran for the shelter of a fogbank not far to the south-east of them. By 2 P.M. they were again being shadowed by a German Blohm & Voss, so just before the four ships plunged into the fog, *Daniel Morgan* swung round and fired her 3-inch anti-aircraft gun at the shadower in a steady barrage to prevent it from determining the exact courses of the other three ships as they entered the fog.

As the *Daniel Morgan* stood alone outside the fogbank, the German submarine which had been shadowing her all afternoon moved into position for the final kill. This was *U-88*, the submarine which had sunk *Carlton* that morning. With her torpedo tubes reloaded, she had submerged some miles away and was now approaching *Daniel Morgan* under the surface.<sup>24</sup>

Just as Lieutenant-Commander Bohmann was about to launch his torpedoes, the American ship got under way again. The others had been safely swallowed up by the fog, so the *Daniel Morgan* now stood off alone on a course heading for Admiralty Peninsula, a point on the Novaya Zemlya coast. Commander Bohmann was obliged to wait, and then surface and resume the chase again.

At about three o'clock in the afternoon, while steering due east, *Daniel Morgan* ran out of the other side of the fogbank and sighted *Fairfield City* steaming a parallel course to starboard. The *Daniel Morgan* was still unaware of any trailing submarine, but Commander Bohmann had found his prey again.

As he began to overtake the ship, three of *KG-30*'s Junkers 88s appeared overhead, manoeuvring into position to attack *Fairfield City*.<sup>25</sup> Once again the *Daniel Morgan* gallantly opened fire to divert the attackers' attention, but was unsuccessful. The first stick of bombs detonated close to *Fairfield City*'s starboard side; a sec-

ond bomber passed over, out of range of the *City's* guns, and released a second stick, scoring a direct hit on her afterdeck; the third Junkers placed its bombs right on the flying bridge, killing everybody except the helmsman, who was badly injured, and two men in the galley. Three lifeboats got away from the freighter, one of them badly damaged, and the burning ship sank soon after, taking its cargo of tanks to the bottom. The lifeboats set out on the long row to Novaya Zemlya, as *Daniel Morgan* disappeared over the horizon.

Three more Junkers 88s arrived, and together with the original three made a series of bombing runs over *Daniel Morgan* lasting over an hour. Her captain kept the ship swinging to present a difficult target, and no bombs hit her. Her guns were fired at maximum rate. The crew began to show unmistakable signs of strain, having now been at their action stations for over twenty-eight hours without respite.

After a brief interval, which gave them time to reload the guns' ready-use boxes, another group of five Junkers 88s arrived, rose into the sun and then attacked the ship in rapid succession. The gunners hit one and it howled away over the horizon with flames streaming from one engine nacelle; its bombs fell 50 yards short on the starboard side. The second and third aircraft were also unsuccessful in their attacks, but the fourth dropped its bombs so close on the starboard quarter that the ship's plates were ruptured between No. 4 and No. 5 holds. She took an immediate list to starboard and began to settle aft. There was no response to the helm. The bombers broke off the attack and vanished over the horizon.

Through his periscope, *U-88's* Commander Bohmann could see the merchantman steering an ungainly course and guessed that her steering gear had been put out of action.

Laden with 8,200 tons of steel, food, explosives, tanks and cars, *Daniel Morgan* had put up a braver fight than most, but now she

---

was virtually defenceless. One seaman had been killed by blast, and a shell had jammed in the overheated breech of the ship's single 3-inch gun; most of the .50-calibre ammunition was gone as well. Lieutenant Morton Wolfson, the Armed Guard officer, told the Captain of the position. Satisfied that the wireless operator had got an "air attack" distress signal away and given the *Morgan's* exact position, Captain Sullivan ordered his crew to stand by their lifeboat-stations.

Morton and two gunners continued their efforts to dislodge the shell from the gun's breech, but the shell parted from the case. Some of the seamen had already had enough. Without any orders to that effect, they lowered the lifeboats and cast off, leaving half the seamen and most of the gunners still aboard; one of the boats overturned in the panic, throwing its occupants into the sea. The Captain manoeuvred the ship round on her engines and brought her alongside the drifting lifeboats. They were hauled aboard and properly baled out. Two men, including the Chief Officer, were drowned in the accident. As soon as the three lifeboats were baled out, the entire crew abandoned ship.

Somebody must have sighted the second enemy, for a radio signal was transmitted giving the "submarine distress" prefix and *Daniel Morgan's* position.<sup>26</sup>

Commander Bohmann could hear knocking sounds on his U-boat's hydrophone gear, so he assumed there was still a skeleton crew aboard repairing the damaged steering gear. He fired a torpedo from tube I into the ship's port side and saw a spurt of grey smoke from her hull. Some minutes later, he fired tube IV into her engine-room and clearly observed the white columns of steam as the boilers burst. The ship began to crumple, to the accompaniment of much crashing and crunching; then she suddenly rolled over and sank, leaving only the three lifeboats behind.<sup>27</sup> Bohmann entered in his log, "Sunk her during repairs with two torpedoes."

The American seamen saw a large German submarine rise from the depths and move toward them. As German sailors took photographs of the men in the lifeboats, an officer speaking English with the merest trace of an accent asked the American captain, “What was the name of your ship? What was her tonnage? What was your cargo?”

Lying valiantly, Captain Sullivan answered that they had been carrying a general cargo of food and leather. The Germans retorted that they did not believe him, but that was all. The Americans asked in turn the course to the nearest land. They were told to steer a southerly course.

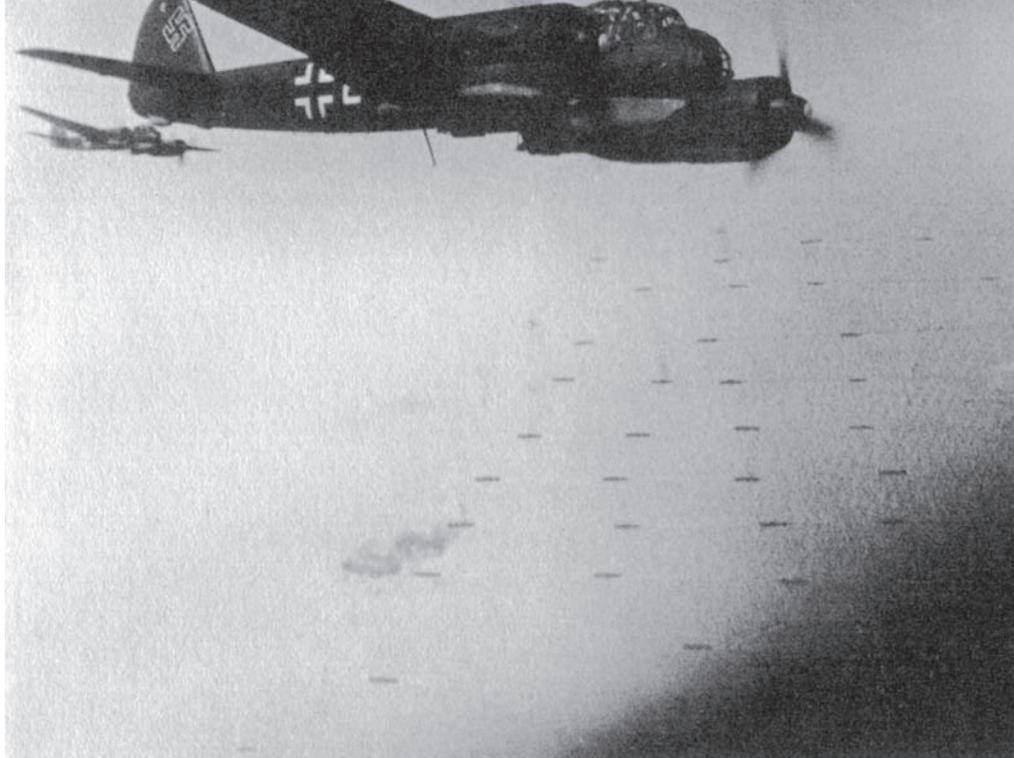
The U-boat followed them for some time, then set off on the surface in a renewed search for merchantmen.<sup>28</sup>

AT ABOUT the same time as *Daniel Morgan* was being attacked and stopped by Junkers 88 aircraft, not far away an unseen enemy was also overtaking the American freighter *Honomu*, laden with 7,500 tons of steel, tanks, ammunition and foodstuffs: Lieutenant-Commander Hilmar Siemon’s *U-334* was closing in, with tubes I, II and IV ready to fire.

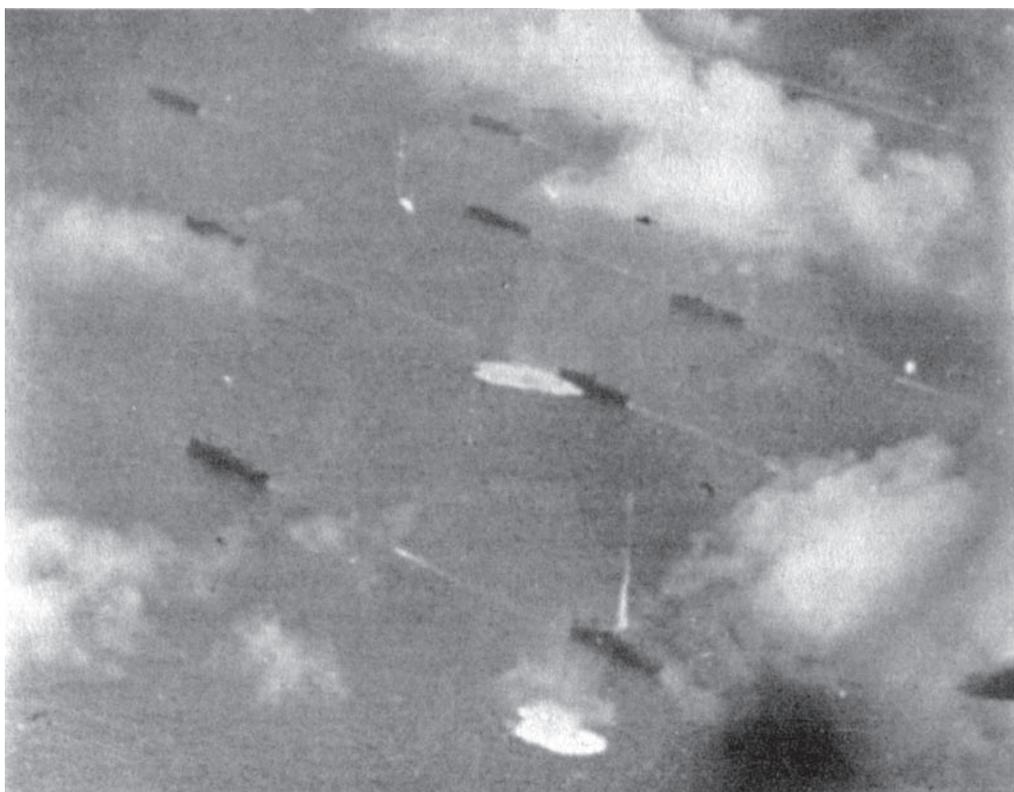
The ship was an ideal U-boat target: maintaining complete radio silence, and with ten men on watch, she was travelling at a steady 10½ knots and making no attempt to zig-zag.<sup>29</sup> By three o’clock on the afternoon of 5 July, *U-334* was lying in wait ahead of the intended victim, waiting for her to cross the field of fire.

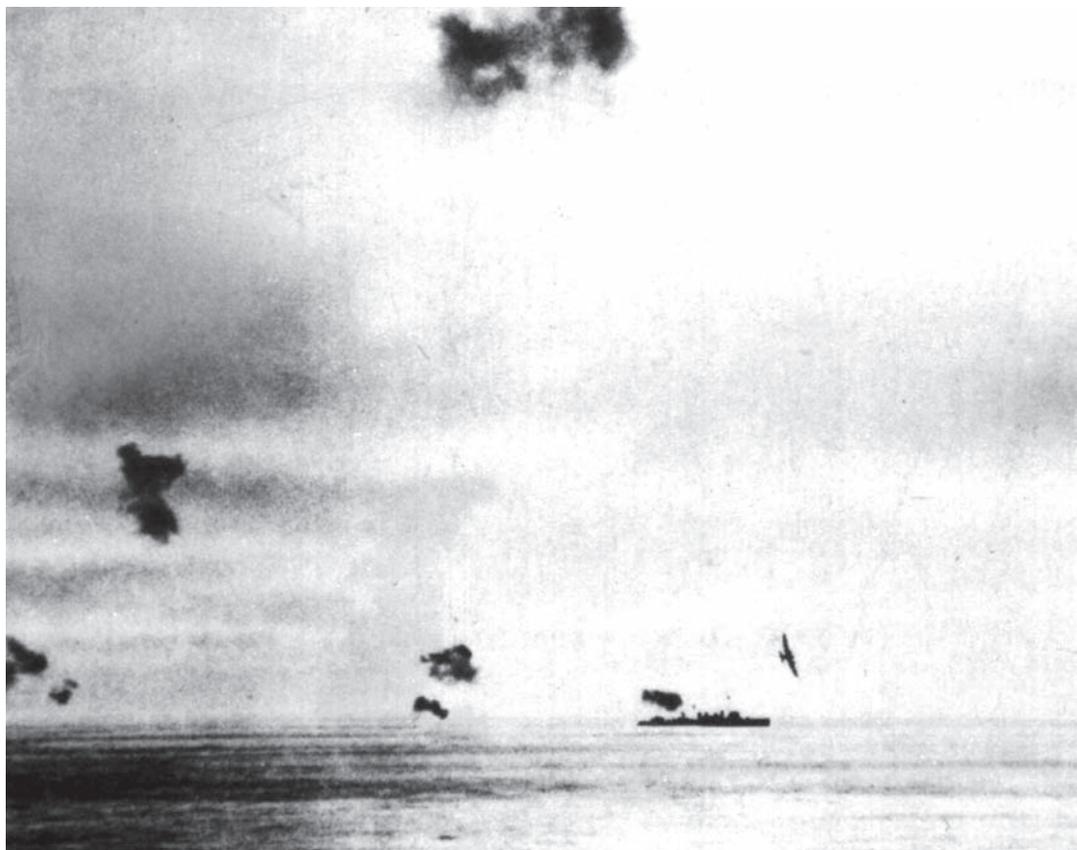
At 3.28 P.M., as *Honomu* waddled unsuspectingly across Siemon’s sights, barely 1,300 yards away, the U-boat commander fired the three torpedoes in a spread.

Siemon’s wireless operator followed the torpedo noises on the hydrophone gear for just over six minutes, so all had missed. They brought *U-334* sharply round to starboard, still submerged, and fired her stern tube at *Honomu* at 3.36 P.M.<sup>30</sup> Even as they did so, they saw a brown plume of smoke from the ship’s No. 3

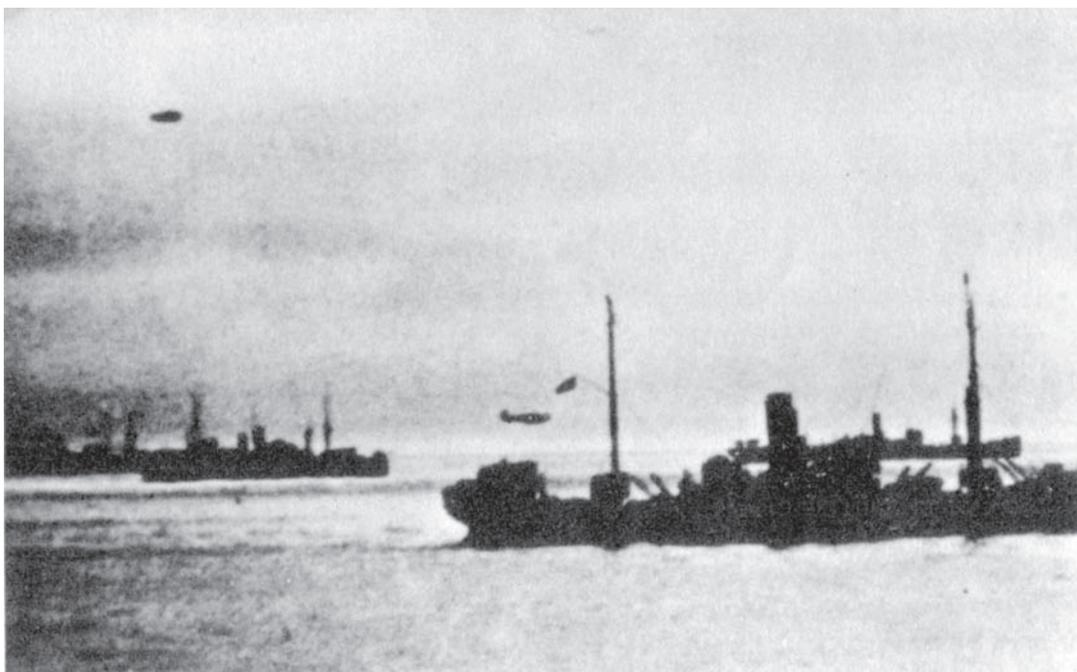


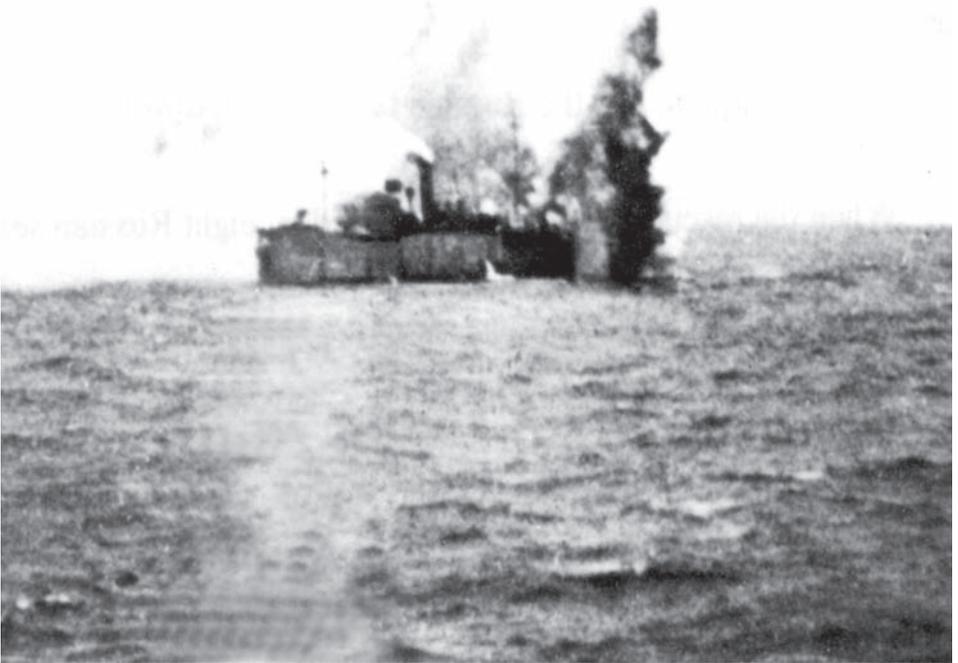
*KG.30's Ju 88s could not press home their attack on PQ.17 on 4 July because of the fire-power of the merchantmen and their escorts*



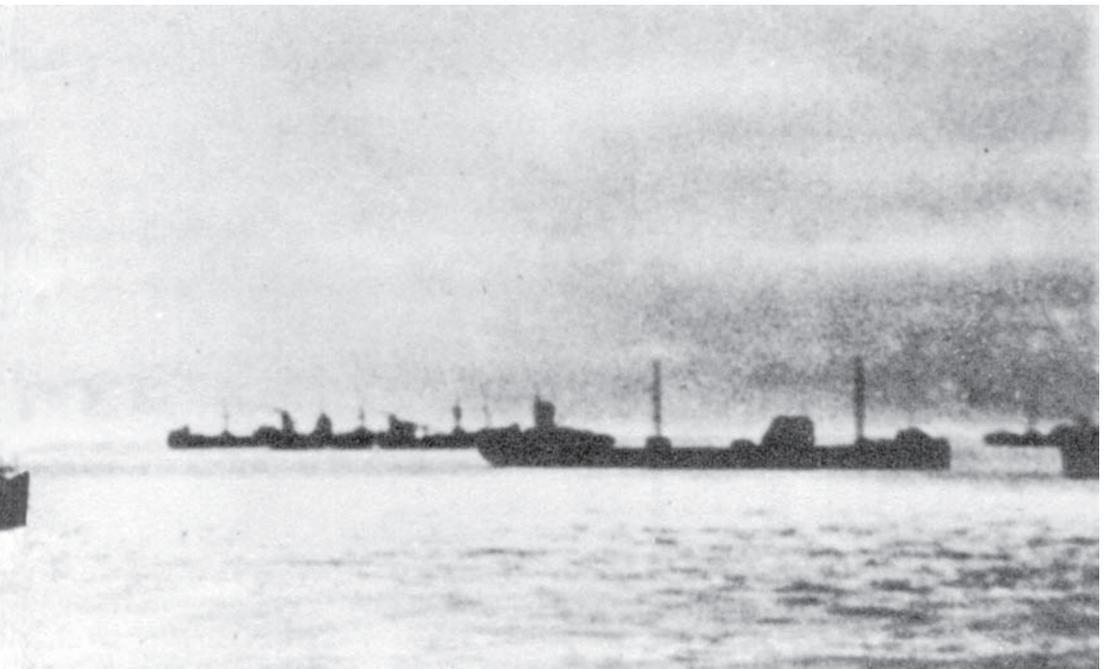


Late on 4 July the Heinkels of KG.26 attacked PQ.17. Lieutenant Kaumeyr's aircraft (*above*) was shot into the sea by the USS *Wainwright* (*see page 150*)



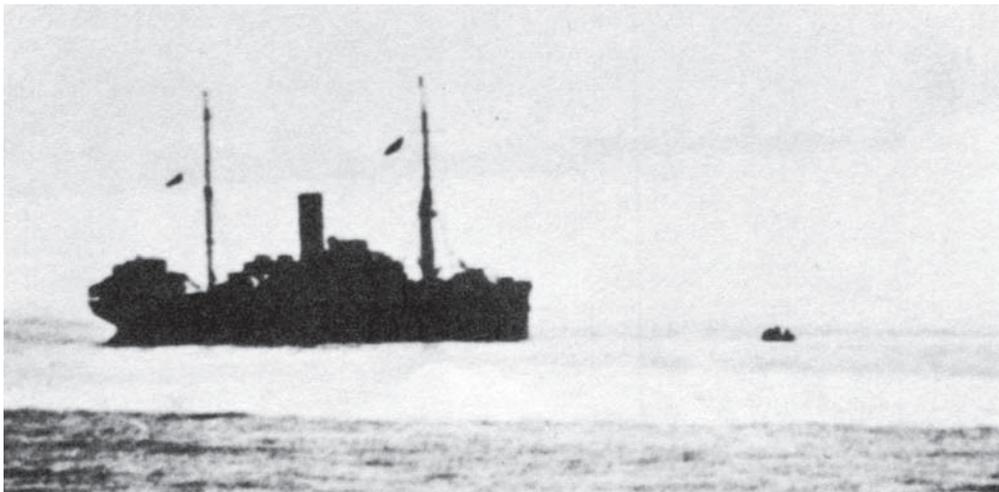


Lieutenant Hennemann led a second low-level attack from astern (*below, left*). Before his aircraft was brought down, one of his torpedoes struck the British freighter *Navarino* (*above*)





Another torpedo hit the Russian tanker *Azerbaijan*. When the rescue ship *Zamalek* moved in (*below*), eight Russian seamen deserted the tanker in a lifeboat





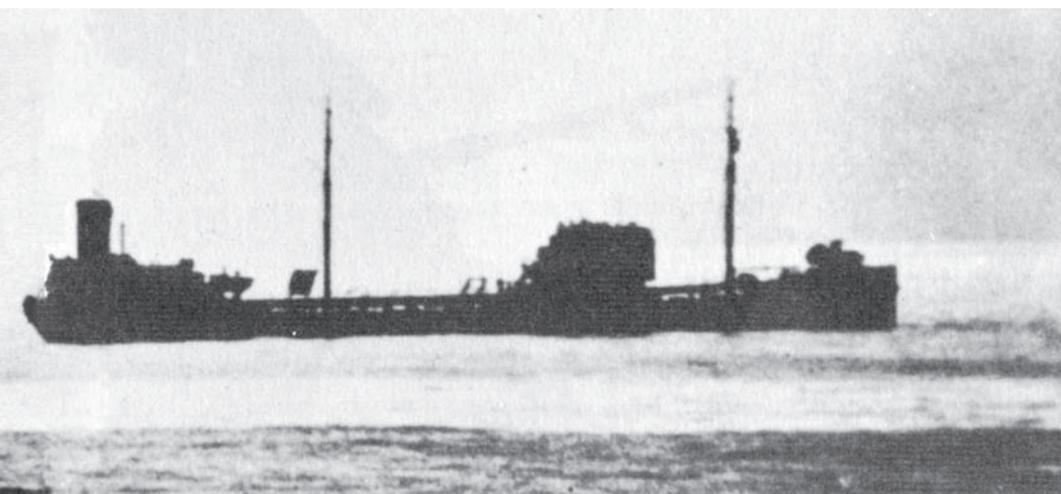
*HMS Keppel*



Paymaster-Commander N. E.  
Denning, Admiralty Intelligence  
Officer



Lieutenant Gradwell





15 June 1942: U-334 puts to sea from Trondheim for THE KNIGHT'S MOVE; her crew, traditionally allowed to dress down, wave straw hats

Ju 88 bomber crews being briefed before a sortie against PQ.17 on 5 July 1942





Two lone merchant ships of PQ.17 spotted by Ju 88s  
after the convoy had been scattered.

The one below, scudding along close to the ice pack,  
is possibly the American freighter *Fairfield City*







(above and left) The sinking of Bolton Castle and two boatloads of her survivors (see page 219)



Roy Hansen, in USA, naturalisierter Norweger, Kapitän der „Carlton“. Um 21 Uhr in der Frühe traf uns völlig überraschend der Torpedo. Die Rettungsboote waren sofort in Bewegung, und so bestiegen wir die Flöße. Nach wenigen Stunden tauchten im Dunst einer Regenbö völlig überraschend deutsche Flugzeuge auf. Nach und nach nahmen sie meine Besatzung an Bord und kamen in Zwischenräumen von mehreren Stunden fünfmal wieder. Sagen Sie Ihrem Kommandanten, daß ich hoffe, deutsche Seeleute in den Staaten ähnlich behandelt zu sehen“



Walter Stankiewicz, 1916 Hartford Avenue, Baltimore, Maryland, Seemann: „Während des Fluges gehen uns die Deutschen Pallaver und Trainingschorn zum Umziehen. Dann fütterten sie uns mit Cakes, wir waren ja halb erfroren. Es war mein erster Flug und schrecklich interessant. Ich muß in der Nase des Bombers, rundherum war Glas. Ich hatte darauf Lust, vor lauter Begeisterung mit dem Maschinengewehr nur mir in der ganzen Gegend herumzuschießen“



Walter Feldheim, 1910 N Broadway, Baltimore, Maryland, 2. Ingenieur: „Ich war gerade mit meinem Frühstück zu Ende. Die Explosion war furchtbar. Erst brannte es, dann gingen die Kessel hoch. Aus den unteren Tanks spritzten dicke Ölströme und überschwebten alles. Meine Kammer im Maschinenraum war völlig zerstört und ein wasser Trümmerhaufen. Nur mitten auf dem Tisch stand völlig unbeschädigt ein Bild von meiner Frau. Ich nahm es an mich und rannte zu den Booten“



Otto Paulsen, 25 Garden Street, Roslyn-Hts New York, Geschützführer: „Ich gehörte zur USA-Navy und bin Soldat, braune genug Gunner. Mein Geschütz stand vorne auf dem Schiff. Als die Sache passierte, lauserte ich gerade auf deutsche Flieger. Yes, Sir, das war mein Job. Zu spät sah ich in ungefähr 150 Yards Entfernung das Periscope des U-Bootes. Der Torpedo muß uns schen im Bauch. Als wir in den Booten waren, tauchte das U-Boot ganz kurz auf, umkreiste uns und verschwand wieder“



Theodore Kristyus Getz, Edinburg North-Dakota, Maschinengewehrschütze: „Ich bin ebenfalls“



Boland M. Donough, 1752 Eastend, Cleveland, Ohio, Seemann: „Zuerst kam ein kleines deutsches U-Boot. Mitten im Fluge schoben ich drauf“

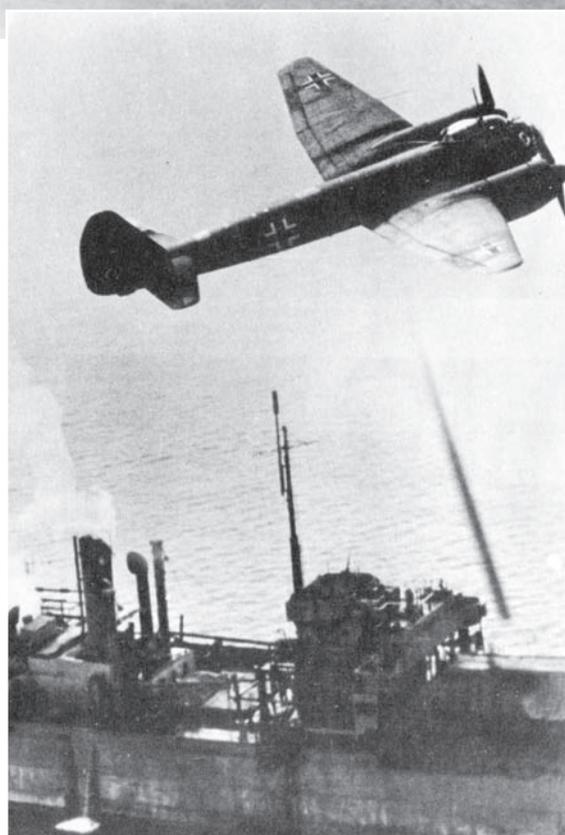


Vernon Frank, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, 3. Offizier: „Das war meine erste und letzte Reise vor See. Ich bin ein“



Fred Frommelt, Baltimore, Maryland, Metallarbeiter: „Der erste Ingenieur hatte gerade Spiegelfest bei mir bestellt. Als ich sie in die Masse“

Carlton's happy survivors, as seen by readers of *Signal*.  
 Captain Roy Hansen: "Tell your commanders, I hope German sailors are treated as well in the States as we are here."  
 "Big" McDonough: "The pants I am wearing were given me by a German airman"

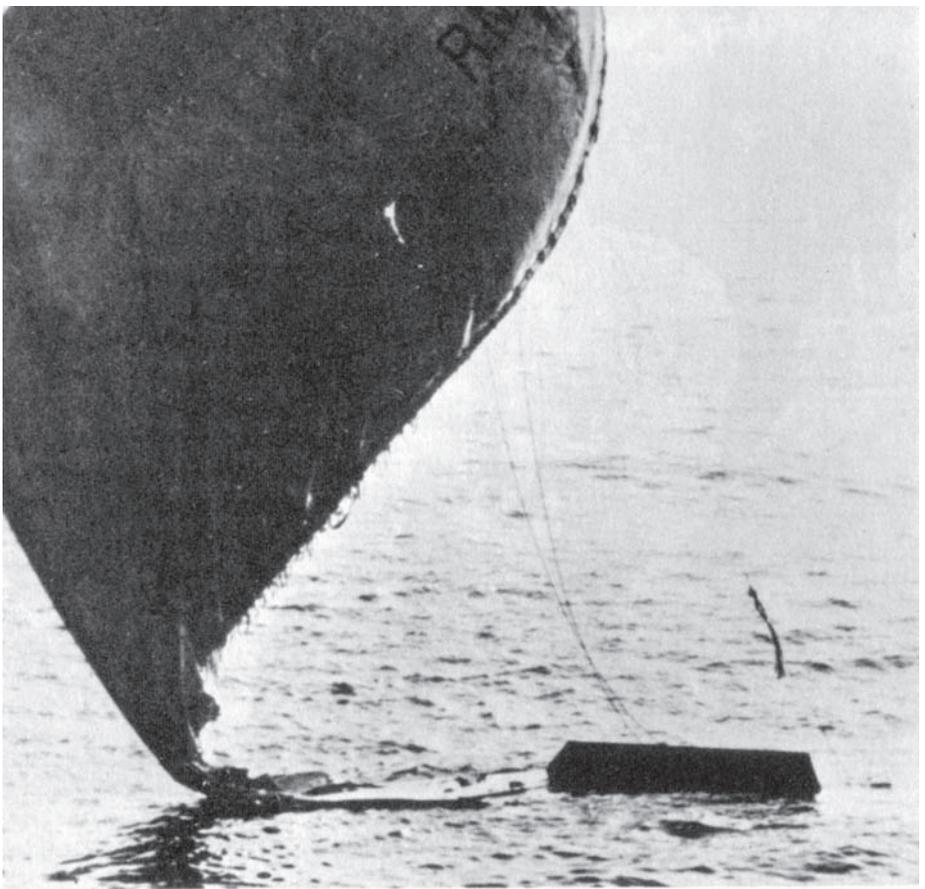


Junkers 88s dive bomb  
the stopped and  
abandoned *Paulus Potter*,



Captain O. C. Morris and *(above)* the crew  
of his rescue ship *Zamalek*





Two photographs taken from Commander Siemon's *U-334* show *Earlston's* barrage balloon marking the spot where the freighter sank, and survivors approaching the U-boat (*see page 228*)



hold, and the ship's bows settled perceptibly deeper in the water. As the noise subsided, the hydrophone gear picked up what was unmistakably the sound of their stern tube's torpedo, still running away into the distance. Somebody else had torpedoed *Honomu*. A few minutes later there was a second explosion, enveloping the whole ship in a cloud of smoke, and the vessel began to sink faster.

The second torpedo had hit *Honomu*'s No. 4 hold, and she began to break up. Thirty-seven of her crew managed to escape in the lifeboats, including Captain Frederick A. Strand, but nineteen men went down with the ship.<sup>31</sup>

No sooner had the luckless *Honomu*, her fire-room demolished and her engines stopped, begun her last hundred-fathom plunge to the bottom, than three slate-grey German submarines surfaced. Two of them – *U-334* and *U-456* – were very close to the drifting patch of oil and wreckage left by their victim; a third submarine – probably *U-88* – surfaced a quarter of a mile away.

It was Lieutenant-Commander Max-Martin Teichert's *U-456* which had fired the striking torpedoes.<sup>32</sup> Teichert took his submarine alongside the lifeboats and ordered the Master, Captain Strand, to come aboard; he was taken prisoner. The seamen were asked whether they had sufficient water, and they were handed tinned meat and bread by the submarine officers. They were told they would be picked up by destroyers a few days later.

After interrogating Strand briefly about *Honomu*, Teichert reported to Admiral Schmudt: "3:30 P.M. at pinpoint AC.2937. Freighter *Honomu*, 6,977 tons. Tank parts. Fast escort vessels lost in fog."<sup>33</sup> The submarines then headed off to the east; they were still visible sitting on the surface an hour and a half after the attack.

Commander Siemon broadcast over *U-334*'s public address system to his crew that they would not be submerging any more. Their next attack would be from the surface.

---

*HONOMU*'S RADIO OPERATOR had managed to send out three "submarine distress" signals before his ship went down, and he had added the ship's position to the last.<sup>26</sup> Far to the north, the signals were brought to the bridge of the anti-aircraft ship *Pozarica*, which was following the ice-edge to the east.<sup>34</sup> Captain Lawford was awakened. He studied the signals and decided it was impossible for them to go south to pick up the survivors: were the three hundred men of his command to be jeopardised for thirty or forty shipwrecked seamen whom they might never find because of fog?

By now the distress signals were coming "thick and quick." The corvette *Lotus* proposed that their little group of vessels should form a fighting unit again, and sail south to combat the enemy submarines and aircraft massacring the remaining merchant ships. Captain Lawford rejected the idea: "I have been giving full consideration to this matter for half an hour and have come to the conclusion that the order to scatter was to avoid vessels falling into traps, and unless you feel strongly to the contrary in the matter I think we ought to stick to our original arrangements."

The position of the solitary merchant ships was anything but enviable, and many of their Masters were torn between their responsibility for their crews and their duty to their Nation. Before each ship had sailed from America, its Master had been handed a letter from the Secretary of the Navy formally directing him that there was to be no surrender:

It is the policy of the United States Government that no U.S. ship be permitted to fall into the hands of the enemy.

2. The ship shall be defended by her armament, by manoeuvre, and by every available means as long as possible. When, in the judgement of the Master, capture is inevitable, he shall scuttle the ship. Provision should be made to open sea valves, and to flood holds and compartments adjacent to

---

machinery spaces, start numerous fires and employ any additional measures to insure certain scuttling of the vessel.

3. In case the Master is relieved of command of his ship, he shall transfer this letter to his successor and obtain a receipt for it.<sup>35</sup>

The cat-and-mouse game now being played by the German U-boats was more than many freighters' Masters could endure, however, and the seamen often needed little encouragement to take to their lifeboats even before their vessels were attacked. The report of the Armed Guard officer aboard the American Liberty ship *Samuel Chase* tells in its own deadpan way of the strain felt by these seamen, abandoned to their fate in PQ.17:

On 5 July at 7 A.M. a black dot was seen dead astern which by 8.45 A.M. was identified as a German submarine. She was steaming on the surface and crossed to our starboard quarter and began to overhaul us on the starboard side. Then she disappeared from sight at 10 A.M. A ship – which we presumed to be the *Daniel Morgan* – was hull down on the horizon behind the submarine. She was seen to turn and head North.

At 10:30 A.M., dead reckoning position 75°44' North, 37°00' East, the Captain ordered engines Full Astern, and told all hands to get into the life-boats. All boats were away from the ship by 10.45 A.M. and they gathered and laid 600 yards from her.

Surprisingly, the German submarine made no attempt to attack this tempting target of a brand-new 7,000-ton Liberty ship drifting helpless and abandoned in the Arctic. After two hours' wait in the lifeboats, the *Samuel Chase's* Master gathered that there would be no takers; he would have to finish the voyage in

his freighter after all. He and his Chief Officer took an engineer party aboard to raise steam, and at 2 P.M. the lifeboats were taken aboard again. The *Samuel Chase* was one of the few ships to survive the disaster.

On another part of the Barents Sea a German reconnaissance plane was circling an American merchant ship, most probably fixing its position with exactitude. The *Alcoa Ranger's* Master, Lieutenant-Commander Hjalmar Christophsen, USNR, was one of the many hastily commissioned merchant mariners whose nerves had not yet been tempered by the rigours of war: although the Focke-Wulf showed no signs of attacking, Christophsen "gave the order to display international flags meaning Unconditional Surrender." He ordered the Stars and Stripes to be hauled down, and gave his crew the order to take to the lifeboats.<sup>36</sup>

He had lost interest in shifting his cargo – 7,000 tons of steel armourplate, flour, and a deck cargo of nineteen tanks – any farther on its voyage from Philadelphia. It must be said that with only four light machine-guns the *Alcoa Ranger* was the worst-defended ship in PQ.17 and would have been in no position to ward off an air attack. In any event, the German plane made off in great embarrassment. The ship's Second Officer took command and asked for volunteers to sail her on, while the Master was confined below. At this the Master apparently changed his mind, for he ordered the American Ensign to be hoisted again and the guns manned, and later he resumed command.

Toward three o'clock a British merchant ship confronted with a similar kind of situation reacted very differently. About three miles away from *Earlston*, her First Officer, Mr. Hawtrey Benson, sighted what he took to be a "growler" – a small grey iceberg almost completely submerged.<sup>37</sup> What was remarkable was that the "iceberg" seemed to be steadily and almost imperceptibly overtaking them. The U-boat's conning-tower had been painted white on top, and as it drew nearer *Earlston's* Master, Captain

---

Hilmar Stenwick, could confirm Benson's suspicions. Visibility was very good, without a trace of fog in which they might hide their naked merchantman. He gave his helmsman a new course to steer, and a signal was transmitted: "SS *Earlston* in action with U-boat," giving their position.

"In action" because the naval gun crew manning the low-angle 4-inch gun on *Earlston's* poopdeck had already opened fire on the submarine. The submarine was by now some 8,000 yards away, but closing on them at superior speed now that its commander realised he had been sighted.

On the surface, the U-boat had greater speed than the merchant ship. Captain Stenwick ordered more speed, nevertheless, and all off-duty firemen were ordered down into the stockhold to double-bank the firemen already on watch.<sup>38</sup> The ship began to vibrate strongly under the straining engines as they gradually picked up speed. A new signal was transmitted: "sos, sos, sos. SS *Earlston* taking action against submarine, steering 207°, submarine following. 3.09 P.M."<sup>39</sup>

Their gun had fired several rounds at the U-boat, and the rounds were bursting ever closer to the conning-tower; the submarine began to submerge, then vanished completely, still out of torpedo range. As long as it remained submerged, it had no hope of overtaking the speeding vessel. Of all the merchantmen in the convoy, this British vessel was the only one to keep its nerve in the face of a submarine attack and use its gun for the purpose for which it had been provided.

A SCORE or more lifeboats and rafts were now riding in the gentle swell in the wake of the Ice Devil submarines. At 5 P.M. seven Heinkel torpedo-bombers from I./906 Coastal Command Squadron based at Billefiord seaplane base just south of North Cape passed low over the lifeboats, and the seamen heard sounds of explosions over the horizon soon after.

The German seaplanes returned, their torpedo-racks empty. The Germans' close interest alarmed the *Carlton's* survivors, still clinging to their lifeboat and life-rafts after the loss of their ship that morning. The planes passed over them at a height of fifty feet, whipping up a cloud of spray as they did so. In James Akins's graphic vernacular, all thought it was "curtains." While six of the planes vanished over the horizon, the seventh banked and returned. Akins and another seaman stripped down to their underwear, ready to dive under their raft if the plane opened fire. It flew even lower over them – apparently to see if they were armed – then banked again and touched down on the sea, taxiing slowly round the cluster of rafts and the lifeboat only a few yards away.

With his engines still running, the pilot held up three fingers: three of the Americans were to swim across to the plane. The seamen, Stankiewicz, "Big" McDonough and Higgins, jumped off one raft into the freezing water and struck out toward the floatplane. They missed the taxiing plane the first time around, but the second time Higgins and Stankiewicz climbed aboard. McDonough – a giant of a man weighing twenty-two stone or more – seemed to be in trouble with his trousers, which had fallen down and were preventing him from swimming.

The plane circled again, this time with a German airman perched on one of its floats, wielding a boathook. He made several grabs at McDonough, who was by this time more under water than above; the American's comrades rocked with merciless laughter at his plight.<sup>40</sup> After several attempts, the Germans gave up and let him go. Promising to return, the plane skidded into the air. By the time the other seamen had salvaged McDonough from the waves, he was almost dead with the cold. They stripped him down and wrapped him in a blanket.

Sure enough, a large Dornier 24 hospital plane landed near them two hours later, having searched in vain for a "ditched"

---

Heinkel reported by a German reconnaissance plane. The Germans asked for any U.S. Navy survivors among them; nine of *Carlton's* Armed Guard personnel and one seaman were transferred to the plane. Three hours later, another plane landed and took on ten more men. The unfortunate ones left behind rowed to keep warm, being careful not to move too far from their earlier position, "in order," as one put it, "not to miss the next plane to Norway."<sup>41</sup>

After some time another German plane landed and took the Chief Engineer Mooney and Chico the messboy. That left seventeen. The seamen asked the pilot whether any more planes were coming out, but he regretted that there were not: his was the last. The remaining seamen transferred to the lifeboat, hauled the rafts alongside and transferred everything into it. Then they rigged up a small sail and set off for the Soviet Union, leaving their rafts behind.

UNHAPPY CREW of the SS *Carlton*! Everywhere misfortune took them, misfortune befell them. The German planes took their prisoners to Kirkenes, the naval base just east of North Cape from which the Ice Devil submarines had sallied forth.<sup>42</sup>

The seamen were placed into a prison camp along with hundreds of Russian prisoners and told they would be shot if they attempted to communicate with the Russians. Chief Engineer Mooney was closely interrogated by the Germans, who denied any responsibility for sinking his ship. One of the naval officers challenged him to explain why the alleged German U-boat had not taken Captain Hansen and him as Chief Engineer prisoner, for those were the orders of the German Navy. By clever innuendo he managed to persuade Mooney and several of the others that it was in fact a British submarine that had done the dirty work, seeing that the *Carlton's* scatter course was apparently taking it toward Norway. Mooney afterward admitted, "It was a

well-known fact that our captain, Reginald Hansen, a Norwegian by birth, was a pro-German; and possibly he was heading for the Norwegian coast.”

The *Carlton*'s survivors gave lengthy interviews to the German press, and their smiling – evidently relieved – photographs appeared in a big feature on the convoy disaster published by the German soldiers' fortnightly magazine *Signal*.<sup>43</sup> Nor was that all, for the germ of a propaganda idea had already been sown in the enemy's mind – an idea that was to cause the *Carlton*'s crew immense difficulties later on.

It is clear from German naval records that the *Carlton*'s seamen warned the German High Command in good time that the whole convoy had been re-routed to Archangel because of “nonserviceability of unloading facilities at Murmansk.”\*

The German newspapers were also able to publish a detailed list of the ship's entire cargo: “800 tons of flour; 400 tons of pork; 500 tons of tin; 500 tons of steel plate; 200 tons of shells; 50 tons of bullets; thousands of machine-guns and pistols and no fewer than 37 tanks including six 28-ton tanks of the General Grant

\* Fifth Air Force War Diary. Cf. German Naval Staff War Diary, 6 July: “Statements by the Captain taken prisoner from the steamship *Carlton*, sunk by U-boat on 5 July, confirm PQ.17's strength as 36 to 38 ships. It left Reykjavik on 28 June. . . . After heavy air attacks on the evening of 4 July, the convoy was scattered. Convoy Commodore issued the order for ships to scatter and make independently for port of destination. Heavy cruisers had not been seen since 4 July. The Captain feared that the German units *Tirpitz*, *Gneisenau* and *Prinz Eugen* had put to sea, and the cruisers were operating against them. The Captain knew nothing of whether the heavy British units were at sea. Apart from the aircraft carried by the cruisers, the convoy had no air cover. Prisoners witnessed the sinking by air, torpedo and bombing raids of two American, one British and one Russian ship on 4 and 5 July. *Carlton*'s cargo consisted of six 28-ton tanks, ten 13-ton tanks and fourteen 20-ton crates, as well as 200 tons of explosives for powder manufacture and 200 tons of ammunition, and was *inter alia* taken on in Philadelphia, from which she sailed on 13 March. Further details in Fifth Air Force's despatch in *The Knight's Move* files.”

---

type, fourteen 13-ton Canadian tanks and seventeen 20-tonners.”<sup>44</sup> Three days after the sinking, the German radio announced that “survivors from some of these ships have given the most valuable information about the nature of their cargoes. It is now possible to form a picture of exactly what the Soviet Union needs and is short of.”<sup>45</sup> And a broadcast to Latin America announced, “Survivors of the *Carlton* have supplied valuable information regarding the organisation and escort of the Anglo-American convoy”;<sup>46</sup> this was repeated over Radio Luxembourg and numerous other German home service stations.

To cap it all, a German propaganda station, transmitting as “Station Debunk” by short-wave to America – and camouflaged as an American anti-Roosevelt station – included the following item in its news bulletin:<sup>47</sup>

*Stockholm* – Our listening posts learn from Sweden that two of our ships loaded with the newest U.S. tanks and heavy trucks arrived at Trondheim several days ago.\* These 8,000-ton vessels were part of the big convoy recently sunk by German planes and U-boats on the way to Archangel. Since they were only slightly damaged, one wonders why the American crews abandoned them. They were brought in by small German submarine crews, with the Stars and Stripes waving beneath the swastika. Men and officers of a German tank battalion have arrived to take over the 62 American heavy tanks and 132 trucks now being unloaded from the two American ships. One German officer said the new U.S. tanks

\* The reference to two ships is puzzling, as only *Carlton* is named in other bulletins. By the time this bulletin was broadcast, however, the results of the interrogation of *Honomu*’s Captain Frederick A. Strand would also be on hand; Strand was certainly referred to later by German radio (see footnote, p. 360).

are an improvement on the old, but not as good as the Russian or German.

In an extraordinarily brief time, the word had spread throughout the sea-going world that an American merchant ship called *Carlton* had surrendered to the Germans and run into a Norwegian port.

In fact, after the survivors had been interrogated, they were embarked under constant guard on the German troop transport *Hans Leonhardt*. After several days' passage, this transport sailed into Oslo in convoy with two other ships. The amazed Americans could only goggle at the strength of the escort the Germans provided for the three vessels – “and of all things we had air support too.” At Oslo they were transferred to a second troop transport, *Wuri*, making its penultimate voyage between that port and Aalborg in Denmark. There they entrained for the main naval prison camp at Wilhelmshaven.

At Marlag-Milag Nord, *Carlton*'s crew found themselves ostracised by all the other seamen. The word had reached the camp that they had brought *Carlton* into Norway intact and surrendered her to the Germans. The Americans fumed but kept silent. “With 5,000 British prisoners in our camp,” said Mooney, “it would be murder to mention that a British submarine was the only vessel in sight when we were torpedoed.”\*

\* The rumour that *Carlton* had surrendered continued to gain currency as shipwrecked crews came in from as far afield as Murmansk and New York. Morison (p. 186) confirms, “The tank-laden *Carlton*, steaming alone, was sunk by U-boat on 5 July. Most of her crew were rescued by submarine [*sic*] and the skipper gave the Germans valuable information. Prisoners from this ship, released after VE-day [*sic*] and returned to the United States, were responsible for some wild stories about the convoy.” Morison cites an article in the *New York Times*, 23 February 1945, as an example, based on interviews after their return aboard the Swedish liner *Gripsholm*. Subsequently *Carlton*'s crew were closely questioned by the FBI.

WHERE WAS the German battle fleet at this time? At three o'clock on the afternoon of 5 July, the German fleet – *Tirpitz*, *Admiral Hipper*, *Admiral Scheer* and seven destroyers – had emerged from the Leads at Rølvösøy and put out into the open sea. In Berlin, its prospects were viewed exceedingly optimistically: the Allied cruiser covering force and battle fleet had both been sighted heading westward, and the “warships” accompanying the scattering convoy’s freighters could scarcely be more than a few isolated cruisers and destroyers.

The eleven units in the German fleet should still be able to account well for themselves, even though the convoy was now so scattered, if they made effective use of the sightings being obtained by the aircraft and submarines.

The fleet had been under way only five hours when the Russian submarine *K-21* (Commander Lunin) patrolling off North Cape sighted the heavy warships. An immediate warning was broadcast:

EMERGENCY. All ships. Two battleships and eight destroyers in position 071°24' North, 023°40' East. (1700/B5).<sup>48</sup>

Aware that they had been sighted, but unaware that they had been “torpedoed,” as the Russian submarine commander at once claimed, *Tirpitz* continued with her escorts on her march to the north-east. Just over an hour later, a British aircraft patrolling the North Cape area also sighted the German battle fleet. A further signal was broadcast:

EMERGENCY. All ships. Eleven unknown vessels in position 071°31' North, 027°10' East. Course 065°, ten knots (1816/B5).

Finally, just before half-past eight that evening, the whole formation was again sighted by the Allies – *still heading north-eastward toward the scattering convoy* – this time by HM submarine *Unshaken* (Lieutenant Westmacott).

At 9.49 P.M. the news of the first of these sightings was received by Admiral Tovey's fleet,<sup>49</sup> together with news that a Russian submarine claimed to have scored two torpedo hits on *Tirpitz*.<sup>\*</sup> The German attempt to slink out undetected into the Barents Sea could hardly have met with less success had they broadcast their intentions *en clair* to the Allies in advance.

In Berlin there was consternation: their radio monitoring service had picked up both of the first two enemy signals.<sup>50</sup> The first reaction was that this very early sighting might enable the enemy's battle fleet to move up from the west in time to cut off the German fleet's withdrawal after the raid on the convoy.

Naval Group North in Kiel still did not consider the risk sufficient to warrant breaking off the operation altogether, although Carls was annoyed that the fleet had left the Leads at Rølvösøy rather than at Nordkyn – with precisely the consequences he had wanted to avoid.<sup>51</sup> Even though the German fleet's sortie and direction of approach had been prematurely divulged, Carls pointed out that the enemy's fleet was a long way off and would not be risked in Norwegian waters; he imparted this opinion to the Naval Staff by telephone and teleprinter. But at the same time the Group informed Berlin that the enemy had begun strongly jamming German wireless traffic at 7.45 P.M., soon after the sightings had been made. As a result, wireless contact with Norway had been blotted out. This was very sinister: it was the first time the enemy had adopted this procedure, and the jamming

\* Cf. Caradus Diary (*La Malouine*). "Signal received that the *Tirpitz* had been hit by two torpedoes from a Russian submarine. Loud cheers when the mess decks were informed by bosun's pipe. Further signal – three destroyers have detached themselves and making due East and later South-East."

---

was so effective that even after the Germans had switched to another circuit they could make themselves understood only with great difficulty. *Tirpitz's* radio room picked up the first signal, but claimed they were unable to forward it to Kiel because of the jamming on their frequency.<sup>52</sup> The German Naval Staff considered that the sudden emergence of this jamming was proof that the British Admiralty had been “apprised” of the sailing of the German battle fleet.

A telephone conference was held at once between Raeder's staff in Berlin and Naval Group North in Kiel. The latter was finally persuaded that the enemy could bring up his heavy units and aircraft-carrier after all, cutting off the Germans' line of retreat. This conclusion sprang from the seemingly inevitable assumption that the Allies would be prepared to risk anything to engage a target as tempting as that presented by *Tirpitz*, *Admiral Hipper* and *Admiral Scheer*. Naval Group North was presented with three alternative courses of action: either to proceed with the operation and accept the risks; or to proceed with an operation so brief as to prevent the enemy from cutting off its retreat in time; or to call off the operation altogether and leave the convoy's destruction to the U-boats and aircraft.

As we now know, the first course of action would have been devoid of danger for the Germans: the Home Fleet had rejected an Admiralty suggestion that it should engage *Tirpitz* at this time. But General-Admiral Carls in Kiel recognised that if the Führer's conditions were to be adhered to, the operation must be called off, as a confrontation with carrier aircraft could not be avoided with complete certainty. Even so, both Naval Group North in Kiel and the Naval Staff's Operations Division thought that if the Führer's condition were to be lifted, and Carls were to be given absolute freedom of action, the risks involved in continuing the operation were entirely commensurate with the rewards that offered themselves. The final decision was left to Raeder.

“Fully conscious” of his responsibility to the Führer when it was a matter of “risking our few valuable ships,” Raeder ordered *The Knight’s Move* to be broken off.

The risks were too great to be justified by what few successes the fleet might still enjoy against a convoy already decimated by German aircraft and U-boats. At 9.15 P.M., Naval Group North, using the top-secret enciphering prefix KR-KR, wirelessly to Schniewind the one word “Break” (*Abbrechen*). Carls reported to Raeder soon after that Schniewind had been ordered to turn back, and operational command of the Arctic U-boats reverted to Admiral Schmudt. The German battle fleet turned back in silence at 9.50 P.M. and, with Schmudt making frantic preparations to receive the premature returners, re-entered the Leads at 3.30 A.M. the following day.

THE GERMAN Naval Staff commented: “A second attempt to bring our heavy ships into action against the traffic to Murmansk and Archangel has proven unsuccessful. Every sortie attempted by our heavy surface units is burdened by the Führer’s desire to avoid at all costs the risk of losses or defeats.” It was obvious that such operations could only be launched when there was no real risk, especially from aircraft-carriers. These conditions had been satisfied during *The Knight’s Move* to an extent scarcely likely to be repeated in future PQ convoy operations. Regrettable though the effect of the recall had been on the morale of the German sailors, even General-Admiral Carls was forced to admit that the decision had been correct: “If the operation had been partially carried out, from 8 P.M. 5 July to 1 A.M. on the 6th, it would probably have led to an air attack [on our fleet] if our force had failed to find quickly the three ships which are believed to have reached Murmansk.”<sup>53</sup>

The order to break off the operation was certainly a bitter disappointment to Admiral Schniewind. He believed the main

---

---

reason for the failure to seize the opportunity to attack earlier was the far-flung character of the German naval organisation; he urged that the tactical headquarters (Group North) be transferred to a site closer to the actual zone of operation in the Arctic than Kiel.<sup>54</sup>

Admiral Schmundt was at one with him on this, advocating that either the tactical command be given to him in Narvik, or that Group North and its operations staff be transferred to the Arctic Circle itself.<sup>55</sup> Naval Group North rejected the suggestions, and drew attention instead to the importance of maintaining close liaison with the Naval Staff headquarters and the political authorities in Berlin and at the Führer's headquarters.<sup>56</sup>

Schniewind argued that only by having the two tactical headquarters – of Navy and Air Force – located close together in the northern theatre could momentary opportunities be seized and exploited.

Above all, there was the possibility that “adequate heed” would then be paid to his own requirements of the Air Force, for the co-operation between the two Services had been demonstrably lax during *The Knight's Move*. While he recognised that, as the convoy operation progressed, the co-operation between the aircraft and the U-boats improved, and that during the German battle fleet's brief sortie it had had adequate air cover, Schniewind was disappointed that the Air Force had failed to maintain close contact with the enemy's heavy covering forces, although he had expressly asked for this.

\* It is interesting to read the same sentiments in Admiral Tovey's Report (11 July) on the Home Fleet's operation : “The operation provided a striking illustration of the handicap imposed on the proper conduct of sea operations through inadequate air co-operation. On the one hand, the enemy disposed of a numerous and efficient force of long-range reconnaissance aircraft, timing and adjusting his offensive moves by their reports. On the other hand, we were operating without any effective air co-operation, enjoying only such information as originated from Intelligence sources.”

I see the reasons for this as being a certain degree of understandable hesitancy in the Air Force to divide their own limited available forces, and to detach reconnaissance planes to shadow enemy heavy forces, particularly when there is a carrier in the vicinity.

Once again we see the great disadvantages we labour under, lacking as we do our own Fleet Air Arm.\*<sup>57</sup>

Reichsmarschall Göring for his part expressed his inability to understand why the Navy had called off the battle fleet's attack. When the Naval Staff learned of this from an aside by General Bodenschatz, it was suggested that the Führer should be put in the picture as to why the battle fleet had turned back.

Grand-Admiral Raeder rejected the suggestion as "uncalled for."<sup>58</sup>

Admiral Schniewind, who was equally exercised by the difficulty of explaining his fleet's withdrawal to "outsiders," proposed the following dishonest formula: "The heavy enemy force, including an aircraft-carrier, accompanying the convoy was obliged to turn back by the movements of our own heavy battle group, and this facilitated the convoy's attack by submarines and aircraft. The objective of our own heavy ships' sortie was completely achieved."<sup>59</sup> It was doubted whether such an explanation would be convincing to "outsiders," least of all to the U-boat and bomber crews.

Grand-Admiral Raeder was quite clear in his own mind about the reasons why he had stopped the attack. The war was going so favourably for Germany on every front that he had wanted at all costs to avoid the kind of reverse that the loss or damaging of a big German warship would entail. Besides, the main convoy battle had already been fought and won by aircraft and submarines.<sup>60</sup> Subsequently, he tended to divert attention from the part his own staunch adherence to the "fleet-in-being" concept had

---

---

played in the decision to withdraw, and in post-war histories the Führer has received more than his fair share of the blame.<sup>61</sup>

There could be no question of repeating *The Knight's Move* against one of the next PQ convoys – their stratagem had been displayed too clearly to the enemy for that.

Nor, on the other hand, was it likely that the Allies would risk running PQ convoys on the same scale as PQ.17 during the summer months. Group North mooted the suspicion that while the British would not drop the convoys altogether, they would revert to smaller, faster convoys of six or seven ships, hugging the ice as far as Novaya Zemlya perhaps, then creeping down to Cape Kanin using fog as much as possible.

Admiral Schmundt recommended that the focus of future attacks be switched to the westbound QP convoys, as they were only moderately escorted by naval forces, while the strategic objective of sinking enemy shipping tonnage would be attained just the same. Raeder agreed that this was worth consideration.<sup>62</sup>

It certainly seemed unlikely that a comparable disaster could be inflicted on any PQ convoy after PQ.17:

“These successes were made possible only by the Convoy Commodore’s incomprehensible action in scattering the convoy, thereby giving my submarines the chance to come within range of unescorted merchant ships,” said Schmundt.

The Naval Staff in Berlin, wrestling with the same enigma, concluded that the conduct of PQ.17 operations by the Allies had been so disastrous that only the Americans could have been in command. They gravely warned, “Without doubt the British will resume command and control the escort of the next PQ convoys after their bad experience with the Americans in command of PQ.17.”

IMMEDIATELY AFTER the returning battle fleet anchored at Altenfiord the Flag-Admiral Cruisers – Vice-Admiral Kummetz –

---

---

proposed that they repeat the sortie at once, if necessary with only some of the warships.

Recognising that the convoy's remnants were still well to the north, and that even though the German battle fleet had been sighted, the Allied fleet had *still* stayed west of 15° East, Schniewind agreed and signalled Naval Group North's headquarters: "Consider situation particularly favourable for repetition of sortie."<sup>63</sup>

The request was turned down: the whereabouts of the enemy's heavy force had still not been established beyond doubt; 27 of the 38 merchant ships had already been claimed sunk; and the remainder were so widely scattered that there was no worthwhile target for such a sortie. Besides, the German destroyers would encounter fuel difficulties attacking targets so far to the north.

Similar requests by Commodore Bey, the destroyer flotilla commander, to be permitted to operate with seven destroyers against those convoy remnants still afloat, and by the *Hipper's* Captain Meisel to be allowed to take his ship and four fast destroyers out into the eastern Barents Sea, were not even forwarded by Admiral Schniewind, their fleet commander, as Raeder's objections still held good for them.

After refuelling the German battle fleet sailed again at 6 P.M., heading south to Narvik, unaware that on the charts in the British Admiralty's operations rooms they were still flagged as advancing on the helpless merchant ships.

\* Bey commanded the battleship *Scharnhorst* at the time of her heroic last fight in December 1943.

## A Duty to Avoid Destruction

5 July – 6 July

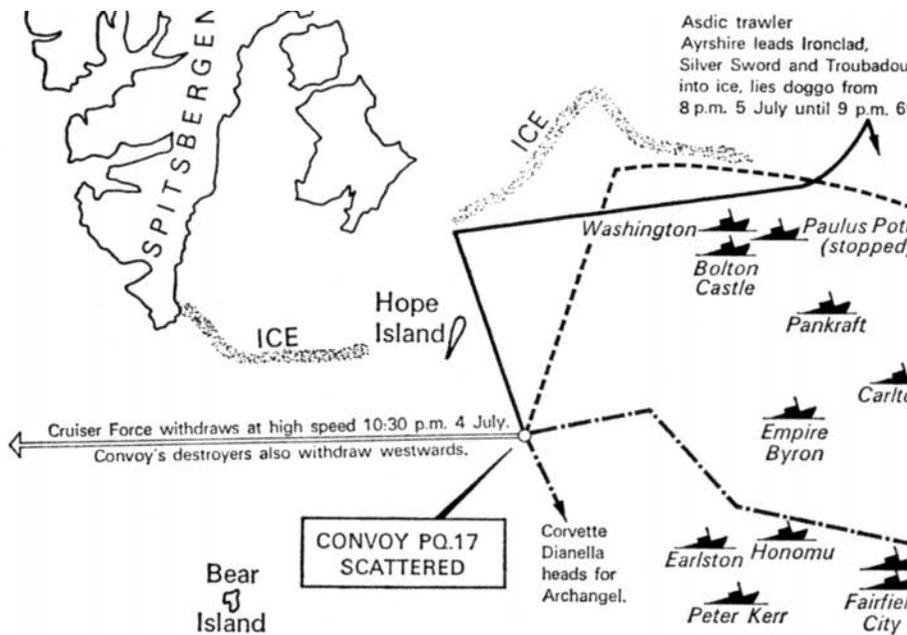
*The ice came so fast upon us that it made our  
haires staire upright upon our heades, it was so  
fearful to behold.*

— GERRIT DE VEER, VOYAGE OF WILLIAM  
BARENTS TO THE ARCTIC REGIONS, 1594

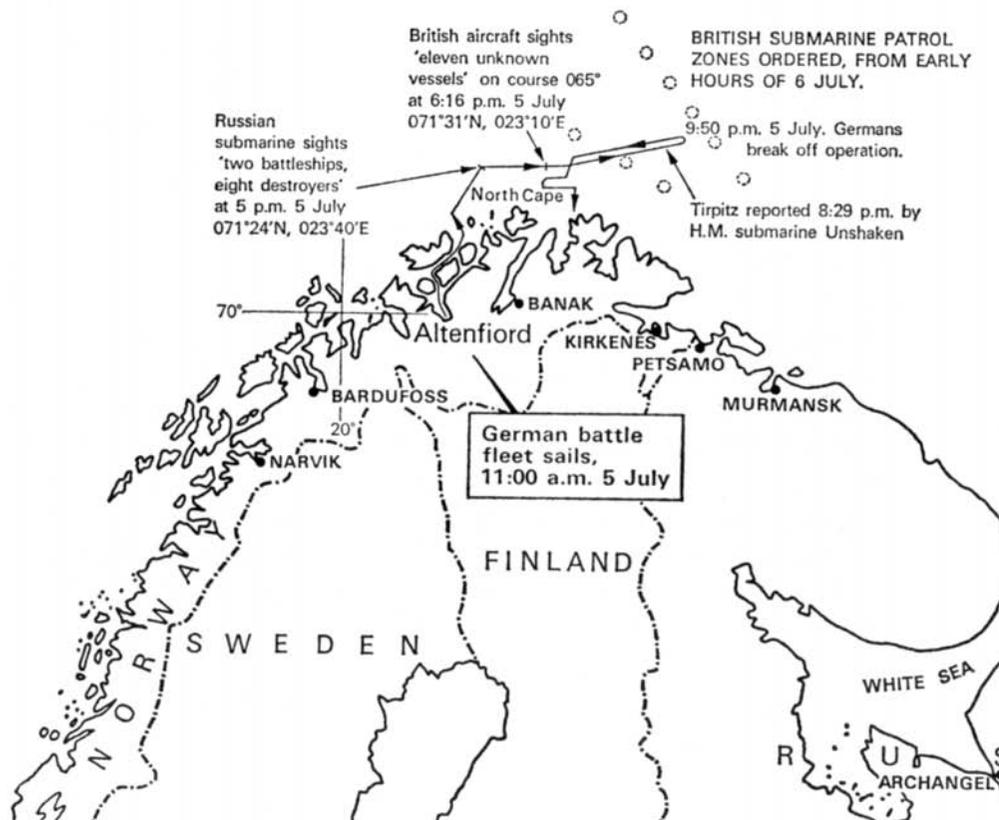
FIVE O’CLOCK on the afternoon of 5 July 1942: of the thirty-five merchantmen which had set out from Iceland three had turned back and eight had already been sunk by German aircraft and submarines. Forty-seven Merchant Navy officers and seamen had already lost their lives, but the disaster still had not reached its climax. Before another half hour had passed six more merchant vessels and the fleet oiler *Aldersdale* would have been attacked by bombers and sunk or abandoned. Already the American *Peter Kerr*, laden with foodstuffs, tanks and bombers, was blazing from end to end and lifeboats were pulling away from her across the oily sea.

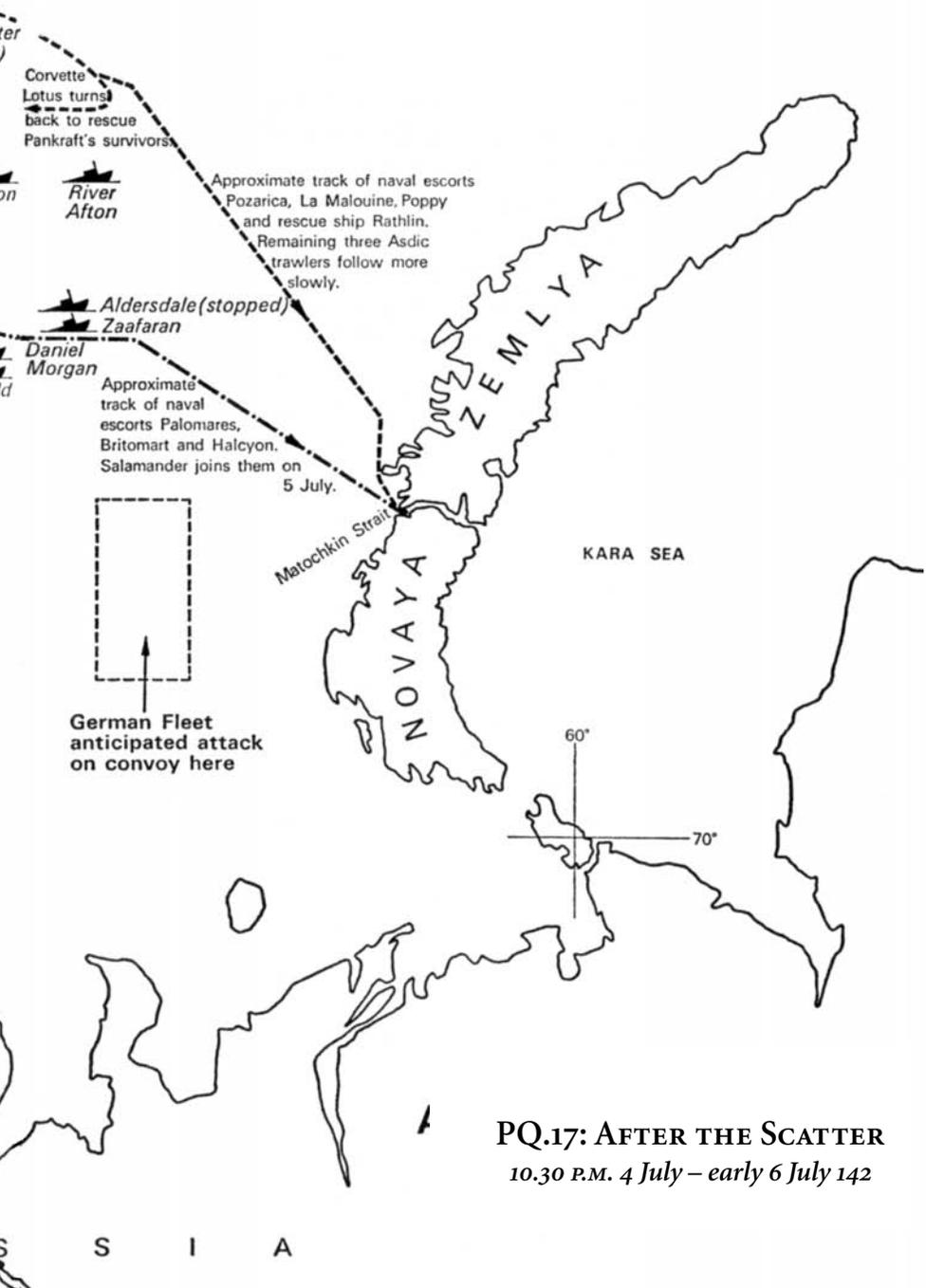
The ship had proven a tougher target than most of them. Two hours earlier she had been attacked by no fewer than seven torpedo-bombers, dropping a total of thirteen torpedoes, and had still survived.\* Her Master, Captain Butler, knew that salvation

\* One of the attacking torpedo-bombers subsequently picked up the *Carlton*’s first survivors.



B A R E N T S S E A





**PQ.17: AFTER THE SCATTER**  
 10.30 P.M. 4 July – early 6 July 142

lay in zigzagging, and as his vessel headed almost due south at over 11 knots, he was constantly changing the vessel's speed and zigzag pattern. After two hours the torpedo attack ended, but then four Junkers 88 dive-bombers came in from the south-east and attacked from over 4,000 feet – far above the range of the ship's guns.

The bombers were from Captain Willi Flechner's unit, V./KG-30. Thirty-six bombs were dropped, three of which scored direct hits, setting fire to No. 3 hold, the deck cargo and the ship's wireless room. The remaining bombs were all near misses, knocking out *Peter Kerr's* steering gear and flooding the forward part of the ship. As the fire got out of control, Butler gave the order to abandon ship. The crew escaped in two lifeboats. The ship continued to blaze for some time, then blew up and sank, leaving only the two lifeboats on the sea. "Thank God I had my good leg on!" said the wooden-legged Chief Engineer.<sup>1</sup>

The airfields in northern Norway were at last clear of fog, and the wheeled Junkers 88s had been able to take off *en masse*. All three squadrons of KG-30 – sixty-nine Junkers 88s – were in the air, scouring a vast expanse of sea for the scattered merchant ships, and picking them off one by one.\*

First reports back to Norway spoke of the ships being scattered across 130 miles from north to south, while some of them were even hugging the ice-barrier; there could be no talk of any kind of organised anti-aircraft defence.<sup>3</sup>

After the convoy had been scattered, few of the merchant ships had obeyed their scatter order literally. Captain J. Holmgren of the American *Hoosier*, for example, had opened his sealed orders and headed for the next rendezvous position he found in them, in the bewildered hope that he would find the whole con-

\* Captain Willi Flechner was awarded the Knight's Cross, as were squadron commanders Captain Erich Stoffregen (killed 14 January 1943) and Captain Konrad Kahl.<sup>2</sup>

---

voy reformed there as if by magic.<sup>4</sup> But magnetic compasses are unreliable instruments in those northern latitudes, and Captain Holmgren eventually abandoned the plan and ran instead at full speed toward the north-west coast of Novaya Zemlya.

In the 5,203-ton *Bolton Castle*, Captain John Pascoe had steered a north-easterly course in order to move out of range of the German bomber squadrons operating from Norway. More from an instinctive reluctance to face the Arctic alone than from any deliberate disobedience to orders, two more ships had formed up on the British vessel – the Dutch *Paulus Potter* and the 5,564-ton American freighter *Washington*, already leaking from previous attacks. The latter’s Master had seen with dismay how “the trawlers and anti-aircraft ships ran away at superior speed” as the slow merchant ships began to scatter, and decided that safety still lay in numbers.<sup>5</sup>

Captain Sissingh, the Dutch ship’s Master, had met Captain Pascoe while their ships were loading in adjacent berths in Glasgow, and a strong friendship was forged between them; the Dutchman had closely surveyed the British freighter and had not failed to be impressed by the *Bolton Castle*’s heavy armament, which included a 4-inch anti-submarine gun, a Bofors, and four Oerlikon and four light machine-guns.

Originally there had been a fourth vessel tailing them – the American freighter *Olopana*. This old-timer could barely make 9 knots, and as nobody had wanted to fall back to her speed, she gradually dropped back over the horizon.

As the three other ships headed north, they found their way barred in the small hours of the morning by the ice-barrier, which stretched as far as the eye could see and glittered in the rays of the midnight sun. Captain Pascoe decided to turn east along the edge of the ice, but after a few hours of steaming the three heavy-laden ships found their passage barred by a new wall of ice. They were forced to head south-eastward, every hour bringing them

---

closer to the German airfields. “We kept getting radio reports of ships attacked. Many submarines and torpedo planes were reported at positions ahead of us,” recorded *Washington*’s Armed Guard officer.<sup>5</sup>

The ship had 350 tons of trinitrotoluene in the port side of hatches 1 and 2, so he advised the Captain to keep very close to the icefloes to protect that side from submarine attack.

At five o’clock, the lookouts sighted a lone Junkers 88 flying high above them at some 13,000 feet. *Bolton Castle*’s gunners prepared to man their Bofors gun, but held their fire when it seemed the aircraft had not noticed the three ships. But then the Junkers went into a dive, swooping down on the *Washington* with its machine-guns rattling. A row of holes was drilled in the ship’s superstructure, and dents appeared in the pill-box only a few inches from the Armed Guard officer’s head. The bombs landed about 15 yards off the ship’s starboard quarter; the ship was shaken but undamaged. *Washington* transmitted an “air attack” signal and gave her position.

Pascoe knew it would not be long before more German aircraft arrived, called up by the first one. He ordered *Bolton Castle*’s four lifeboats to be swung out, but not lowered; if the worst came to the worst, he would have perhaps only a few minutes to supervise getting seventy seamen and gunners safely into the lifeboats. He also summoned his boatswain and carpenter, and confided in them that he expected the ship to be sunk within the next few hours. They were to make an unobtrusive additional check that the lifeboats were properly provisioned with food and water.<sup>6</sup>

Half an hour later, it was obvious that his forethought had been justified: a starboard lookout reported that several more Junkers 88s were approaching. The aircraft were from Captain Hajo Herrmann’s notorious third squadron of *KG-30*, specially brought up from Bardufoss to Banak, the most northerly air-base in Eu-

---

rope. One aircraft swooped on the *Washington*, its bombs lifting her hull partly out of the water; several other aircraft followed at once. The ship's crew counted twenty-one bombs hitting the sea near them. *Washington*'s steering gear was knocked out, the ship began to take water, and Captain Richert gave orders to abandon ship. A wireless signal was transmitted to this effect, giving *Washington*'s position.

Captain Pascoe resigned himself to his fate, and he made no attempt to take evasive action when the bombers next came in. The aircraft were attacking not from one direction but from several, and from different altitudes.

An aircraft dived out of the sun and dropped a stick of bombs right on the ship. The second of the three bombs penetrated No. 2 hold, which contained hundreds of tons of cordite. For a moment *Bolton Castle* forged on, ignoring the direct hits. The ship did not shake, and Pascoe did not even hear the detonation as the bombs exploded in the hold. But as he looked through the bridge windows, the world suddenly went green: a brilliant flash blinded him and he heard a roar like a mighty waterfall lasting some seconds. The cargo of cordite had ignited – not as an explosive with shattering violence, but “like a giant Roman candle.”

From *Washington*'s lifeboats, they saw the mushroom cloud where *Bolton Castle* had stood, barely a quarter of a mile away. But the prayer died on the men's lips, for as the cloud drifted away the British ship was still there. The heat had melted the steel hull, and the hatch-cover had simply vanished. “The bridge windows buckled, twisted and melted away in the heat.” Pascoe went forward and leaned over the gaping hole where the cordite had been stacked. The hold was empty, but he could hear the sound of water rushing in below.

At the same time, the bombers straddled the third of the ships, the 7,168-ton *Paulus Potter*, disabling her steering gear.<sup>7</sup> Her crew escaped safely in four boats, as did the crew of the *Bolton Castle*.

---

---

Within only a few minutes, three ships had been lost, but there had been no casualties.

The eight Junkers 88s descended to only a few feet above the waves and roared in triumphant formation over their three victims, firing incendiary bullets into the abandoned hulks, while German war reporter Benno Wundshammer, crouching in one bomber's cockpit, took photographs of the scene.<sup>8</sup>

As the aircraft disappeared, *Washington* began to burn, and *Bolton Castle* slowly stood up on end and sank; *Paulus Potter* appeared unscathed.

THE WEARY American freighter *Olopana*, some way behind them, was still afloat, seaworthy and manned, thanks to a ruse adopted by her excellent Master, Captain Mervyn Stone. When the first lone Junkers 88 attacked him half an hour before, Stone ordered nearly all his men to abandon ship in the lifeboats, leaving only a skeleton crew aboard: three men carried out the entire manning of the engine-room, the Second Officer manned the hand steering-station aft, and two other men prepared to lower the last rafts should the ship be hit.

“The British gunners unhesitatingly declared they would defend the vessel to the last,” and they also stayed aboard.

As the aircraft made its first pass, Stone ordered smokefloats to be ignited on the ship's deck forward, midships and aft, and within a few moments the whole vessel was enveloped in thick, choking fumes, making the Second Officer's task at the exposed steering-station aft extremely unpleasant. In any event, the German aircraft left the ship alone after this, apparently believing they had hit her.<sup>9</sup>

Now once again the story of this convoy is interrupted by one of those almost unbelievable episodes that serve to elevate it above other naval operations of the Second World War. After the yellow wing-tipped aircraft had returned toward Norway,

the Masters of *Bolton Castle* and *Paulus Potter* conferred on their next best course of action. Pascoe, the Briton, announced that he intended to row his lifeboats toward the Russian coast, some 400 miles to the south-east. His Dutch friend, Captain Sissingh, observed that since according to his chart the nearest land was Novaya Zemlya, it made more sense to take his lifeboats there. Pascoe tried to persuade him that the shorter journey was in fact the more dangerous, as it would take them through regions of extreme cold close to the ice-barrier. The Dutchman was adamant: he wanted to find dry land as soon as possible. Pascoe sadly shook hands with the Dutchman and bade the Dutch crew farewell.

A bit later the *Olopana* came on the scene, anxious to rescue the survivors of the three stricken ships. Captain Stone afterward reported to Naval Control in Archangel: “The *Olopana* headed in the direction of the vessels burning on the horizon, to pick up survivors. The *Washington*’s boats were the first encountered; but the crew were so shaken up that another session of dive-bombing was the last thing they desired.”

The American seamen in the lifeboats were convinced that it was only a matter of time before the unescorted *Olopana* was also sunk. They refused to set foot on another merchant ship.

Only the captain boarded us, and after an examination of the chart agreed that Moller Bay, Novaya Zemlya, should be his objective. He requested a boat compass-check.

Proceeded to [lifeboats of] *Paulus Potter*, Dutch. She had fought off the same group of planes, for an hour and had been badly smashed about by near misses; finally, engines stopped and taking water, she was abandoned. The crew of the *Paulus Potter* were in four lifeboats, one a motor-boat. We chased after them, and when alongside inquired if they had anyone injured, or did they wish to come aboard? To

both queries the answer was negative. They did request cigarettes, bread and lubricating oil. These wants were provided for, and the Dutchmen cast off to join the *Washington's* lifeboats, also headed for Moller Bay.

The *Bolton Castle's* lifeboats were sailing away to the south and showed no desire to contact us, so we proceeded north.

Captain Stone concluded that the British crew were equally unenthusiastic about being rescued by his ship; Captain Pascoe has since confirmed that nothing was farther from his mind at that time than the desire to board another merchant ship in those seas.<sup>6</sup> Thus, to the already grim saga of Convoy PQ.17 was added the story of how one hundred and fifty ship-wrecked seamen elected to drift for weeks across the expanses of the Arctic ocean in open boats rather than once again set foot aboard an unescorted Allied merchantman.

A HUNDRED MILES OR SO to the south, German bomber aircraft were preparing to attack a small group of naval vessels which had been heading eastward for Novaya Zemlya.

The two 1,500-ton rescue ships *Zamalek* and *Zaafaran* – former Cypriot and Syrian coastal cargo and passenger boats – had stayed together after the order to scatter had been passed to the convoy.

Between them they disposed of a not inconsiderable fire-power against attacking aircraft: two 12-pounders, two 40-millimetre Bofors quick-fire guns, eight 20-millimetre Oerlikons and two machine-gun turrets.

By five o'clock on the afternoon of 5 July, the two vessels were still within sight of each other. *Zamalek's* Captain Morris wrote in his log that his ship was "receiving SOS's constantly from ships all around – aircraft and submarine." He was not unlike a Welsh terrier in character: he was short, and brisk in his movements,

his hair was dark and his eyes were small and fierce. He spoke with a pronounced Welsh sing-song intonation, raising his voice to a high squeak when impatient, but gruff and slow when addressing his crew. He had been born and raised in the little towns of Pwllheli and Abercynon, and had never strayed far from the sea.

How different was Captain Charles McGowan, the dour Scots Master of the rival rescue ship *Zaafaran*, also employed by the General Steam Navigation Company. At thirty-nine, McGowan was no older than Morris, but technically he was the senior, having gained his own ship in the company sooner. There was no love lost between the two, and a feud surprising in its intensity had broken out between the two little rescue ships and their crews.

Soon after five o'clock on the afternoon of 5 July, McGowan signalled Morris that he was planning to head for the White Sea alone, as his ship was being held up unnecessarily by the slower *Zamalek*, which was still heading eastward for Novaya Zemlya.

It was true that McGowan's ship was about half a knot faster than Morris's, probably because Morris was carrying a small cargo of anti-submarine bombs. The Welshman grudgingly admitted that his rival had the better Chief Engineer too; but that, as he remarked to his officers, was scarcely McGowan's real reason for sheering off to the south-east now.

It was rather more likely that *Zamalek*, with her older engines, was making too much smoke for safety, and that was why he was nervously edging away.

Captain Morris still believed that safety lay in numbers, and barely an hour later he was relieved to run across a small group of ships, including the 8,402-ton fleet oiler *Aldersdale*, the British *Ocean Freedom*, and the Royal Navy minesweeper *Salamander*.

Morris signalled the latter, "May we join you?" *Salamander* welcomed the addition of a rescue ship to its party.<sup>10</sup>

At five-thirty, four Junkers 88s came in to attack this small group of vessels. The first three attackers were demoralised by the ships' combined fire-power and their bombs fell wide, throwing up harmless fountains of sea water. The fourth aircraft alone ventured right in, dropping its bombs from about 6,000 feet. They exploded obliquely under the *Aldersdale's* cruiser-stern and engine-room; the oiler began to take water amidships.<sup>11</sup>

The Chief Engineer reported to the oiler's Captain Hobson that the engines were out of commission and could not be repaired at sea. Hobson considered his position: his ship had sustained no casualties and rescue was near at hand; but his tanker was completely immobilised. He decided to abandon ship forthwith, collected all the confidential papers from the ship's safe, put them together with a quantity of British and Icelandic money into the weighted bag supplied for destroying them, and hurled the package overboard. The minesweeper *Salamander* hove to and took the entire crew off the oiler. Seeing how the *Aldersdale* showed no sign of settling, however, Hobson sent his Chief Engineer back aboard to re-examine the engines. Perhaps the oiler and her 8,000 tons of fuel oil could be salvaged after all.

*Zamalek's* Second Officer, Mr. Lennard, had been watching the disappearing *Zaafaran* as it headed south-east over the horizon. He could see a number of aircraft buzzing round it like wasps round a jampot, very low down; he could hear nothing, but visibility was remarkably good. Suddenly Captain Morris was in the starboard wing of the bridge with him, shouting, "McGowan has had it!" His rival's rescue ship was just over the horizon by then, but they could see her masts slowly heeling over, then suddenly and dramatically her bows were in the air, sticking up like a log on end.

Morris ordered his ship's helm put over to starboard, and to his signaller he said, "Tell that anti-aircraft ship we want anti-submarine protection to go and pick up survivors. If they refuse,

quote the regulations book at them.” *Palomares*, far away, detached *Britomart* for the purpose.

Ten miles to the south, Captain McGowan was supervising the rescue of his crew and passengers from the sinking *Zaafaran*. He and his First and Second Officers saw the lifeboats away, and told the crew to get as many rafts away as possible. Then they too left the ship, over the port side.

“I noticed one of our rafts with no one on it,” said the Second Officer later, “and I jumped into the water and swam a few feet to the raft. As I arrived at the raft so did one of our firemen. He was singing *How deep is the Ocean, How high is the Sky*. It’s hard to explain, but from that moment, come what may, I knew we would win through.”<sup>12</sup> As the rescue ship went down, he and the engineer propelled their raft round it with their steel helmets, plucking seamen from the water. Shortly afterward one of the RN escort vessels arrived and hailed them. It requested the “name of ship, when attacked, and where ship was now.”

By three minutes past seven, all the survivors had been picked up by Captain Morris’s rescue ship, a total of ninety-seven men. There had been only one casualty. Two minutes later, the little convoy – which now included *Zamalek*, *Ocean Freedom*, and *Britomart* – headed eastward after the disappearing anti-aircraft ship *Palomares*. A cold meeting followed between Morris and his rescued rival on *Zamalek*’s bridge. Captain McGowan’s demand to take command of his junior’s ship was refused outright by Morris. McGowan stumped down the companionway to the little ship’s hospital, where – without a word to the surgeon-lieutenant – he poured himself a steaming hot bath, using the hospital’s entire supply of hot water for the afternoon.\*

\* McGowan and his Chief Engineer were both awarded the DSO for PQ.17, as was Morris. The rivalry between the two rescue ship skippers ended only when McGowan lost his life after his next command, the SS *Sunniva* (also General Steam Navigation Company), was sunk with all hands on her first Atlantic convoy as a rescue ship in January 1943.

The need now was for speed. Somewhere under the sea's surface U-boats must have heard the turmoil of the bombing attack, and at this very moment they could be manoeuvring into position. Lieutenant-Commander Mottram of *Salamander* told the damaged *Aldersdale's* captain that there was only one choice open to him – either take his crew back aboard the oiler and try to restart her engines, or give her up there and then.

Hobson said there could be no question of leaving the tanker afloat for the Germans to take as a prize to Norway. Mottram gave him five minutes to decide.<sup>13</sup> Captain Hobson's Chief Engineer advised that he could not restart his engines – they had shipped too much water in the engine-room. Hobson decided the oiler would have to be sunk.

*Salamander's* single 4-inch gun had jammed, so she endeavoured to sink the tanker with a stick of depth-charges under the engine-room. The charges were well laid, but although the tanker heaved slightly it showed no signs of breaking up. Mottram tried to set it on fire by shooting up the aviation-fuel tank with his machine-guns, but the bullets ricocheted off the steel plating. *Aldersdale* was left afloat, and to all appearances unscathed.

The little *Zamalek* convoy, with the anti-aircraft ship *Palomares*, the minesweepers *Britomart* and *Halcyon*, and the fast merchantmen *Ocean Freedom*, was already 10 miles ahead of *Salamander* as she sped with *Aldersdale's* unhappy survivors toward Novaya Zemlya and safety.

THREE GERMAN submarines were still trailing the British *Earlston*, some way to the west of *Zaafaran's* grave. They were keeping a wary distance between themselves and the Briton, who had already discomfited one U-boat with her anti-submarine gun.

From the merchantman's bridge, the First Officer had seen the bombing of *Peter Kerr* to the south, and they had shaped a more northerly course since then. In her holds were several hundred

---

tons of explosives, and crates of ammunition as well. She survived until late afternoon, when a flight of returning Junkers 88s spotted her and attacked from astern. Three bombs hit the sea off the ship's bows, throwing up a wall of water into which the *Earlston* plunged. She shook herself free, and Chief Officer Benson struggled waist-deep through the water to inspect the damage. He shouted to the Captain that the plates would hold, and began making his way back to the bridge when a lone Junkers 88 roared in at bridge height from the starboard bow and dropped a single bomb into the sea just by the vessel's port side.

The engines stopped and the ship slowed to a standstill. The three submarines stopped too, and waited.<sup>14</sup> Captain Stenwick's wireless operator broadcast an "air attack" distress signal, and he ordered his crew to abandon ship. As the crew pulled away in the two lifeboats, they could see steam pouring from the engine-room ventilators and the ship settling lower in the water.

Scarcely had they put a quarter of a mile between themselves and the ship, fearing that the explosives in No. 2 hold would blow up, than two submarines surfaced on *Earlston's* starboard bow within a few moments of each other – *U-334* and, most probably, *U-456*, who three hours before had torpedoed the American *Honomu*. A short while later a third submarine surfaced not far from the other two.

Commander Siemon's *U-334* began to close in fast on the helpless vessel. When she was still 1,300 yards away, he fired tube II at her, aiming at the freighter's empty bridge; the torpedo struck abreast the aftermast. The ship listed slightly, but stayed well afloat. Siemon fired tube III, but the torpedo missed. His submarine now barely 700 yards away, he fired tube IV.<sup>15</sup> As the torpedo sped toward the British ship, the seamen in their lifeboats saw with trepidation that it was heading straight for No. 2 hold. The white trail of bubbles extended to the *Earlston's* flanks abreast the foremast, and stopped.

---

For an instant, nothing happened. Then Siemon, watching from *U-334*, saw a blinding blue flash, followed by a billowing pillar of smoke about 200 feet high. The heavy naval steam launch which had been strapped in a cradle on top of No. 2 hatch was picked up bodily by the explosion and hurled a quarter of a mile across the sea.

The ship broke in two, and the bows sank almost at once. The air was filled with the terrible sound of the heavy cargo – the Churchill tanks, anti-aircraft guns and trucks – tearing loose in the holds, and the groaning of the ship's members under the unintended strain. Then the stern section slid under the sea with a roar. All that was left was the barrage balloon, which had been stowed on the afterdeck, floating on the sea for a few moments as the cable paid out from the ship foundering beneath it. Then that too was plucked beneath the waves, as though by an invisible hand. Ninety seconds had passed since Siemon had fired his third torpedo.

The British ship's Master, Captain Hilmar Stenwick, was ordered onto *U-334*'s foredeck. He asked what would become of his ship's lifeboats, but received no satisfactory reply.

He disappeared into the bowels of the submarine. The three U-boats moved off on the surface, their officers shouting congratulations to each other on their good hunting so far. The latest victory was signalled to Admiral Schmudt in Narvik.

WITHIN MOMENTS, a German sailor in the conning-tower of *U-334* shouted that an aircraft was coming in to attack them. It passed low overhead and released two bombs which detonated not far from the starboard side of the U-boat. The attack had not come so fast that the submarine officers were unable to identify the attacking aircraft – it was a Junkers 88, a German plane. The U-boat trembled in the blast; the floor-plates were torn up, the diesel engines were unseated, and one ballast tank fractured.

---

A fine spray of water entered the boat, and the lights went out. A voice in the conning-tower yelled, "Abandon ship, the boat is sinking!" The aircraft returned and machine-gunned the submarine from very low altitude.

"Fortunately," one of the submarine crew later said, "she had no more bombs left." Then the plane left, leaving the submarine to right herself as best she could.

*U-334*'s steering gear had been jammed, and she was unable to submerge.<sup>16</sup> Not far away, Commander Brandenburg's *U-457* reported that all manner of aircraft were executing bombing-runs on his submarine.<sup>17</sup> Lieutenant-Commander Siemon wirelessly detailed to Schmundt, and recommended that *U-456*, who was with him and had lost contact with the enemy, should be detached from the operation to escort *U-334* back to Kirkenes naval base. Schmundt agreed, and ordered the two U-boats to observe wireless silence all the way. He arranged for escort vessels and tugs to stand by at Kirkenes, and sent a detailed report to the Naval Staff in Berlin.

The Fifth Air Force conducted an investigation of the incident, with copies of its report also going to Berlin, but the matter was dropped without the culprits being discovered.<sup>18</sup>

A third U-boat, *U-657* (Commander Göllnitz), also had to return to Narvik with a leak in one of her diesel fuel bunkers.

The damaged *U-334* ran into Kirkenes two days later, escorted by two Messerschmitt 110s and two minesweepers. While *Earlston*'s Captain Stenwick was held under loose guard below decks, the U-boat's crew paraded to receive the congratulations of the local senior officer. Commander Siemon was questioned more closely on the "possible" American heavy cruiser he had reported seeing sink after the heavy air attack on the convoy on 5 July. He described how he had seen a magazine explosion in a big ship, which immediately began to list; from its superstructure and mast he took it to be an American warship. It had been

---

12 miles away. Schmundt forwarded the report to the Naval Staff; Naval Group North commented that the onus of proof was on the Air Force.<sup>19</sup>

A few days later, Captain Stenwick reached Marlag-Milag Nord, the naval prison camp in Germany. There he met *Carlton's* survivors. Two of the American seamen described to him how the aircraft in which they were flying had broken off *en route* to attack an "enemy submarine" with its machine-guns. Stenwick told them he had a shrewd idea which submarine it was.<sup>\*20</sup>

## 2

DURING THE AFTERNOON, the Ice Devil U-boats' operation had been controlled by Naval Group North, and Schmundt had been directed to sail the three refuelled submarines commanded by Timm, Marks and von Hymmen – *U-251*, *U-376* and *U-408* – as soon as possible to attack any crippled ships lying north of North Cape and in the latitude of Bear Island, well away from the German battle fleet's projected zone of operations. During the late afternoon, several submarines, including Lieutenant-Commander Bielfeld's *U-703*, wirelessed Narvik that they were chasing lone merchant ships.<sup>22</sup> Soon after the *Tirpitz* operation was broken off, U-boat control returned to Schmundt.

Many miles to the north, the Royal Navy's escort vessels were still making way at maximum speed. The anti-aircraft ship *Pozarica* was steaming eastward along the icepack accompanied by three corvettes and a rescue ship, so close to the ice that they

\* It is interesting to note the comments of Mr Walter Stankiewicz, one of *Carlton's* seamen flown back to Norway. Interviewed by German reporters at Kirkenes, he said: "During the flight, the Germans gave us pullovers and track suits to put on. Then they fed us with cakes, as we were half frozen. It was my first flight, and frightfully interesting. I sat right up in the bomber's nose, surrounded by glass. I kept wanting to let fly with the machine-gun in every direction, I was so delighted."<sup>21</sup>

---

could hear the “resounding crack” each time an icefloe broke away. Several miles behind and now completely out of sight, the American freighter *Bellingham* followed. The escort vessels’ radios were unable to pick up either the Admiralty or the BBC directly, but German propaganda broadcasts were coming through loud and clear.

All had received the first signals reporting that two German battleships and eight destroyers had been sighted putting out to sea, and soon afterward they had picked up a further signal locating the German battle fleet just 350 miles to the south-west of them, and coming their way.<sup>23</sup>

By now the air waves were full of distress signals, even without the German fleet. “The radio-man beat a path to the bridge with a continuous stream of distress calls, all to the south of us,” wrote *Bellingham*’s Second Officer in his diary.<sup>24</sup> “The Commodore-ship [*River Afton*] was calling that she had been struck by three torpedoes causing great loss of life, and the remainder were taking to the lifeboats. They were 30 miles away from us.”

Every few minutes calls were being received of submarine or air attacks: the trap was sprung, and it seemed there was to be no escape for any ship.

In the corvette *La Malouine*, the radio operator picked up wireless distress signals from *Earlston*, *Daniel Morgan* and *Silver Sword*, and from three other ships that failed to identify themselves, all well to the south. The little group of escorts maintained their speed.<sup>25</sup> At 14 knots, the corvette’s fuel would last only three more days. “Enemy torpedo planes were having a piece of cake on the scattered ships which were being attacked about 100 miles away,” wrote an officer aboard *La Malouine* that night. “Complete destruction of the convoy is the German intention – and we in *La Mal[ouine]* might have been able to help the odd merchant vessel, but were too occupied protecting a well-armed anti-aircraft ship. A sore point with us all.”

---

NIGHT CLOSED IN on the Arctic, but again it was a night without darkness – a night without stars. The sun shone clearly on Captain Mervyn Stone's American freighter *Olopana* as she plodded slowly along the ice-barrier, far behind even *Bellingham*, on an easterly course. "In the early hours of 6 July," reported Stone, "we came upon an unforgettable sight: the *Pankraft*, the vessel which had been ahead of us in the convoy, was ablaze in the ice. Smoke was billowing from her midships house, and flames licking by her No. 4 hatch. Behind was the sun shining over a vast expanse of ice." Both of the ship's lifeboats were half a mile away, stuck fast in the icefield; both were empty. Where was the *Pankraft's* crew?

Laden with TNT, 5,000 tons of crated aircraft parts and a deckload of bombers, the ship had been following the same ice-barrier on the afternoon of 5 July, 6 miles astern and within sight of the American ship *Bellingham*, when at five o'clock she was bombed from over 4,000 feet by three Junkers 88s – part of a flight of six guided to their victim by two Focke-Wulfe 200 reconnaissance aircraft.<sup>26</sup> The 5,644-ton freighter had been visible for miles because of her smoky engines, and as she hastened through the drifting ice she had had no room for evasive action. The sun was dead astern and visibility unlimited.

After the third bombing-run, the *Pankraft's* Master, Captain Jacob Jacobson, decided to abandon ship. According to the survivors, he gave no orders to that effect, but with the Chief Officer was among the first to take to the lifeboats. The Second Officer stayed aboard, directing operations to the last, seeing the lifeboats and rafts away. The wireless operator stayed long enough to broadcast an "air attack" signal, and added: "Hit by bombers."<sup>27</sup> Then he left the ship in haste, making no attempt to destroy the confidential British papers in his office.

One Junkers 88 roared in low as the last lifeboat was about to pull away, and sprayed the decks of the deserted ship with in-

---

centenary bullets; the gallant Second Officer was killed before he could reach the lifeboat.<sup>28</sup> The boats pulled away, leaving *Pankraft* to her fate.

The German aircraft had then headed toward *Bellingham* and *Winston-Salem*, one and a half miles on her port quarter, just as they entered a low fogbank. The seamen heard the howl of descending bombs, and three exploded harmlessly on an icefloe half a mile away from *Bellingham*. When she emerged from the fogbank about an hour later, she was again attacked by a single plane. She fired her 4-inch low-angle surface gun into the sea, and the geyser of water seemed to scare the aircraft away. *Bellingham*'s safety valves were screwed down and, vibrating in every joint, her speed was gradually coaxed up to over 15 knots. (Convoy sailing orders show her rated maximum speed to have been only 12 knots.) The rescue ship *Rathlin* came into sight, and the merchantman thankfully joined company.

Far to the east, the anti-aircraft ship *Pozarica*'s radio officer picked up *Pankraft*'s distress signal and took it to Captain Lawford. Lawford was reluctant to go to the ship's aid: uppermost in his mind were the urgent signals reporting the positions of the German battle fleet as it headed north-east toward them.

The officers of the accompanying corvettes were anxious to turn back, but the Captain of *La Malouine* felt his place was with the AA ship. "After hearing six SOS messages from merchant vessels, the No. 1 and all but one of us – other than the captain, who did not have to express an opinion – agreed we should go with *Lotus* or go alone," wrote one of the corvette's officers that night. "Again No. 1 flew into one of his Irish tempers at having to suffer hearing the SOS's and doing nothing but escort a ship capable of looking after herself."

*La Malouine* stayed with *Pozarica*, but her sister ship, the corvette *Lotus*, signalled the AA ship that she was going back alone to search for survivors, whatever Lawford might decree. As her

signalled intentions were broadcast to *La Malouine*'s seething crew, a cheer went up for their sister ship's gallantry.\* Lieutenant Henry Hall, Captain of *Lotus*, brought his corvette round and headed back toward the position given in the last distress signals.

The last sighting report had put the German battle fleet 350 miles to the south-west, but closing the distance rapidly. "This caused heavier hearts and a full discussion with all officers present on bridge, and with Novaya Zemlya plans in front of us."

At eight o'clock the three naval vessels altered course, heading directly for Admiralty Peninsula on Novaya Zemlya, 220 miles away. The latest report was that the enemy was 260 miles away and steering a more easterly course – a course which would cut them off, perhaps even before they could reach the island. At midnight, *Pozarica* altered course to southward, heading now for Matochkin Strait instead of Admiralty Peninsula.

Soon she and her consorts ran across the American freighter *Samuel Chase*, whose relief at sighting the heavily-armed anti-aircraft ship and her anti-submarine escort can be imagined.

The relief was short-lived. Before the Americans could draw breath, *Pozarica*'s signal lamp was warning them not to use their wireless – evidently she had picked up a transmission from somebody.

The Americans signalled the Royal Navy: "We were intercepted to southward three times today but lost him, in the fog, steering northward. May we accompany you?"

A glance at the convoy sailing order showed that the American freighter's maximum speed was 10 knots. Captain Lawford signalled her: "I am proceeding Matochkin Strait, Novaya Zemlya. Suggest you do the same at utmost speed. *Von Tirpitz*, *Hipper* and six destroyers steering 060° from North Cape at 22 knots."

\* *La Malouine*'s captain, Lieutenant Bidwell, was awarded the DSC for PQ.17.

Again the importunate American asked, "Can we accompany you?" The anti-aircraft ship answered: "My course and speed 102°, 14 knots." *Samuel Chase* said, "Thank you."<sup>29</sup> Of this brief exchange, the Armed Guard officer aboard the merchantman reported: "He informed us that he was heading for Novaya Zemlya at his utmost speed. A few minutes later he told us he was heading for Matochkin Strait and advised us to do the same. Owing to his greater speed we finally lost sight of him."<sup>30</sup>

A dense blanket of fog descended, a blessed relief to the British sailors in their ordeal. But still *Pozarica* did not slacken speed.

A signal was sent to Lieutenant Hall in *Lotus*, directing him to head for Matochkin Strait as soon as his search for survivors was completed.

HALL REACHED the site of the attack on *Pankraft* after two hours' hard steaming to the west, at about 7.45 P.M.<sup>31</sup> The first sight his crew had of the abandoned ship was enough to show that the American had evidently run into an icefield and stuck fast before being bombed. The vessel was partially obscured by steam rising from her superstructure, and the lifeboats, crowded with a largely Filipino crew, were some distance from the ship in the open sea.

Without wasting a moment, Hall collected all twenty-nine men from the two lifeboats, urging his sailors to get them aboard as quickly as possible as *Lotus* was completely alone in this vast expanse of ice and ocean.<sup>32</sup> Then he ordered the gun crews to open fire on *Pankraft* and sink her. As the corvette's pom-pom and 4-inch gun were brought to bear on the ship and opened fire, the doomed freighter's Master gave a shout of fear and leaped for the scrambling nets from his lifeboat.

The pom-pom was thumping shells into the merchant ship from only a few hundred yards away, and *Lotus* was drawing closer; *Pankraft's* superstructure was now well on fire. Jacobson

besought Hall to order the guns to cease fire: he had over a thousand tons of high explosive in his ship's cargo. Lieutenant Hall's corvette withdrew as smartly as her engines would allow.

The *Pankraft* continued to burn for over twenty-four hours, finally blowing up at six o'clock on the morning of 7 July with an explosion so loud that it was heard even by Lieutenant Gradwell's private convoy far away to the west.<sup>33</sup>

By the time *Olopana* stumbled across the blazing *Pankraft*, her empty lifeboats had been blown into the loose icefloes by the same south wind that eventually forced Gradwell's four ships to break their way out.

THREE TORPEDOES had struck *River Afton*, and her fate was the worst of all.

After scattering his convoy at 10:30 P.M. the previous evening, Commodore Dowding's ship had kept religiously to her north-easterly scatter course until she met the ice-barrier. Then, in thick fog, she had groped her way eastward, making for the coast of Novaya Zemlya. She never made it. During the day the weather cleared, and at two minutes past ten on the evening of 5 July, Commander Bielfeld's first torpedo struck the ship's engine-room. Through his periscope, *U-703*'s commander saw a small white puff of smoke rise from the vessel's stern, and the ship gradually slowed to a standstill. "No signs of settling." He and his crew clearly heard the explosion, forty-four seconds after the torpedo was launched.<sup>34</sup> So did Captain John Rimington, the British army officer taken prisoner twelve hours before from an earlier victim's lifeboats. On the freighter's deck, Bielfeld could see large crates, tanks and aircraft.

In *River Afton*, an indescribable confusion was breaking out. Her Master, Captain Harold Charlton, had given the order to abandon ship, and some gunners were already struggling to lower the starboard lifeboat; the port lifeboat had been destroyed by

9/15-

COD V ADM.

SECRET PASS TO R.G.S.S.  
 ADDRESSED ADMIRALTY FOR MWT.  
 READDRESSEB ADMIRALTYFF H W T

noted  
 16/7/42.

FROM S T O ARCHANGEL

CORRECTION

PLEASE INFORM OWNERS RIVER AFTON FOLLOWING 11 MEMBERS OF CREW  
 LOST. LONGSTAFF, WOOD, ROLFE, PRITCHARD, BREEN, HAINSWORTH,  
 MASON,, WATSON, COULL, BRIDGER, WALLER.

-----

8 D.E.MONS. RATINGS, WILLIAMS, BANHAM, JESSOP, BROOK HOLDING,  
 CARVER KIRK HEAF. COMMODORES STAFF, WALLACE WALTON ALSO PASSENGER  
 LT. WATERSTONE R.N.V.R. =

0945/14 ++

C WA OWNERS RIVER

NEJ B3

ADM CAN I H=3 - EQ AQRT79

CAN I HAVE ADDRESS AFTER PASS TO R G S S OVERTYPED ERE

ADDRESSED ADMIRALTY FOR H W T

TKS

ADM COD

R 2340/15

EJD YA



Source: Registrar General of Shipping & Seamen, Cardiff

the blast. To Charlton's consternation, Commodore Dowding expressed the belief that the ship was still seaworthy. Charlton reminded him that he was the ship's Master. Dowding persisted: if a ship was sturdy enough to withstand a torpedo without showing any signs of settling, she was fit to go anywhere. (Dowding was a veteran with considerable convoy experience – he had taken the very first PQ convoy through to north Russia.)

Dowding said he would radio for a corvette to come and take them in tow: *River Afton* and her cargo were worth millions of pounds, and it would be wrong to abandon her.<sup>35</sup>

Captain Charlton reiterated that he was still the ship's Master, while Dowding's prerogatives as Convoy Commodore had lost their substance when the convoy as such ceased to exist. As a veteran of two north Russian convoys, he knew a doomed ship when he saw one. If the Commodore wished to stay aboard, then that was his own responsibility.

The gunners and other seamen had almost got the starboard lifeboat down now. Other seamen had slipped two rafts into the water, but they promptly floated away with nobody on them. Captain Charlton took his leave of Dowding and cast off from the *River Afton* in a jollyboat, taking some of his men with him. Dowding and his staff of Royal Navy signallers stayed stubbornly aboard, resolved no doubt to organise the ship's salvage themselves. The ship's radio officer, George Garstin, also stayed aboard, continuing to transmit distress signals. Getting no acknowledgement, he feared the signals had not been picked up.

A number of Charlton's officers had also ignored his orders to abandon ship and were trying to rescue the engineers trapped below. The first torpedo had detonated in the engine-room below the water line. The Fourth Engineer had just gone below to take over the watch from the Second Engineer. He had reached the generator platform when the torpedo struck; the heavy generator rolled over on top of him and crushed him. The vessel's South African Second Engineer lay with both legs broken in the engine-room, which was flooding fast.

The Chief Engineer, Edward Miller, quickly organised a rescue party to bring out the Second Engineer, taking with him the Liverpool Chief Steward Percy Grey and his nineteen-year-old assistant cook, Thomas Waller.<sup>36</sup>

At this moment *U-703*'s second torpedo struck *River Afton*'s engine-room, killing all who were still below. The starboard lifeboat was capsized by the blast, and all the gunners were thrown into the sea. Chief Engineer Miller was trapped by a smashed

mooring winch, which rolled over and pinioned his leg. With the help of the others, he freed himself and pressed on with the Second Engineer's rescue. Dowding returned to the ship's bridge and destroyed his official papers. He saw that Captain Charlton had left his secret papers there as well, so he placed them in a weighted box and threw them overboard.

Then he went to the engine-room skylight, where Miller and his rescue party were trying to get the engineer out. They had found him lying on the fan platform just above the foaming water flooding into the engine-room. The young assistant cook, Thomas Waller, climbed through the engine-room grating on a rope and put the unconscious engineer into a sling to be hoisted aloft. With extreme care, the engineer was hauled out through the grating by the radio officer, Dowding, and a number of others. The Chief Engineer placed his injured colleague on a stretcher on one of the ship's rafts on the main deck. Dowding gave orders to all the men still aboard the ship to stand by the rafts, but not to slip them until the ship went down.

The seas around the ship were swarming with struggling men, some with life-jackets, all swimming for their lives. Captain Charlton and Lieutenant Cook, a middle-aged sea-transport officer who had been on his way to a posting in Russia, were moving round the ship in their jollyboat and hauling seamen out of the sea, until the little boat could take no more.

Commander Bielfeld had turned *U-703* away to the west, but saw to his annoyance that his victim had still not begun to sink twenty minutes after the first torpedo had struck home. At 10.22 P.M. he fired his third torpedo at *River Afton*, as Commodore Dowding and his men stood by their rafts. The torpedo struck the ship cleanly on the starboard side of No. 5 hatch. The brave young assistant cook Thomas Waller, who had been left in the engine-room after rescuing the Second Engineer, was killed outright. Hatch-boards and crates of cargo were thrown vio-

lently into the air, and everybody could hear the thunderous noise of the sea cascading into her holds.

Dowding shouted that the rafts were to be slipped, and he himself climbed onto the small raft bearing the wounded engineer, the Chief Steward and another man. They could feel the ship rolling over to starboard, but then she suddenly began to sink stern first. Dowding's raft was swept across the deck, which was awash by now, and fouled the derricks and the hatch-covers, which were being blown off by the air pressure building up beneath them. The doomed *River Afton's* bows reared up above them as she began to slide backward into the sea.

Water was pouring over them from the superstructure and the horrified Commodore saw the foremast bearing down on him as the raft to which he and the others were clinging was forced off the sinking ship. As the ship plunged, the mast caught their little raft and capsized it, throwing Dowding, the injured engineer and the others into the icy water.

The sea was empty now save for the jollyboat and the flotsam of wreckage and human life clinging to the scattered baulks of timber and rafts. Dowding swam back to the raft and picked up the wounded engineer, by now more dead than alive, and two young cooks. Close to him he could see a large raft with about nine men, and a smaller one with three wireless officers and another man. Some distance off was the jollyboat with Captain Charlton, and there was the upturned lifeboat with about half a dozen men clinging to it. Charlton towed a small raft over to them, and they climbed aboard.

All attempts to right the lifeboat failed. There was no compass or food of any sort on the five rafts, and only four paddles among them. In his crowded jollyboat, Captain Charlton saw a fireman die before his eyes. He eased the body into the sea and mumbled, "dust to dust, and ashes to ashes" – all that he could remember of the Service for Burial at Sea.

---

*U-703* surfaced only briefly. One of her officers asked some men on a raft the name of their ship and her cargo. In good English he said he was sorry he had had to do this and regretted that he could not take anybody into his submarine. He handed over a large sausage and water, and told them to steer eastward for 200 miles, where they would make *Novaya Zemlya*.

“Without paddles, this would have been a difficult job,” commented Dowding. Then *U-703*, remaining on the surface, disappeared in search of further prey.

Several hundred yards from Charlton’s boat, Commodore Dowding found some small smokefloats on his raft; he cut them free with his jack-knife and opened them. Dense reddish-brown smoke billowed out, but it drifted low and heavy across the glassy sea. It looked like the end for all of them<sup>\*37</sup>

TEN MINUTES after Bielfeld’s third torpedo struck *River Afton*, William Joyce was broadcasting from Germany the first details of the Arctic convoy battle. He concluded by mocking that there were a number of questions that the Russians should ask themselves about British and American promises of military aid:

What proportion of the war material despatched to Soviet ports will ever arrive?

2. In view of the admission made by Mr. Lyttleton and Mr. Churchill in the Commons concerning the British policy for preferring quantity to quality in armaments, how much

\* *River Afton*’s late owners, Hunting & Son Ltd, informed the author that Captain Charlton had “a number of disagreements” with Dowding, and this was why Charlton received no recognition at the time. Dowding was awarded his CBE for the next homeward convoy, QP.14, when he again ended up on a raft (*London Gazette*, 13 October 1942). Charlton was awarded a DSC in December 1944 (*Lloyd’s List*, 20 December 1944). Miller, Grey and Garstin (the radio officer) were awarded Lloyd’s War Medal for Bravery at Sea (*Lloyd’s List*, 7 October 1942 and 31 August 1943).

of the war material that *has* arrived can be worth unloading?  
and

3. When is the Second Front going to materialise?<sup>38</sup>

3

AT HALF-PAST SIX that evening, an hour and a half after the German battle fleet had first been sighted putting to sea, the British Admiralty wirelessly Admiral Sir John Tovey the suggestion that if the Germans were to sight the Home Fleet steering eastward, it might make them reluctant to risk their own warships so far to the east as the convoy would soon be. Tovey, receiving the Admiralty's signal at about seven o'clock, was reluctant to adopt the measure as he thought it essential to continue on his present south-westerly course for his destroyers to refuel. Nevertheless, he did make arrangements for the course of his fleet to be temporarily reversed to the east should an enemy reconnaissance aircraft be detected approaching.<sup>39</sup>

In the meantime Hamilton's cruiser force had just been sighted by a German Focke-Wulf, and he learned shortly after from the Admiralty that his force's position had been reported back to Germany with great precision. He was consequently able to break wireless silence at 6.30 P.M. to report to Tovey the composition of his force.<sup>40</sup> It was only now that the Commander-in-Chief learned that Hamilton had all of Broome's escort destroyers with him, and that some of them had over 75 percent of their fuel remaining.

At about eight o'clock, the Admiralty wirelessly its latest grim appreciation to the naval escort vessels:

Most likely time of enemy surface attack now tonight of 5–6 July or early tomorrow morning, 6 July. Enemy may strike 065° in direction of North Cape.<sup>41</sup>

---

Soon afterward, they learned that a Russian submarine, *K-21*, was claiming to have torpedoed *Tirpitz*. At 8.45 P.M. two RAF squadrons were asked to search for her, and at 9.06 P.M. the Admiralty wirelessly to Tovey an urgent request to reconsider whether, if *Tirpitz* really was damaged, she might not present an attractive target for the torpedo planes of his aircraft-carrier *Victorious* once he had completed refuelling his destroyers.

Tovey was unimpressed by this suggestion. He could see no practicable opportunity for striking at the “crippled” German battleship. *Tirpitz* could make the return passage almost entirely under short-range fighter cover, while there were more than enough Junkers 88s in the north to deal with any Albatrosses that might be despatched to attack her along those parts of her route outside short-range fighter cover. It was in any case difficult to believe that the Germans would make the passage, especially if the battleship was damaged, unless they had first arranged fighter cover in advance, and unless German air reconnaissance had ensured that the Home Fleet was not in the offing.

One may criticise these arguments in retrospect as exaggerating the capacities of the German Air Force for escorting naval units and for executing reliable reconnaissance operations. Still, one must respect Tovey’s final argument – that his own flagship, *Duke of York*, was too short of fuel then to engage in such an operation, and he was not willing to divide the Fleet before an operation so close to the enemy shores. In any case, as we now know, the whole German battle fleet had turned back toward Norway some time before ten o’clock that night, and all of them – including the undamaged *Tirpitz* – were safe at anchor again by the early hours of 6 July.

The first two RAF reconnaissance squadrons had by 1.45 A.M. found (of course) no trace of a damaged *Tirpitz*, but a third squadron was requested to carry out an immediate reconnaissance of the same area.

The German Naval Staff, whose monitoring service intercepted and decoded the signals to the squadrons concerned, was at a loss to understand why they were being directed to search for an unnamed damaged “battleship,” as the German fleet had been recalled before it could bring any enemy battleships to action.

Finally they concluded the British must still be searching for the heavy cruiser the Germans had “sunk” during the evening air attack on 4 July, and there the matter rested.\*<sup>42</sup>

Rear-Admiral Hamilton’s cruiser force received the news that *Tirpitz* might have been damaged, and that *Victorious* might be operated against her, shortly before ten o’clock that night.

Hamilton decided that *London* and *Norfolk* could be of most use to Tovey by topping up the destroyers with fuel, and he began by topping up *Somali* and *Fury* while the USS *Wainwright* fuelled from *Norfolk*.<sup>43</sup> But no further use was made of them.†

\* Adolf Hitler was obviously informed of this. Discussing PQ.17 with Ribbentrop and a foreign diplomat (Ambassador Gerede) on 13 July, he reverted to the subject of the Russian claim to have sunk *Tirpitz*. “A Russian lieutenant had apparently declared he had seen the ship sink with his own eyes. But as the *Tirpitz* was lying safe and sound in a Norwegian fiord, and he (the Führer) was even considering whether or not foreign journalists should be invited to visit her, either the lieutenant concerned must have lied, or the sinking concerned was of an English battleship; the latter possibility did exist, inasmuch as wireless messages had been intercepted in which the whereabouts of an English battleship were urgently inquired after.” – *Protocol No. Füh. 24/42 written by Ambassador Paul Schmidt, in German Foreign Office archives.*

German Home Stations broadcasts at 7 P.M., 11 July, made similar comments. “While the London authorities are busy counting the number of ships which reached port out of the thirty-eight that set out, it might be worth their while to check the number of Anglo-American escorts – heavy cruisers and battleships.” The only explanation of the Russian canard was that they had torpedoed one of their allies’ battleships.

† Captain Bellars (*Norfolk*) wrote to Hamilton, 8 July: “I must say that I was surprised that *Wainwright* had to be fuelled twice. We are thinking of cutting off the ‘k’ from our name and calling ourselves *Norfo!*” – a typical fleet auxiliary oiler’s name.

Whether or not *Tirpitz* was at this time drifting crippled off the Arctic coast of Norway, of one thing the Admiralty was certain: three highly circumstantial and independent sightings had been made of an enemy battle fleet, including at least two battle-ships, steering north-eastward on a bearing of 65° into the Barents Sea, where they would probably begin picking off the merchant ships one by one in the early hours. What possible cause could there be for breaking the operation off? With their superior air reconnaissance, the Germans would by now have learned that Tovey's fleet and the cruiser squadron were running westward, hundreds of miles away, and that nothing heavier than corvettes still remained with the scattering merchantmen.

At 2:30 A.M. signals were wirelessly to Admiral Bevan, the Senior British Naval Officer in north Russia, to Admiral Miles in Moscow, and to Captain G. O. Maund, the Senior British Naval Officer at Archangel, warning them that it was possible that a German surface attack would develop on the defenceless merchant ships. They were asked to arrange for a search for survivors by all available means, including any Catalina aircraft in north Russia not required for searching for and shadowing the enemy units.<sup>44</sup>

At the same time, the British Admiralty despatched what was, one assumes, the most desperate signal of the war to the vessels of PQ.17's one-time escort force, still obviously believed by the Admiralty to be screening some of the scattering merchantmen:

MOST IMMEDIATE. Attack by enemy surface forces is probable in next few hours. Your primary duty is to avoid destruction to enable you to return to scene of attack to pick up survivors after enemy have retired.<sup>45</sup>

Fifteen minutes later they made one last attempt to stave off the apparently imminent disaster: at 2.45 A.M. they signalled Ad-

---

miral Tovey urging him to reconsider the proposal that he should steer eastward, in order to *threaten* the Germans with being cut off if nothing more, if the weather conditions were such that his fleet was likely to be sighted by enemy aircraft. Admiral Tovey was reluctant to comply: the weather was still overcast and visibility was low. Even so, at 6.45 A.M. he did alter the Home Fleet's course to north-eastward, and he ordered Hamilton's force to join. At 7.45 A.M. a lone enemy aircraft droned high overhead, obscured from view by the layers of cloud. Tovey tried to attract the enemy's attention with gunfire and by scrambling fighters, in the hope that the German's curiosity would be aroused and he would report the Home Fleet's eastward course to his superiors. The aircraft passed on unaware.

By 10 A.M. Hamilton's force was in sight of the battle fleet 15 miles off Jan Mayen Island, and at 10.40 Hamilton took station on Tovey's flag, with a wet wind blowing. After four hours of this unrewarding cruising to the north-east, with the weather still unfavourable for the enemy's air reconnaissance, Admiral Tovey reversed the Home Fleet's course again. The Allied battle fleet, like the German one, headed for home.<sup>46</sup>

NOT ALL of the Royal Navy's escort vessels had the codebooks necessary to decipher the Admiralty's signal recommending they "avoid destruction."<sup>47</sup> They went their separate ways in blessed ignorance.

Not so the anti-aircraft ships. To the officers and men of the *Pozarica* and the two corvettes escorting her, it seemed certain that the end could not be far for them. They were still over 200 miles from the safety of Matochkin Strait, but they could go no faster. After the Admiralty's earlier signal – that the most likely time of German surface attack on them was during the coming night or early morning – had burst like an eight-inch shell on *Pozarica's* bridge, Captain Lawford called a grim conference in

---

---

his charthouse. All agreed it was now out of the question to try to reach Archangel direct. Their only hope of survival was to make for the nearest point of land, and perhaps even go ashore with the remaining stores, with the intention of making their way south on foot – “real Shackleton stuff.”

Lawford returned to his bridge, called the two corvettes alongside in turn, and repeated the signal to them through the loudhailer. He told them the course he was proposing to steer, and that the speed would be 14 knots, the flotilla’s maximum. Finally, Lawford cleared Lower Deck and explained that all three ships would form up in line ahead, in order to give the impression of a larger force if sighted in silhouette through the mists by the enemy. *Pozarica* signalled the corvette *La Malouine*:

The enemy is expected to attack early tomorrow, 6 July. When we come within range of their heavy ships we shall turn toward them and fire as long as we can. Suggest that those off watch get sleep and make their Peace. But with God’s help we shall survive.<sup>48</sup>

In every man’s mind, the paramount question now was when the enemy would be sighted. *La Malouine*’s officers knew their single 4-inch gun would do little more than make noise and keep them occupied until the enemy fleet’s salvos sank them. They were not afraid, but they were angry that they had been forsaken like this.

After the Admiralty’s signal was received, Lieutenant Caradus, in *La Malouine*, wrote one of the most moving passages of his private diary:

No. 1 and self think this signal the last straw. We will be slaughtered if we don’t get through Matochkin [Strait] – sunk off Novaya Zemlya or sunk in the Barents Sea. *Pozarica* talks to

Captain over loud-hailer and leaves us with little doubt that the end has come.

Everyone is becoming silent. Petter is in the R/T room checking that every signal is picked up – anything that might give us a clue. Am weary and cold even with electric heater in cabin. Writing this up with four hours' sleep ahead.

Before he turned in, he saw the supply assistant sitting in the galley flat reading the New Testament; his action station was ammunition supply, the most thankless in the ship.

Spoke to him for a few minutes. Told me he was ready to die if it was God's will. Lay on my bunk and prayed. Fell asleep, again hoping that whatever happened it happened while I was asleep.

The information at the Admiralty, he suspected, must be very "vague."<sup>49</sup> The sun rose at 4 A.M. – not that there had been any night. The boatswain's mate called him to watch again, tired and very frightened.

[Engines] still doing 150 revs. Made my way to bridge wondering what the latest signal reported – or if there was any news at all. On my way saw group of about 12 huddled round funnel with tin hats and life-jackets on – pathetic sight in our predicament.

The latest position of the German destroyers was only 160 miles away, and they still had over 180 miles to run to Matochkin Strait – twelve hours at their present speed.

FAR BEHIND THEM, Lieutenant Hall's corvette *Lotus* was returning eastward at speed after rescuing *Pankraft's* survivors. A

lookout reported “tall pillars of smoke” coming from over the horizon, as though a ship was on fire. It was not far off the course they were steering, so Hall decided to investigate.

As they approached, the smoke columns grew shorter until finally they vanished almost altogether – short, stubby puffs of thick brown smoke being emitted from the smoke pots Commodore Dowding had set not far from his raft some hours before. If a weird Arctic mirage had not so magnified this tiny smoke signal, *River Afton*’s survivors would surely have perished within the next few hours.

They were already in a pitiful condition. Commodore Dowding, a steward and a cabin boy had shared a Carley float for three hours since the loss of their ship, and the few survivors were distributed among rafts and the one small boat. As the corvette covered the last hundred yards, she seemed to be ploughing through a sea strewn with débris and bodies.<sup>50</sup>

As Captain Charlton’s small jollyboat drew alongside, the seamen were almost too tired to reach for the scrambling-nets. Two in the bows made hardly any movement at all: one was the badly injured Second Engineer, his cap over one eye and unable to speak; the other was an officer looking after him. As the boat came alongside the corvette, witnesses in the corvette saw the officer try to speak to the engineer, and then begin taking things out of his pockets; he slipped a ring off the man’s finger, and climbed aboard. The engineer was left alone in the boat.

Lieutenant Hall shouted to know what the delay was about. The sombre British seaman asked if they could bring the body aboard to give him a decent burial at sea. Hall told them to leave the man in the boat, and cast off; he thought that if a submarine had sunk the *Afton*, it might well still be lurking nearby to torpedo any vessel rescuing the survivors.

Of the fifty-nine officers and men who had sailed with *River Afton*, twenty-three – including the guncrew – were dead. Both

---

of Commodore Dowding's RN staff officers had perished as the ship made her final plunge.\*

FOR PQ.17, 5 July had been a massacre. Around midnight, *U-703* wirelessly to Admiral Schmudt in Narvik: "Pinpoint AC.3568. 5,479-ton *River Afton* sunk. Cargo, aircraft and tanks. Three torpedoes." He had added that he still had 75 cubic metres of diesel fuel, so he was good for some hunting yet. At about the same time, *U-408* ran out of Narvik to join the attack, her tanks full and her crew eager for action.

Commander Bielfeld's sinking of *River Afton* brought to six the number of ships despatched by the U-boats of the Ice Devil pack during the day. Schmudt particularly praised the improved co-operation between Air Force and submarines – aside from the regrettable Junkers 88 attack on *U-334*.<sup>51</sup>

By the morning of 6 July, reports reaching his office showed that surviving ships were widely scattered and well to the east of the 40° meridian. Soon after midnight, air reconnaissance had reported sighting two merchant ships and two apparent "destroyers" heading almost due east for Novaya Zemlya, and probably for Matochkin Strait. They may well have been the anti-aircraft ship *Palomares* and such of the convoy's ships as had been able to keep up with her. Such a wide detour to the east seemed to confirm, in Schmudt's view, what *Carlton*'s Master had revealed to the Germans: the convoy's destination had been Archangel. "In which case," Schmudt commented, "the submarines still have excellent prospects of successful operations."

During the small hours, Naval Group North informed Schmudt that it had been their intention to direct the U-boats to follow the convoy's track to within about 80 miles of the Russian coast, and then turn round and sweep back along the

\* Three more of *River Afton*'s crew perished when the minesweeper *Leda* went down on the return convoy, QP.14.

---

---

convoy's path as far as fuel would permit, killing any cripples and stragglers they came across. Admiral Schmundt's office agreed that this was a good plan. Shortly before 6 A.M., the Air Force's midnight sighting report was passed on to the submarines, and Schmundt ordered those with no contacts to sweep southward between the 42° and 48° meridians, turning back upon reaching the latitude of 70° North. He ordered La Baume's U-355 to transmit a meteorological-report flash, and added for the information of all of them: "*Concord* has been dropped."

## 4

REAR-ADMIRAL HAMILTON'S cruiser force had taken station on his Commander-in-Chief's flag during the course of the morning. At first he was ordered by Tovey to proceed with his force to Iceland, but some hours later he was directed to take *London* to Scapa Flow with the Home Fleet, leaving the rest of his force to proceed to Iceland without him.

Before they finally parted company, Admiral Hamilton signalled to the three other cruisers his own explanation of what seemed to have gone wrong, as there was still no explanation from Whitehall. At one stage he had even toyed with the idea of addressing each of the ships' companies in person, so urgent did the morale position seem; but now he invited each Captain to make it quite clear that their force had been "acting under orders of a higher authority" throughout – an authority with, it seemed, full knowledge of the facts and issues involved.

Our retirement [he signalled] was made at high speed in order to avoid contact with a superior force once we had left the convoy. Contrary to expectations, the enemy has produced all his heavy ships supported by shore-based aircraft at a time and in an area where defence by our own heavy

ships is out of the question owing to the lack of shore-based aircraft on our side.<sup>52</sup>

Captain Bellars replied from *Norfolk*: “I hope we will have better luck next time.”<sup>53</sup> The American Captain Hill (*Wichita*) signalled: “It was a pleasure and a privilege to have been under your command.”<sup>54</sup>

To Bellars Hamilton replied, “I am sorry we are not going to meet and talk things over. Now I have got things in perspective I am thoroughly happy about the prospects of PQ.18.”<sup>55</sup>

To the American warships he signalled: “I am sorry we were not allowed to have a battle. Perhaps PQ.18 will give us a better run for our money. So far the convoy appears to have incurred few losses.”<sup>56</sup>

CHAPTER 7

## The New Land

*6 July – 14 July*

*My ship and cargo are now in a harbour of the Soviet Union.*

— CAPTAIN W. LOVGREN, MASTER OF  
THE U.S. FREIGHTER WINSTON-SALEM,  
AFTER RUNNING HER AGROUND AND  
ABANDONING HER IN A BAY ON AN ARC-  
TIC ISLAND

**N**OVAYA ZEMLYA – “the new land” – is a pair of Arctic islands six hundred miles long, divided by a narrow, fissured channel called Proliv Matochkin Shar about four hundred miles from its northern end. The islands form the eastern boundary of the Barents Sea.

For the greater part of its length, “Matochkin Strait” runs between high and rugged mountains, and in places the ships’ fairway is narrowed to only seven hundred yards by banks of alluvial sand on either side. Along all of its fifty-mile length, there were in 1942 only three sparsely inhabited settlements: Lagerni settlement in the west, and the Polar Geophysical Laboratory and Matshar radio station at the north-eastern end.<sup>1</sup>

It was for this inhospitable passage between the hostile Barents Sea and the Kara Sea that most of the escort vessels and merchant ships had independently set course after the scattering of convoy PQ.17. It seemed unlikely that the German battle fleet, or

---

even its destroyers, would be able to follow them through the strait into the Kara Sea. The first ships to sight the gaunt and forbidding islands on 6 July were the Royal Navy's escort vessels screening the anti-aircraft ship *Palomares*, including the mine-sweepers *Britomart*, *Halcyon* and *Salamander* and the rescue ship *Zamalek*, with 153 survivors now crowding her decks.

One merchant ship, *Ocean Freedom*, had managed to keep up with them. At 11 A.M. they sighted land – a sight which many of the seamen had thought they would never see again. On Captain Jauncey's orders, *Britomart* – who knew these waters well – sailed far ahead, carrying out an anti-submarine sweep as the little convoy passed the difficult entrance into Matochkin Strait. Her captain later reported:

*Britomart* was not challenged on passing Stolbovoi point, so I proceeded at seven knots. When off Lagerni settlement, I stopped to allow a small motor-boat with a Russian naval officer to come alongside. The boat, with a crew of one seaman, was armed with a machine-gun which the officer directed against the ship. He did not speak English, but I made him understand that we were not an invasion fleet, and that we required anchorage. The officer then left for the shore, and I proceeded to report situation to *Palomares*.<sup>2</sup>

By half-past two the remaining ships of *Palomares*'s group had followed the minesweeper in and were at anchor off Lagerni settlement in five fathoms of water. Two hours later, Jauncey called a conference aboard his anti-aircraft ship to discuss whether they should attempt to break out into the Kara Sea or wait a while where they were and take a shorter west coast route into the White Sea and Archangel. *Britomart*'s Lieutenant Stammwitz interjected that from his own experience the strait would be blocked by ice at the other end, where conditions were

---

always very different from those at the western entrance, where they now were. On Jauncey's instructions, the Walrus seaplane which they had picked up two days before was sent on a short reconnaissance flight up the strait.

It returned soon after with news that there was indeed no passage, as the strait was blocked by ice.<sup>3</sup>

THE OTHER anti-aircraft ship, *Pozarica*, had continued to make for Matochkin Strait all night long. She and her flotilla had been making their best speed for thirty-six hours. At 1 P.M., while still some way from the entrance to the strait, she stopped and detailed the two corvettes, *La Malouine* and *Poppy*, to circle round her giving anti-submarine protection. "Tension built up quickly with the ship's company over the delay," recorded Lieutenant Caradus of *La Malouine*, who understood that the halt was due to trouble with *Pozarica*'s engines. Nobody knew where the German battle fleet's destroyers were now. The corvettes' radios had ceased to function at this distance, and *Pozarica*'s was receiving only a few isolated signals.

At 2 P.M. land was finally sighted. The seamen could clearly see the glaciers, the snowcaps and the many bays. "Very barren and uninviting, but almost with 'Welcome' written along it."

Three hours later they sighted Cape Stolbovoi with its little red buildings and made out the well-concealed entrance to the strait. At 6 P.M. they were entering the strait itself with engine-room telegraphs at Slow Ahead, thankful for the leading-marks and other navigational aids provided by the Russians.

They prepared to anchor in Pomorskaya Bay on the right-hand side of the entrance to the strait, and no sooner had the order to let go the anchor been given than they saw *Palomares* and her escorts anchored in the opposite bay near Lagerni settlement.<sup>4</sup>

A fatuous exchange of signals followed between the two sister ships:

*Palomares*: “Welcome to *our* base.”

*Pozarica*: “May we anchor in your back garden?”

*Palomares*: “Certainly. Anchor on my port bow where our guns can command the entrance.”<sup>5</sup>

As the newcomers re-anchored opposite the settlement, they could see bare wooden buildings ashore, a number of men, women and children, and several large dogs. Ships’ telescopes were handed round, but there was little else to see.

After so many alarms and excursions, the one desire was for sleep. But at 7 P.M. the corvette *La Malouine* was ordered by one of the anti-aircraft ships to weigh anchor and head out into the Barents Sea to pick up any of the convoy’s merchant ships that could be found and lead them into the strait.

It was obviously now felt that the escort force which was gathering in the strait should try to assemble the merchantmen and reform the convoy for the rest of the passage to Archangel.

FAR OUT TO SEA, the convoy’s fastest merchantman, *Hoosier*, was heading due south toward the White Sea entrance when she sighted an American Liberty ship at 5:30 P.M. – *Samuel Chase* – heading east at full speed. Her lifeboats had been swung out and lowered almost to the sea.

Thinking the *Samuel Chase* was in distress, *Hoosier* signalled to enquire if she needed assistance. The other replied that she did not, but that a German task force of submarines, destroyers and possibly a heavy cruiser was in the vicinity. As *Hoosier* drew closer, she learned that the other ship was heading east toward Matochkin Strait, and she decided to alter course for the strait as well.<sup>6</sup>

The Panamanian freighter *El Capitán* also planned to lie low in Matochkin Strait until the hue and cry died down; and *Benjamin Harrison*, who had originally been making for Moller Bay,

also changed course for the strait and soon caught sight of the other three merchant ships heading for the concealed entrance.<sup>7</sup>

*La Malouine* rounded the four ships up and formed them with difficulty into a single line.

There was a full gale blowing outside the strait, and the corvette's captain had great difficulty giving each ship instructions over the loudhailer. "The crews were greatly excited," wrote Caradus; each greeted the tiny corvette with a terrific cheer as she drew alongside.

By ten o'clock that night, the four ships were safely at anchor in the strait.

One of *Samuel Chase's* crew had gone insane during the previous two days; he was transferred to a rescue ship for medical supervision.<sup>8</sup> In the hours that followed, the ancient 11-knot trawlers *Lord Austin*, *Lord Middleton* and *Northern Gem* also plodded into the strait, making much smoke as they did so.<sup>9</sup>

The worst ordeal of the Royal Navy was over. Here in Matochkin Strait they were relatively safe from surface attack. All the warships were anchored in positions from which their 4-inch armament could be brought to bear on the entrance to the strait.

In the escort vessels, the guncrews got their first sleep for several days and nights, and the talk reverted to the events of 5 and 6 July and the Admiralty's signals about their "duty" to avoid destruction:

Seamen, stokers and petty officers all agreed that during the night of 6th July they had been "shot to pieces" several times over. There had been fear. The minutes passed like days – they weren't hungry or thirsty, but Cook said gallons of tea were drunk nevertheless.

Then there was that air attack two days before – 150 aircraft attacking over a three-hour period:

---

Our Pom-Pom gun aft had been continually jamming and only 150 rounds had been fired. The Oerlikon guns were effective, but the Pom-Pom could well have been replaced by more Oerlikons. During one lull the Supply Officer read aloud from the New Testament to three other ratings. The RDF [radar] worked perfectly; the Asdic was used little and was upset by the closeness of the destroyers from time to time.

And then, in the midst of the reminiscences, a nagging question-mark: “We will want to know why the ships were scattered.” Lieutenant Caradus concluded his diary for 6 July by asking whether the corvettes could have done more: “Perhaps we will hear the full story from SBNO Archangel – if we get there.”

As the day drew to a close, the corvette *Lotus* came slowly in, looking like a Margate pleasure-steamer with three-score survivors crowding her rails; she got a terrific reception. *River Afton*'s survivors were transferred to one of the anti-aircraft ships, and *Pankraft*'s were put aboard one of the American merchantmen.

Commodore Dowding elected to stay in *Lotus*. From midnight onward, corvettes patrolled the entrance to the strait with Asdic, watching for the possible infiltration of a German submarine. There was no sign of the trawler *Ayrshire*, for whom *La Malouine* and other ships had formed “quite a liking.”

So there were now altogether seventeen ships sheltering in Matochkin Strait; unfortunately, only five of them were merchantmen.

WHERE WERE the other merchant ships? At least seven of them were in the northern waters of the Barents Sea, skirting the icefield and heading at their maximum speeds for the coast of Novaya Zemlya. At their head was the American Liberty ship *John Witherspoon*, laden with tanks and ammunition. Behind her, in a disorderly procession strung out over 150 miles, were *Alcoa*

---

*Ranger*, the catapult-aircraft merchantman *Empire Tide*, *Bellingham*, *Hartlebury*, *Olopana* and *Winston-Salem*.

At 10.45 A.M. *Olopana*'s crew spotted a Focke-Wulf aircraft approaching, a large four-engined bomber. As they manned their gun-, fire- and boat-stations, all now expected that the end had come: Captain Stone ordered an "air attack" signal to be broadcast with his ship's position, so sure was he that this was the end.

He also jettisoned all the secret codebooks in a weighted bag and told the wireless operator to add this fact to the signal. But the aircraft did not attack. After circling the ship several times, it made off. "We decided he had radioed in for attack planes," said Stone afterward, "and gave ourselves three or four hours respite."<sup>10</sup> All day long, his lookouts remained posted, and the guncrews stayed at action stations, but still no attack materialised.

The *I./KG.40* Focke-Wulf reconnaissance bomber returned to its base at Trondheim, and by 11.30 A.M. its radioed sighting report was already lying on the desk of the German Admiral Commanding, Arctic, at Narvik – Admiral Schmudt. The Focke-Wulf reported sighting seven ships altogether, "probably PQ.17's fast spearhead," all apparently hugging the ice and heading for Novaya Zemlya. Shortly afterward, the German radio monitoring service confirmed the position of ships there, no doubt in consequence of *Olopana*'s distress signal.<sup>11</sup>

Admiral Schmudt ordered all submarines well up in fuel to be prepared to operate against these seven ships; they were each to transmit a flash signal (*Kurzsignal*) giving their positions to enable him to mount the attack.

DURING THE early hours of 6 July, far to the west of Matochkin Strait, a very generous Fate had led the Soviet tanker *Donbass* to the very spot where the late *Daniel Morgan*'s three lifeboats were drifting. Captain Pavlov invited the American seamen aboard. Although physically exhausted from seventy-two hours' continu-

---

ous action stations and a night in open lifeboats as well, the American gunners volunteered to man the tanker's forward 3-inch gun, and the seamen stood extra lookout watches. The tanker resumed her southerly course heading straight for the White Sea. Soon Pavlov had cause to be grateful to the Americans. A single Junkers 88 delivered two dive-bombing attacks on the tanker; on the second dive, the American guncrew put a shell so close to the diving aircraft that it turned away and made off, with one engine sputtering and losing height.<sup>12</sup>

In the meantime, at about 5:30 A.M., the 7,180-ton *John Witherspoon* had run out of the fogbank in which she had been sheltering for the previous ten hours. Like *Daniel Morgan*, she had been one of the freighters who had vainly tried to keep up with the anti-aircraft ship *Palomares* and her anti-submarine escort the previous day, until they had altered course and broken away from her. As *John Witherspoon* emerged from the fogbank, she caught sight of a German U-boat on a parallel course on the horizon. The submarine dived, leaving the Americans in no doubt of its intentions. A running fight ensued in which the American freighter's 4-inch surface gun fired nineteen rounds at the periscope wake closing in on them. Gradually the U-boat was brought astern of the freighter, and she fell back. The gun ceased firing.

By 12:30 P.M. *John Witherspoon* believed herself to be twenty miles off Novaya Zemlya, and her Master, Captain Clark, decided to make a dash straight for the entrance to the White Sea. He brought the ship round to an almost southerly course.<sup>13</sup> The weather was now bright and clear, with only a slight swell.

At 4.40 P.M., *U-255* (Lieutenant-Commander Reinhard Reche) fired a spread of four torpedoes at her, and his thirty-hour pursuit of this obstinate freighter was over. From 800 yards away, he saw a 200-foot pillar of smoke mushroom out of the ship. The ship lost way and veered to starboard. She began to blow off

steam, but showed no signs of settling.<sup>14</sup> Reche prepared to fire a fifth torpedo from his stern tube. Later *John Witherspoon's* Second Engineer wrote:

*6th July:* Captain decided to head for White Sea and try to run for it. At 4.40 P.M., while I was on watch, submarine fired torpedo into holds number 2 and 3, and a second torpedo into holds number 4 and 5. Orders to abandon ship. Secured engine and crew sent up on deck. When I arrived on deck, all boats that were usable [were] away except the Chief Officer's. Jumped into his boat and made off from vessel. Submarine came up and put another torpedo in ship which broke in half and sank.

Commander Reche watched the ship's death-throes from some distance. One of his officers filmed the lifeboats with a cine-camera while another kept a machine-gun trained on their occupants. Reche saw the fore- and aftermast incline slightly toward each other and knew the ship's back was broken. *John Witherspoon* sank like a stone soon after.

Reche took *U-255* alongside the lifeboats, looking for the Captain. His officers gave the American seamen cigarettes, water, and cognac, and told them which way to steer to avoid a pack of ice lying across their path to the White Sea. "We lost one man, a sailor – Otis Lydinge – who was drowned," wrote the Second Engineer in his diary. "We pulled him out of the water, looked at him, seen he was dead and let him go back in. Ships had been going all around us, and the wireless operator told me that some guys would get off the air to let the others who were sinking faster send out SOS's."<sup>15</sup>

Commander Reche did not broadcast a victory signal to Narvik. His purpose in firing four torpedoes at the American ship had been to prevent her from getting off a distress signal, and in this

he had been successful. He wanted nothing to betray where he was lurking now.

WHAT WAS GREETED at higher levels as “close co-operation” between aircraft and submarines had its bitter moments for the submarine commanders.

At 12 knots, the 5,411-ton American *Pan Atlantic* had been heading steadily southward for the entrance to the White Sea. Her Master, Captain J. O. Siebert, had seven lookouts posted, each furnished with binoculars; she was keeping wireless silence, and no other vessel was in sight. Her chances of reaching Russia seemed good, but below the surface of the sea at least two submarines were already manoeuvring into attacking positions, each unaware of the other’s presence. *Pan Atlantic* was laden with tanks, steel, nickel, aluminium, foodstuffs, two oil stills and – for some reason which people knowing the Soviet Union’s capacity for explosives’ manufacture will find hard to understand – a considerable quantity of cordite.

One of the submarines was Commander Bohmann’s *U-88*, which had sunk two of the convoy’s ships the previous day. Early that morning he had sighted smoke clouds on the horizon a hundred miles off Matochkin Strait, and on investigating he found a lone merchantman steadily ploughing southward. He persisted in his chase throughout the morning and afternoon, often plunging through banks of fog, covering a hundred miles in the southward chase. Now, at 6 P.M., he was manoeuvring into position for his attack.<sup>16</sup>

At 6.10 P.M., however, a single Junkers 88 dive-bombed *Pan Atlantic*; two bombs struck the hold containing the cordite, and the ship’s bows were blown off, bringing the foremast down on her pilot house. No distress signal could be sent out, so sudden was the attack, and within three brief minutes the furious U-boat commander saw his prize slip beneath the waves, taking

---

twenty-six of her crew with her and casting the rest into the sea.<sup>17</sup> A second angry U-boat commander – Commander Bielfeld, fresh from sinking *River Afton* – watched the same spectacle from not far away.

His *U-703* had also been hunting the freighter all morning and afternoon. During the morning he had fired two torpedoes at her, having estimated the target's speed with the greatest possible precision; both missed. At 6.45 P.M. he surfaced and radioed to Narvik that his victim had now been “sunk by an aircraft.” He had only one torpedo left, and 68 cubic metres of diesel oil.<sup>18</sup> Bielfeld's report meant that of the original ten submarines available to him, Schmundt would soon have only six fully operational. But three more, their torpedo-racks full and their fuel tanks brimming, would shortly be joining the attack – *U-251*, *U-376* and *U-408*.

They would have little chance of finding the enemy except by patrolling a line south of the merchantmen's last reported positions. According to the latest air reconnaissance, there was an ice-barrier at the southern end of Novaya Zemlya, extending to the entrance to the White Sea; the ships would have to skirt round this to reach Archangel. Admiral Schmundt directed the three new submarines to take up adjacent patrols at the western end of this ice-barrier, ready to catch these last few ships just as they believed that they were safe. The existing submarines he allowed to continue their freelance activities a little longer.<sup>19</sup>

In the Fifth Air Force's view, there were now no more than ten to twelve ships surviving from convoy PQ.17; some of these were heading north-eastward, while others were heading south-east and due south. “Armed reconnaissance” was continuing.<sup>20</sup>

The first squadron of *KG.26* – the unit that had launched the intrepid low-level torpedo attack on the convoy on 4 July – attempted to mount a second large-scale operation against all the surviving freighters during the afternoon, and in particular

against a small group of four vessels sighted off the north-west coast of Novaya Zemlya. The weather deteriorated, however, and no ships were found at all.

Late on the evening of 6 July, Naval Group North telephoned Admiral Schmundt's office with a report that an aircraft had sighted the British tanker damaged the previous day, drifting and abandoned in the northern reaches of the Barents Sea. Its cargo of oil would be of the highest value to the Reich. Group North suggested that she be taken in tow by a submarine. Schmundt must have choked to hear his superiors suggesting such an operation. The tanker (*Aldersdale*) was very far from the closest submarine, and in any case the suggestion was "technically not feasible." Kiel insisted that the tanker be dealt with one way or another.

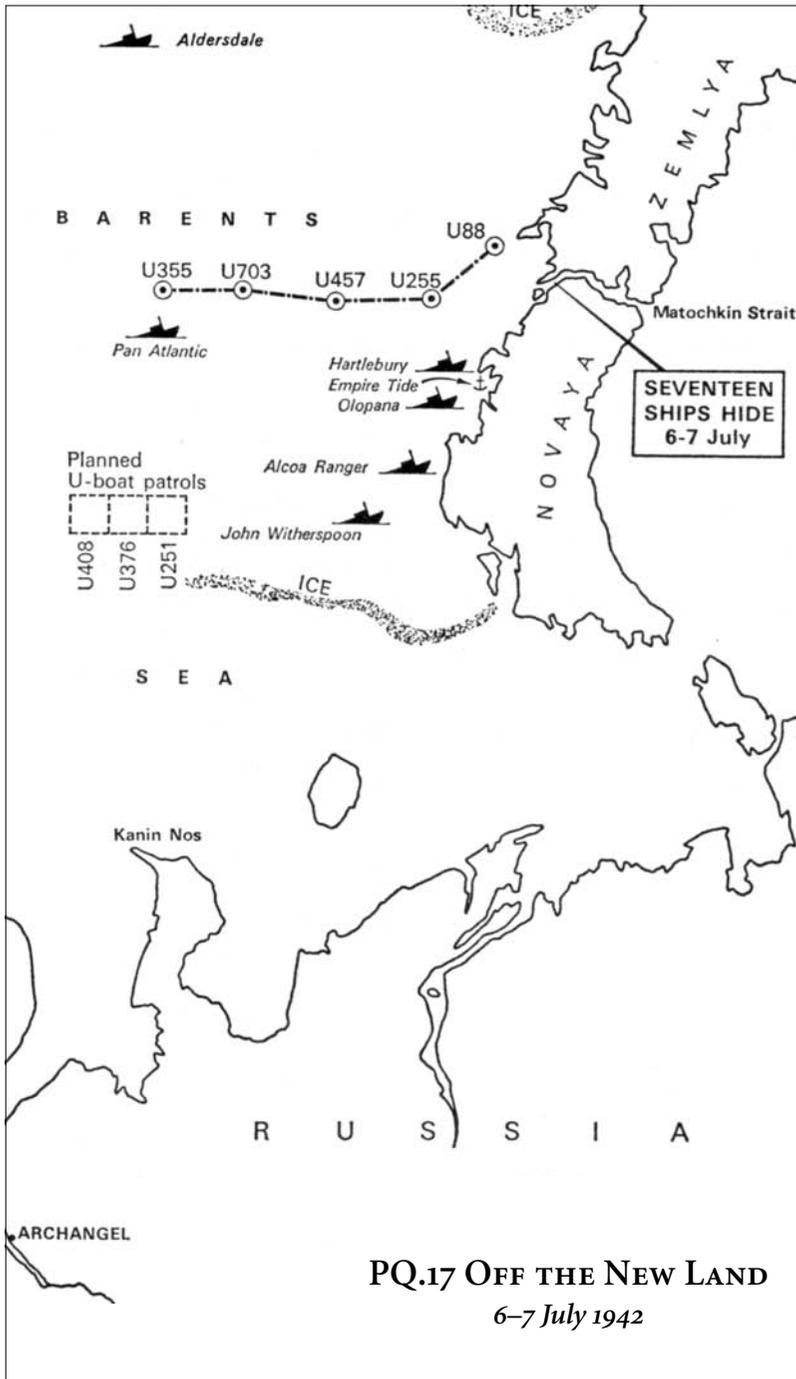
At 11.40 P.M. Admiral Schmundt wirelessed his submarines:

1. Reche [*U-255*], Bohmann [*U-88*] and La Baume [*U-355*] – report position;
2. La Baume – search for tanker reported drifting at pinpoint [AC.]3571 by Air Force at 8.30 A.M.\*

An hour later, Schmundt received word from Commander Reche that at 11 P.M. he had not been far off the southern island of Novaya Zemlya, but several hundred miles from the crippled *Aldersdale*.

At the same time a belated signal reached Schmundt from the young submarine commander Günther La Baume (*U-355*) reporting that he, Bohmann (*U-88*) and Bielfeld (*U-703*) were waiting not far west of Reche's *U-255*, with the intention of operating jointly against any groups of ships or stragglers that might now run across their sights. The weather was favourable, he

\* Brandenburg had reported his position earlier that evening.



added, although fogbanks were hampering them from time to time.

The German High Command now believed there were no more than about seven ships remaining from the convoy. On the evening of 6 July, the German Naval Staff recorded:

This is the biggest success ever achieved against the enemy with one blow – a blow executed with exemplary collaboration between air force and submarine units. A heavy laden convoy of ships, some of which have been under way for several months from America, has been virtually wiped out despite the most powerful escort, just before reaching its destination.

A wicked blow has been struck at Russian war production, and a deep breach torn in the enemy's shipping capacity.

The effect of this battle is not unlike a battle lost by the enemy in its military, material and morale aspects. In a three-day operation, fought under the most favourable conditions, the submarines and air force have achieved what had been the intention of the operation "*The Knight's Move*," the attack of our surface units on the convoy's merchant ships.<sup>21</sup>

As 6 July drew to a close, Schmundt had heard nothing that might lead him to suspect that seventeen ships were now sheltering in Matochkin Strait; all attention was concentrated on those that were still at sea. If the German victory claims so far were accurate, how could there possibly be more ships elsewhere?

BY THE EARLY HOURS of 7 July, the mood among the lone merchant ships, still struggling toward Novaya Zemlya, was distinctly ugly. As Captain Stone, Master of *Olopana*, recorded, some members of his crew had been without sleep for three or four days, and in the engine-room "certain unlicensed personnel were par-

ticularly upset.” His ship, laden with explosives, phosphorus, lorries and high-octane petrol,\* had been making its way along the ice-barrier, heading for three bays shown on his charts behind Cape Speedwell, where his men could get some rest.

Now that they had been sighted by a Focke-Wulf reconnaissance aircraft, they would have to abandon that idea. When they reached the bays, they found them blocked by ground ice, and the uninhabited, mountainous country bordering them was the most inhospitable and forbidding the seamen had ever seen. It was no place for castaways, still less a venue for a ship without any chart of these waters. The only sailing directions Captain Stone possessed advised all ships to keep 5 to 8 miles off the coast of Novaya Zemlya, as it had not been properly surveyed.

With the last prospect of sleep now gone, the trouble among the seamen in *Olopana* grew. Captain Stone summoned them to his mess room, and “suggested” to them that their position was rather more healthy than that of the hundred or so seamen they had left drifting 300 miles out to sea in lifeboats thirty-six hours before.

“I was assured they were feeling better about the situation,” Stone wrote.

During the morning he discussed with his Chief Officer the pros and cons of heading for Moller Bay, on the south-western coast of Novaya Zemlya, and seeking refuge there for several days. According to the sailing directions, there was a small inhabited settlement there, with a ship calling once every September.

Captain Stone unsealed his secret orders: they listed certain rendezvous positions in the Barents Sea through which the convoy would normally have passed; ships were also warned against

\* Again it is a matter of some surprise that explosives and petrol were being shipped over such a dangerous route to the Soviet Union, one of the world’s largest producers of both commodities, when that country needed heavy armaments and aircraft to a far greater degree.

“cutting corners.”\* Stone could only read this as a warning that large tracts of the sea were mined. Would not Moller Bay have been mined by the Russians too?

On the other hand, on average nineteen days were fogbound in these parts during July. Stone was inclined to accept the risk of the open sea, and the refuge offered by fog, rather than chance the uncertainties of an uncharted bay.

He would head due south down the coast, keeping the recommended 10 miles out to sea, then make a dash for the White Sea. “The unknown factors,” he commented, “were that two vessels had been torpedoed south of us that day.” One had been heard to broadcast that she was hit by three torpedoes – most probably *John Witherspoon*. The other had radioed only that she was transmitting a distress signal, but the signal itself had not been received. Their unknown attacker was the risk that Captain Stone was taking, as he quelled the incipient mutiny below decks and told his men he was heading straight for the White Sea.

THE INCREASE in the number of sightings of merchant ships heading toward Novaya Zemlya raised in Admiral Schmundt’s mind the possibility that they might be planning to break through Matochkin Strait into the Kara Sea. He thought it more likely, however, that they would scuttle southward along the western coast of the massive islands, as far as the White Sea. He proposed to stake his operational submarines on this belief.

When Bohmann in *U-88* reported during the morning that he intended to search for a ship sighted by the Air Force just to the north-west of the entrance to Matochkin Strait, and then move somewhat closer inshore, Schmundt did not interfere. In this

\* Cf. the secret instructions for a “Straggler’s Route” issued by Commander A. C. Roberts, RN, Naval Control Service Officer, Iceland: “It is imperative that you should adhere strictly to the route and make no attempt to cut corners.”

way Bohmann would be well placed to trap any vessels planning to break out through Matochkin Strait, as well as those just creeping down the coast.

By 12:30, indeed, it seemed to Schmundt that freelance operations promised little further success. He wirelessed to La Baume and Bielfeld that, after the former had finished off the crippled *Aldersdale* and the latter had dealt with a freighter whose incautious wireless manners had enabled the German monitoring service to position her with great accuracy, they and three other submarine commanders – Brandenburg, Reche and Bohmann – were to establish an east-west patrol line, each U-boat patrolling a beat (*Schlag*) of 40 miles, with the line extending right in to the *northern* side of the entrance to Matochkin Strait.<sup>22</sup>

What he did not realise was that by the time he issued this order, the strait itself was already full of fast vessels which had reached it the previous day, and only a very few were still plodding down from the north.

Early that morning, as Commander Reche's *U-255* was heading northward up the coast of Novaya Zemlya to take up station, he sighted two ships headed toward him, about 40 miles from the place where he had torpedoed *John Witherspoon* the day before. He quickly brought his U-boat into firing position and emptied tubes II and IV at the second of the two ships, the American freighter *Bellingham*; the first ship had already passed out of his field of fire. One of the torpedoes hit the ship, punching a hole in her starboard side, but the warhead failed to explode and *Bellingham* escaped before Commander Reche's eyes.\*

\* According to *Bellingham*'s officers, the torpedo's detonator exploded but not its booster charge. It punched a dent in the bulkhead "the size of a tin hat" only 4 inches from one of the ship's ribs, about 14 feet below the water line. The jolt was sufficient to throw several members of the crew off their feet and smash crockery. Had it not hit near the support, the torpedo would probably have gone right through.<sup>23</sup>

---

Reche almost immediately sighted another lone freighter, *Alcoa Ranger*, steadily approaching over the northern horizon at 13 knots and making no attempt at zigzagging. Ninety minutes later, a single torpedo from Reche had torn a large hole in the ship's No. 2 hold, and the ship "settled forward slightly, then lost way blowing off steam." The crew abandoned ship, during which operation "the Master used very poor judgement and no leadership," according to the Armed Guard Report. Reche was now down to his last three torpedoes, and he could not afford to use one on the *coup de grâce*. Instead, the U-boat surfaced and fired six rounds from its gun into *Alcoa Ranger* from a short distance.

Then the submarine came alongside the Master's lifeboat [continued the Armed Guard Report] and [its officers] asked in broken English the name of the ship, destination and cargo [which Reche noted as "aircraft"], gave land direction and took pictures; inquired as to whether the lifeboats had sufficient provisions, and disappeared on the surface in a southerly direction.<sup>24</sup>

The ship sank four hours later. Far away to the north, the British merchant ship *Empire Tide* had emerged from the fog just in time to see the American ship hit even as the British officers surveyed her through binoculars.

Not far from the torpedoed ship, they saw no fewer than three German submarines sitting on the surface, one of which detached itself from the rest and began heading toward them at speed. *Empire Tide's* Master, Captain Harvey, needed no prompting. He immediately rang telegraphs for "all possible speed," hauled the vessel round tightly to the north-west and retreated up the coast. Only when he was satisfied that he had shaken off his pursuer did he turn away from his headlong flight, nosing into Moller Bay (also known as Mali Karmakulski). It was not mined, as

---

*Olopana* had feared, and here Captain Harvey hid his bulky merchant ship behind an island, resolving to lie low until the British naval authorities could send sufficient escort forces to ensure his ship's safe passage to Archangel.<sup>25</sup>

## 2

THE FIRST of the convoy's ships to reach north Russia was not a merchant ship but one of the Royal Navy's escort vessels – the corvette *Dianella*.<sup>26</sup> She had berthed at Archangel early on 7 July. Her commanding officer, Lieutenant Rankin, was immediately summoned by Naval launch to Norway House, to explain to Captain G. O. Maund what had happened to PQ.17. Maund was Senior British Naval Officer, Archangel.

All that Maund had so far received were the signals of many merchant vessels in distress and a series of garbled messages from the Admiralty, among the latest of which was that from the First Sea Lord requesting Maund and Admiral Bevan – the SBNO North Russia – to arrange for a search for any survivors by all possible means.

Lieutenant Rankin saw a sheaf of Naval messages on Maund's desk. The latter explained to him that the situation appeared to be that there were up to ten ships out in the eastern Barents Sea, and probably twice that number below it. Somehow, he had to organise the rescue of survivors as best he could. He had appealed to Captain J. H. F. Crombie, RN, to despatch his First Minesweeping Flotilla to round up as many survivors as possible and escort the remaining ships to port. Crombie had sternly refused to undertake this task: his flotilla was in North Russia for minesweeping duties. Crombie's seniority was greater than Maund's, so there the matter had to rest.

Maund urged Lieutenant Rankin to turn his corvette round and conduct a lone – and extremely hazardous – search for life-

boats. Rankin agreed to take his ship out as soon as a minor radio fault had been repaired and she had been refuelled.

In Polyarnoe, the SBNO North Russia, Admiral Bevan, had only one elderly fishing trawler in his command. She was skippered by a Captain Drake, RNVR, of Plymouth. Bevan asked the Russians to send out vessels to pick up the Allied seamen, but they replied – probably truthfully – that they had no ships available for this task.

Captain Drake volunteered to take his unarmed trawler out alone. Bevan was able to give him only a rough idea where to find survivors. The plucky officer sailed with one young doctor and a week's supply of provisions to look for lifeboats from the convoy's casualties.<sup>27</sup>

At midnight the corvette *Dianella* also backed out of her berth at Archangel, having taken on 235 tons of fuel oil, enough for an eleven-day rescue voyage. These two small naval craft were independently commissioned with the task of searching several hundred thousand square miles of sea.

EARLY ON THE AFTERNOON of 7 July, a special announcement was broadcast on all German Home Service stations, preceded by the ritual fanfare and drums. The BBC's confidential monitoring report stated that "exceptional prominence" had been given to the announcement, the German High Command's first communiqué on the convoy battle, issued from the Führer's headquarters.<sup>28</sup>

SPECIAL ANNOUNCEMENT.

The High Command of the Armed forces announces: since 2nd July 1942 a large-scale operation has been carried out against enemy convoy traffic bound for the Soviet Union, by air and naval units in the waters between North Cape and Spitzbergen, 300 miles off the northern Norwegian coast.

Freiheit und Brot

**VÖLKISCHER BEOBSACHTER**

Kampfblatt der nationalsozialistischen Bewegung Großdeutschlands

Berliner Ausgabe  
18. Aest. / 55. Jahrg. / Einzelpreis 15 Pf. / Abopreis 20 Pf. (Inhalt im nachfolg. H. 10 Pf.)  
Berlin, Mittwoch, 8. Juli 1942

---

**Der Vernichtungsschlag gegen den großen Geleitzug im Eismeer**

**Trotz stärkster Sicherung 192400 BRT.!**

---

**Verfolgung der Sowjets wird über Woronesch hinaus fortgesetzt**

Am 7. Juli...

**Woronesch — Sewastopol — Eismeer**

VB. Berlin, 7. Juli.

**Das Ende von Sewastopol**

Von unserer mit Spezialauftrag beauftragten Korrespondentin Elisabeth Schmidt

---

**Wir geben in folgendem An ersten genauen Bericht über die Tragödie-Schicksal im Nordischen Eismeer, jedoch bezüglich die Erträge der Luftwaffe-schifferei: über die Taten der deutschen U-Boote, die einen 70.000 BRT. auf den Grund schickten, liegt noch keine Schlußfolgerung vor. (Vergl. Bilder auf Seite 2)**

Völkischer Beobachter's front page, 8 July 1942

Bomber formations and German submarines attacked a large Anglo-American convoy in the Arctic Ocean and destroyed the major part of it.

The convoy consisted of 38 merchant vessels and was carrying a cargo of aeroplanes, tanks, ammunition and foodstuffs. It was bound for Archangel and was very strongly protected by heavy enemy naval units, destroyers and corvettes.

In close collaboration between the Navy and the German Air Force, one heavy American cruiser and 19 merchantmen totalling 122,000 BRT were sunk by bombers, nine ships totalling 70,400 BRT by U-boats, making a total of 29 ships of 192,400 BRT.

The remainder of the completely dispersed convoy continues to be attacked. A large number of American sailors was rescued by rescue planes and taken prisoner.<sup>29</sup>

The German claim that a "cruiser" had been sunk led to a good-natured exchange of signals between the three cruisers of

Hamilton's force heading for Iceland. HMS *Norfolk*'s Captain Bellars signalled the two American heavy cruisers keeping perfect station close to him: "German radio claims one heavy American cruiser sunk with convoy. Which of the two of you is it?" With easy naval humour, *Wichita*'s Captain Hill flashed back: "Rank has its privileges, so it must have been the *Tuscaloosa*."

When Bellars countered that he was certain that the *Norfolk* hadn't been sunk, as he did not feel a bit like a ghost, Hill sceptically replied that his cruiser had been "attending *Norfolk*'s wake all afternoon."<sup>30</sup>

IN MATOCHKIN STRAIT, Tuesday, 7 July had dawned fine, with the sky cloudy and the horizon clear. At 1 P.M. Commodore Dowding called a conference of the Masters of the five merchant ships and the escort vessels aboard the anti-aircraft ship *Palomares*, while the corvette *Lotus* maintained an anti-submarine guard on the entrance to the strait. Some of the Masters, headed by Captain John Thevik of *El Capitán*, advocated that the ships should all lie up in the strait until the hue and cry had died down, and then sneak down to Archangel. The high cliffs on either side would afford some protection from dive-bombing.

The warships' officers, and particularly the two anti-aircraft ships' captains, had other views. It was understood that a force of German destroyers was out hunting for them; once a German aircraft had spotted the seventeen ships in the strait, the enemy could mine the entrance or block it with submarines, and then indulge in an orgy of high-level bombing. While the sea outside the strait was invariably foggy, the strait itself seemed to enjoy unusually fine, clear weather. Captain Thevik suggested the Germans would think twice before attacking such a hornet's nest, but he was voted down.

The other ships' captains argued that the last signals that had been received from London could only mean that German sur-

---

face ships were out searching for them, and the escort vessels' captains agreed that the two AA ships should be able to create a sufficient diversion. Commodore Dowding had in the meantime radioed to Archangel a request that they be given fighter escort for the latter part of their journey.

After Lieutenant Bidwell returned from the conference, his corvette *La Malouine* steamed out to take up anti-submarine duties off Cherni Island.

The sky was deceptively blue, but the air had a frosty clarity. In front of the assembled ship's company, the corvette's Irish First Lieutenant dived over the side clad only in bathing trunks for a swim. He barely managed to flounder back to the Jacob's ladder. He was carried aboard, purple with cold and speechless with shock. With the heaters working full blast to little effect in their cabins, the seamen switched on the radio and heard the BBC news report that Alexandria was still being held. Then they picked up the German bulletins, giving the latest news of PQ.17: "German radio claimed 29 ships sunk out of 38 – the remainder were being hunted."<sup>31</sup>

The ships' anchors came up clean and free of mud from the bottom of the strait. Shortly after 7 P.M. on a perfect evening, the minesweeper *Britomart* nosed out of the strait and carried out a final anti-submarine sweep. Soon after, the little convoy – newly disciplined and with a new formation – put out to sea with the intention of heading due south for Cape Kanin Nos and the entrance to the White Sea.

*Lotus*, with Dowding aboard, led the convoy, with *Halcyon* as Senior Officer, Escorts. A trawler was appointed "rescue ship" as *Zamalek* already had 154 survivors on board. Several seamen took photographs of the strait as they left, in the fond belief that they would never see it again.

They had covered 1,600 miles in their dangerous voyage from Iceland; the toughest 900 miles were still to come.<sup>32</sup> It was only a

remnant of PQ.17, but all the same there were still five merchant ships which had somehow to break through to Archangel.

There was some despondency about the little convoy's prospects. The navigating officer of one of the minesweepers found that the course set by *Palomares* (who had taken over Commodore's duties) on advice radioed by the SBNO North Russia was given in all the reference books as being unnavigable at this time of year because of fog and ice.<sup>33</sup> Sure enough, as they steamed out of Matochkin Strait, dense fog closed in on them. One of the freighters, *Benjamin Harrison*, lost the convoy and ran back into the strait for shelter. There was some suspicion among the naval escorts that she had "probably deliberately disappeared on her own." On their radar screens, the escort vessels could see the ships becoming more and more dispersed in the terrifying fog. As the fog thickened and the temperature dropped, the nervous strain became unbearable.

Continuing on a southerly course [wrote Caradus in his diary] and hugging the coast. Signal received that *Dianella* and three Russian destroyers *en route* to join us. Fuel remaining at 8 A.M. was 76 tons. Milk powder is now rationed. Porridge is off and bread is rationed. Potatoes are reduced and rice is being built into the meals. Fate of [anti-submarine trawler] *Ayrshire* is frequently discussed.

The corvettes operated their radar non-stop – a great boon in the dense fog, but its loud whine was a source of constant irritation to the crews. At one stage *La Malouine* sighted the dim shape of a ship looming up through the fog ahead and approached to investigate, "guns at the ready." The shape took substance and became the trawler *Lord Middleton*, falling far behind her station in the convoy. Trawler and corvette were equally relieved to identify each other. The entire convoy began to straggle and lose

formation. Within a few hours they were picking up a new series of distress signals from stricken ships. It was of little comfort to Captain Thevik to know that he had been right: the distress signals were from ships attacked by submarines directly across the route the convoy was taking toward Archangel, 5 miles off the coast of Novaya Zemlya.

SOON AFTER NOON on 7 July, Commander Reche radioed to Admiral Schmudt the news of *U-255*'s latest kill: "Pinpoint AT.4876, two freighters disappeared southward. Have sunk *Alcoa Ranger*, ex New York, 5,116 tons – aircraft. Big merchant vessel broke away to north-west just beforehand. Am following hard." The "big merchant vessel," *Empire Tide*, had hidden in Moller Bay and Commander Reche lost sight of her. Other ships began to appear on the northern horizon, and he set course after these.

It will be remembered that just before 2 P.M. Schmudt had wirelessly to the U-boat commanders La Baume, Bielfeld, Brandenburg, Reche and Bohmann orders to establish a patrol line across the northern approaches to Matochkin Strait. The young Lieutenant-Commander La Baume had also been detailed to finish off the crippled oiler *Aldersdale* first. An hour or two later, however, *Aldersdale* was sighted by Commander Brandenburg's *U-457*, and he gave her the *coup de grâce* with one well-aimed torpedo, before moving off to take up the patrol zone assigned to him by Schmudt.

Schmudt's tactic had assumed that most of the surviving ships of PQ.17 still had to come down the northwestern coast of Novaya Zemlya and either enter or pass Matochkin Strait; it failed to take into account that at that very moment seventeen ships might be passing out of the strait, to the south of the patrol line. A signal arriving from Bohmann's *U-88* at 5:30 P.M. voiced the first fears that they might be laying their trap too late. Bohmann, stationed just off the northern side of the entrance to Matochkin

---

Strait, suggested that the “convoy fragments” had already slipped through the net. In a sweep off Cape Sukhoi Nos he had found nothing. He accordingly asked permission to operate together with La Baume against the crippled British oiler, unaware that Brandenburg had already settled that score. Schmundt commented, “In view of the small number of vessels surviving from the convoy, it would seem most promising for the U-boats to operate against those targets already sighted, and to abandon the idea of occupying these patrol zones.”

So far only La Baume – who had just signalled to this effect – and Reche had sighted the enemy, so Schmundt radioed:

ADMIRAL COMMANDING, ARCTIC, TO “ICE DEVIL”:

All operate against ships reported by La Baume and Reche. Transmit shadowing fixes and homing signals even for single merchantmen.

La Baume’s oiler affair, he added, had been dealt with.

It is not hard to imagine Günther La Baume’s anxiety as this signal was laid before him. He was having a most unfortunate convoy so far: he had had six depth-charges thrown at him on the 2nd; he had lost the convoy completely on the 3rd; in thick fog on 4 July he had found Bear Island far from where it should have been by his reckoning. During 5 July, his U-boat had set upon a number of stragglers but had been surprised by an escort vessel in the fog. He was given the inglorious job of stalking and sinking an abandoned tanker, and even that small morsel was snatched from him by another U-boat.

Finally, at 2:50 P.M. on 7 July, he sighted his first live enemy freighter, a fast merchantman scurrying due south past the entrance to Matochkin Strait and very close inshore.<sup>34</sup> He set off after the vessel, and began closing in on her. Surely he was not now to be cheated of his prize at the last moment yet again?

Through his periscope La Baume could see that the ship was armed with two heavy guns and several anti-aircraft guns.

There was a letter “H” painted on her funnel. From 800 yards he emptied all four main torpedo tubes at the luckless vessel, and hauled *U-355* sharply round to starboard. For forty-seven long seconds, his wireless operator followed the torpedo noises as the weapons ploughed toward their victim, running two fathoms below the surface of the sea.

## 3

WHEN WE SEE an Allied ship despatched, as we have seen twenty sunk in the course of this one convoy, it is difficult not to grow callous – not to steel oneself unconsciously to the familiar tragic sequence of torpedoing and sinking and the sad calling of the roll in the lifeboats. But when this twenty-first ship goes down, it is time to recall sharply and vividly that it was not the ships and cargoes that were being tortured. It was primarily the human beings who manned them who were suffering. They were ordinary seafaring men, whose jobs by their nature were more hazardous than most; but they were also men with characters, with families, and with private hopes and ambitions. There were the brave and the not so brave. But they were people whose passing, as in this ship, would leave problems and sorrows for someone, somewhere.

This description of the end of the *Hartlebury* can symbolise the story of each and every one of the ships that “stayed at sea,” as the German submariners put it of their own fallen.

The brief encounter off the coast of Novaya Zemlya displayed all the grim and pitiless traits of naval warfare at its most cruel. Captain George Stephenson, Master of *Hartlebury*, had already been awarded the OBE for ramming an enemy submarine with another ship on the outward passage in mid-Atlantic some

---

---

months before. He had not stopped to pick up survivors, and when on the return voyage his ship had been singled out by U-boats from the very heart of the convoy's formation, he swore with grim pride that they had sunk him as an act of vengeance for their drowned comrades.

Commander La Baume saw his torpedoes hit, one after another, and through the curtain of spray he watched the ship list to starboard and slow to a halt. The ship's Third Officer, who kept a dramatic diary of the tragedy, described it:

*7th July. 7.40 P.M. Torpedoed. Had just relieved second mate for tea, and walked out on bridge, and literally walked into torpedo which exploded immediately below: terrific crash, everything went black, and was drenched by solid wall of water coming from "monkey island" bringing with it all kinds of debris.*

*Struck heavily on head by something and stunned, my one thought being to get to other side of ship before the second torpedo struck her – great presence of mind, this.*

*Crawled through wheelhouse which was deserted and washing with water, and got on other side just as second torpedo exploded. This time my feet left the deck clear and I landed flat on my back.<sup>36</sup>*

The First Officer, Mr. Gordon, was also thrown to the floor; one arm twisted awkwardly under him, but he was still alive. Inside the radio room, the radio officer had been knocked unconscious by a heavy amplifier falling on him. The ship's radio was smashed beyond repair.

The first torpedo blasted a big hole outside the crew's quarters, and as half a dozen stewards ran out they fell one after the other into the gaping crater in the passage. The second torpedo threw a wave of water which bowled over the Oerlikon gun-platform

---

mounted on the monkey island above the bridge, sweeping the five gunners into the sea. The platform itself collapsed on top of Captain Stephenson, who had rushed out into the wing of the bridge after the first torpedo struck.

Together with a Marine corporal, the First Officer managed to rescue the Master from beneath the twisted steel and concrete blocks pinning him to the deck. Stephenson – a small, solidly built Yorkshireman – seemed to be unhurt apart from a savage gash on his head. Swearing profusely, he tore off his soaking uniform and found a dry overcoat.

The ship was listing heavily, and both engines had stopped. The decks had been corrugated by the force of the explosion, and the boilers were blowing off steam. The resulting painful whistle drowned out every other sound.

Before Captain Stephenson could order the crew to abandon ship, they had rushed the two lifeboats. Each could hold thirty-six men, and the ship had a total complement of fifty-nine including the gunners and the naval signals staff (*Hartlebury* was Vice-Commodore in PQ.17). The starboard lifeboat had, however, been crushed by the second torpedo explosion, and the seamen rushed to the port lifeboat, whether that was their station or not. Several began struggling with its release gear.

Captain Stephenson ran aft to see that the rafts there were released, while the First Officer let himself down the forward bridge ladder to release the rafts stowed on the foremast shrouds. With his one sound arm – the other having been injured by the first torpedo blast – Gordon awkwardly struck at the single hook-and-toggle retaining the port raft, while somebody else took care of the starboard one. The raft suddenly swung into the sea; Gordon dived after it and climbed aboard. The painter would not free itself, so he cut the raft adrift with a pocket knife.<sup>37</sup>

The raft slipped free, and as *Hartlebury* was still under way the ship drifted past him. As his raft drew abreast of the midships,

---

the First Officer saw a scene which made his blood run cold. The one sound lifeboat had collapsed into the sea while full of seamen, and was still being dragged along by the ship by its after fall. The lifeboat had capsized, and righted itself, and now it was completely awash with water, with only its bows and stern showing above the low waves. The sea around it was alive with the drifting, struggling seamen who had been spilled out. The Third Officer, Needham Forth, had reached the port lifeboat and given a cadet orders to lower away on the falls:

Unfortunately Cadet C ——— let go the forward fall, sending the nose of the lifeboat crashing into the sea, where she filled right up, throwing several of the fools who had jumped into her into the water. This terrible accident caused a panic.

Had the lifeboat been empty when lowered, the accident would probably not have happened.

In the meantime, another disaster had occurred amidships. A number of the remaining cooks and firemen had succeeded in swinging out one of the ship's two jollyboats on the single gangway davit, and they had even managed to lower it into the sea with three or four men in it. The boat rapidly sank beneath them, as they had forgotten to put the plugs in. It fell astern, to be washed ashore on the coast of Novaya Zemlya, empty, several days later.\* One of the men who perished with it was the twenty-year-old third radio officer, who had just come off duty when the torpedo struck. This officer, Mr. George Storey, had lost his father in an air-raid on Sheffield, and just before *Hartlebury* had finally sailed for PQ.17 his mother had begged the first radio officer, Mr. Richard Fearnside, to “take good care of George” because she had “nobody else” but him.<sup>38</sup>

\* The *Hartlebury*'s empty jollyboat was put to good use by the shipwrecked crews of *Olopana* and *Winston-Salem*.

---

*Hartlebury* was now settling fast and falling off to starboard. Fearnside struggled out of his wrecked radio room and ran to the starboard side, where some men had successfully launched a raft from the stern. There were already thirteen people on the raft, which was designed to hold only eight or nine at most. The raft was below water, and most of the men were up to their chests in water as Fearnside climbed aboard. They refused to make room for him to sit, and for the rest of the night he and three others were forced to stand. This saved their lives.

First Officer Gordon's raft made fast momentarily to the flooded port lifeboat. Eight men climbed down a wire rope one after another to the swamped lifeboat, walked across its thwarts and climbed aboard the raft, barely wetting their feet in the process. With a full complement of nine men, Gordon cut his raft adrift. The Second and Third Officers appeared at the rail overhead just as the raft began to drift away. There was still a score of men aboard the stricken ship, with no rafts or lifeboats to take them off. Their only hope now lay in the single large flooded lifeboat, still being towed slowly along by its after fall. The Third Officer and many others slid down ropes into this boat.

My only hope [he later stated] was the port lifeboat now full of water, and hanging by the after fall, with several of the crew inside and apparently dozens shouting and crying in the water. Slid down a rope and got aboard. All of us up to our waists in icy water.

Ten minutes after firing the first four torpedoes, La Baume fired a fifth from *U-355*'s stern tube at a range of 1,000 yards. He saw for himself the tall plume of spray and smoke billowing 400 feet into the air, and the funnel and bits of superstructure blown into the sea. The ship's back was broken. *Hartlebury* immediately took a violent list to port:

---

Third torpedo struck home right abreast of us, lurching the side of the ship right over us, and we all thought she was coming right over on us. Able Seaman Dixon, a worthless type of individual at any time, was shouting and screaming about us all being doomed.

Third Officer Needham Forth was last but one to climb aboard the flooded lifeboat, sliding down a steel rope which had originally held the lifeboat in its cradle. The others began to shout that the ship was rolling over, and he jumped the last few feet. Harold Spence, the ship's young Second Officer, was climbing down hand-over-hand into the boat when an eighteen-year-old assistant steward already in the boat, Arthur Spuhler, grabbed an axe and hacked away the one rope still binding the lifeboat to the doomed merchantman. The strands suddenly parted and the lifeboat dropped back astern. The hapless Second Officer was left suspended over the sea, with only the waves below him.

THE SCORE or so seamen in the swamped lifeboat tried desperately to bale out the water, but every little wave swamped back over the lifeboat's gunwales; only its buoyancy tanks could be holding it afloat at all. With a single oar, the Third Officer tried to manoeuvre the heavy boat round to head into the waves, but by himself it was impossible. He wrote: "Everybody else was apparently resigned to their fates." He knew that so long as the lifeboat remained as crowded as it was, there was no hope of making it seaworthy.

Soon after the third torpedo struck, the ship broke into three sections and began her final plunge. As the stern section sank, the poopdeck was levered into the air, and the seamen saw a single figure running desperately up the sloping deck toward the stern, now high above the waves. The stern rose higher and higher, until the motionless screws were 40 feet above the sea. Water

was cascading off the sinking ship, and the seamen could see right through the bottom of her No. 5 hatch, where the last torpedo had struck. All eyes in the lifeboat followed the figure as it climbed over the stern rails and tottered across the ship's stern, now almost horizontal, to jump into the sea far below. It was Captain Stephenson.

He landed close to the Third Officer's lifeboat, which picked him up. As Forth turned round to have one last look at the dying *Hartlebury*, he saw another man aboard her, climbing the ladder from the main deck to the bridge. At the top of the ladder, the man turned round and they saw it was the Second Officer, Harold Spence, who had been left hanging in mid-air when the lifeboat was cut adrift. They saw him stripping off his life-jacket, his coat and finally his cap. He had resigned himself to his fate. As the merchant ship finally plunged groaning beneath the waves, the last sight they had of him was of a figure waving to them from the bridge. Then the waves poured over him.<sup>39</sup>

It was one small personal tragedy in the vast canvas of this disastrous convoy. Spence had been married just ten days when the *Hartlebury* sailed from Sunderland on her last voyage.\*

A THICK SEA MIST had sprung up. Out of this swirling mist, its engines purring, appeared the German submarine *U-355*, the icy water running off its back and half a dozen sailors crowding its conning-tower. Lieutenant-Commander La Baume commented that night that it was not a sight for weak stomachs: many of the merchant seamen had lost their lives, and the position of most

\* Fifty years later, Spence's widow idly purchased a copy of this book on her local railway station bookstore in southern England, and wrote the author a letter that began with the chilling words: "I have just bought a copy of your book *The Destruction of Convoy PQ.17*, and I have read for the first time of how my husband died." She had received only a standard notification from the Admiralty, with no information as to how or when.

---

of those on the rafts and in the lifeboat was quite hopeless. *U-355*'s Second Officer approached one of the rafts, the Chief Officer's, and asked the ship's tonnage, name and cargo; all these questions were accurately answered. The submarine officers gave the men on the raft a course for the nearest land, while machine-guns were constantly trained on them. Then a roll of black bread wrapped in silver paper was handed over, together with a bottle of gin and a bottle of rum, and the raft was pushed away.

Apart from one or two rafts with only one or two seamen on them, there were two rafts and one lifeboat carrying all the ship's survivors. The Chief Officer's raft had nine men aboard; the radio officer's had fourteen all told. And there was the one flooded lifeboat, with twenty seamen sitting almost totally immersed in it, including the Captain and the Third Officer.

The latter officer's diary takes up the story: "In the midst of all our troubles, the submarine now approached, looming up out of the mist."

Keeping well clear of the lifeboat, the submarine's officers asked for the Captain. Stephenson had already warned his crew not to divulge his identity, and he certainly did not look an officer in his bedraggled topcoat. The seamen began to hope the Germans would pick them up, at least long enough for them to empty out the lifeboat and make it seaworthy, but the Germans were in an aggressive mood. A voice shouted the familiar taunt from the conning-tower: "You're not Communists are you? Then why are you fighting for the Communists?" Then *U-355* sheered off, afraid perhaps that if they approached too closely they would sink the wretched craft altogether. A signal reporting their victory was wirelessly to Admiral Schmundt at Narvik.\*

\* Conscience was perhaps pricking the young U-boat commander when he noted in his Brief Report five days later that *Hartlebury*'s cargo was "tanks, aircraft, for Russia."

Submarine surfaced and came up to us [wrote Needham Forth in his diary] but only to ask ship's name, and then cleared off, leaving us in such a state it seemed at the time to be one of the cruellest things possible.

To the men on Chief Officer Gordon's raft, the Germans had given bread and liquor. More important than that, they had told them they were barely 3 miles offshore.

To the seamen in the Captain's lifeboat, however, they had given nothing and said nothing. Left alone in the silent mist, nearly all the seamen gave up the ghost and died in the next few hours. Forth's diary continues:

The crew began to die one by one now: first, fireman Hutchinson; then mess boy; AB Clark; poor old Sibbit – "Sparks" and a fine fellow; then 16-year-old cabin boy; then AB Dixon and Hansen. These were all dead inside two hours, and had to be unceremoniously pushed overboard to lighten the boat.

A little later, chief engineer; galley boy, another fireman died; and by midnight chief and second stewards, cook, a gunner and OS Jessen had also gone.

What a tragedy, and only 3 miles from land. All went the same way, became sleepy and mind wandering slightly and then eyes glazing over and finish – and apparently not a bad death.

Very bad shape myself, had stayed up to waist in water trying to handle oar for an hour and I was slowly aware of the fact that I was going the same way as the others – the water having a stupefying effect on me.

So I struggled out and scrambled up among the gang in the bows, where we huddled together, with boat rolling and severe waves washing along her whole length. Everyone cramped together, frozen, feet absolutely stiff and white.

Weather calmed down at midnight, but not before I had been badly seasick on top of other discomforts. There were now only five of us left: Captain Stephenson, myself, AB May, fireman Storey, assistant steward Spuhler.

Later, the Third Officer expanded upon this grim outline of events. Geoffrey Dixon, who had been among the first to go, had not been in the boat more than an hour before he started going off his head; he began to rave that they had no hope, they were all going to die. He had been sitting up to his armpits in water.

After a time, he began ducking his head under water, trying to drown himself; the others restrained him, but after a while he seemed to drift off to sleep. Gradually his eyes opened, and from his awkward position the Third Officer guessed that he was dead. He and another seaman lifted the unfortunate Able Seaman over the side of the boat into the sea, and pushed him gently under.

Many of the firemen had come straight up from the stokehold, and were clad only in vests and shirtsleeves. They were the first to go.

Sibbit was the next to drift off in this way that I noticed: he had been a church-fittings salesman before the war. He was cool, calm and collected, but just gave up all hope. He wasn't even sitting immersed in water, sitting as he was right up in the bows. He fell asleep, and the next moment I noticed he wasn't normal any more.

Spuhler, the young steward, volunteered to swim with a line around his waist to a nearby raft which looked more seaworthy than the boat. He had swum only half-way when his heavy clothing began to drag him under. They hauled him back barely alive into the lifeboat on Stephenson's orders. Spuhler lost both his feet as a result of his gallant attempt.

As the dead British seamen were slipped one by one over the lifeboat's gunwales in melancholy procession, the boat began to lift out of the sea, and now when the others baled out the water it no longer swamped back in.

By early morning, there were only the five of the original twenty seamen left in the lifeboat, too weak and depressed to care much about survival. Even so, with a superhuman effort by the sole surviving fireman, John Storey, they managed to get the lifeboat's mast partially stepped, then ran up the orange canvas sail.

Despite their feeble struggle, they could not get the mast completely vertical, and the sail could not fill with enough wind to drive the boat forward. Without uttering a word, fireman Storey jumped over the side of the lifeboat and swam away into the mist. The seamen hardly gave him a glance as he floundered out of sight. They called out weakly to him twice, but made no effort to put about after him.

Now there were only four.

DEATH REAPED a rich harvest among the fourteen men on Radio Officer Fearnside's raft as well. The men who reached it first had forced the last four to stand; only these four survived the night. The first to die was a fireman, dressed only in a vest and trousers; the next was a galley hand, clad in thin kitchen clothing.

All the time that these men were dying, the Second Engineer, Joseph Tighe, was mumbling and moaning.

He kept on singing the Twenty-Third Psalm over and over again. *The Lord is my Shepherd*, which he knew off by heart.

Then he began to cry that he wished he was home in Glasgow. He was the last to die.

He drifted off to sleep, and we tried to keep him awake, rubbing his feet, shaking him, talking to him, but it was no use.<sup>38</sup>

Some hours later, a small raft with one of the naval gunners in a khaki duffel coat drifted close to them. He appeared completely dazed and made no response to their shouts. When the two rafts drew together, the radio officer saw another rating was lying dead on the bottom of the raft. The body was tipped out, and the food and tablet boxes were broken open.

Gradually the spirits of the five surviving men began to revive. For two more days their raft bobbed and swayed among the waves, while all around them the mist obscured the horizon.

Finally the fog lifted, and they saw they had been drifting in and out of a small bay on the coast of Novaya Zemlya all the time. The shore was barely a mile away, and they could see a large American ship beached 2 miles along the coast. The Americans put out a boat with four men aboard, and these took the raft in tow.

The nine seamen who had abandoned *Hartlebury* on the Chief Officer's raft fared considerably better after the U-boat left them. Not one of them succumbed. Chief Officer Gordon passed round the bottles of German liquor at regular intervals, and with land only 3 miles off they knew they would not be at sea for more than a few hours. They erected a small canvas shelter for themselves, broke open a can of whale oil they found in a locker, and within half an hour all of them were massaging their feet with the oil as a precaution against frostbite.

In the early hours of the morning, they came across the flooded lifeboat, the shadow of death still hanging heavily over it.

We saw a lifeboat appearing out of the mist, with its sail half up and half down, and we moved over to it with our paddles. We found it was our lifeboat, which had been full of water and sinking when we left the ship.

It had the Captain and Third Officer and two others and a body on board. We got rid of the body, and with my men in



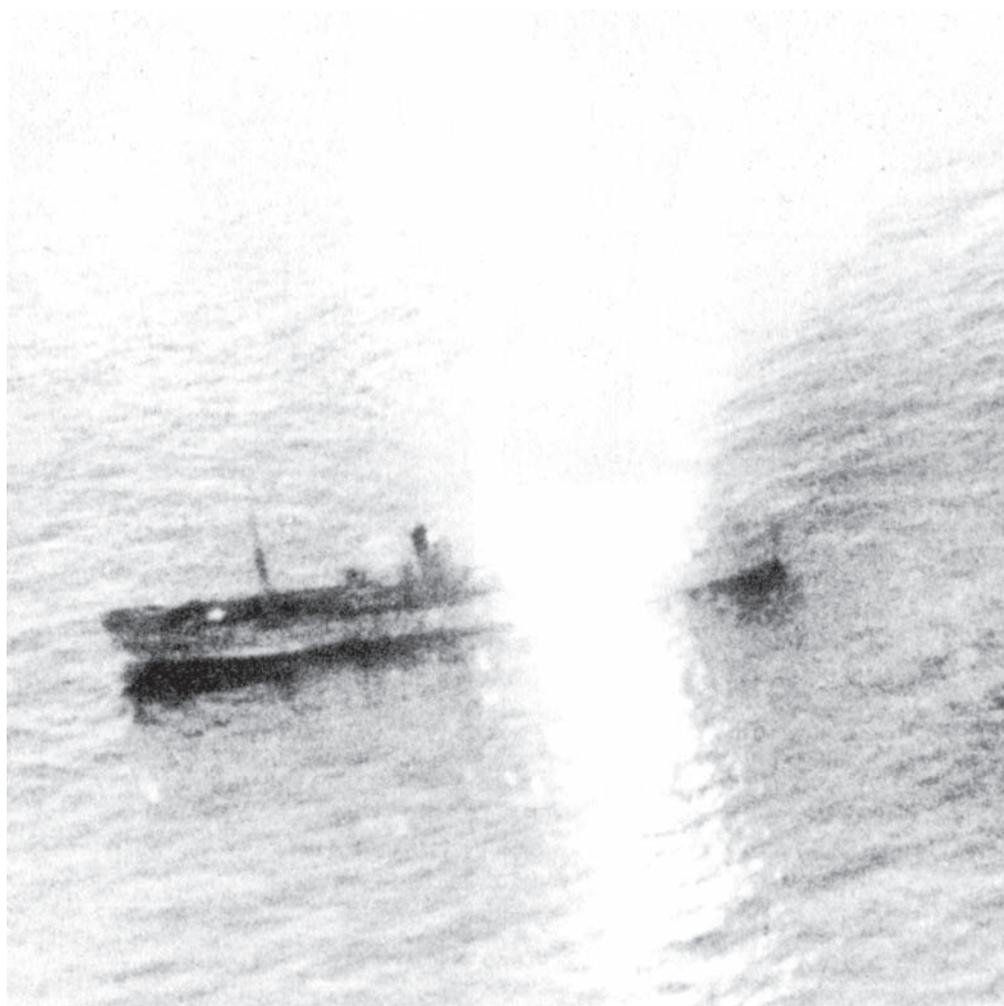
Lieutenant James Caradus, *La Malouine*



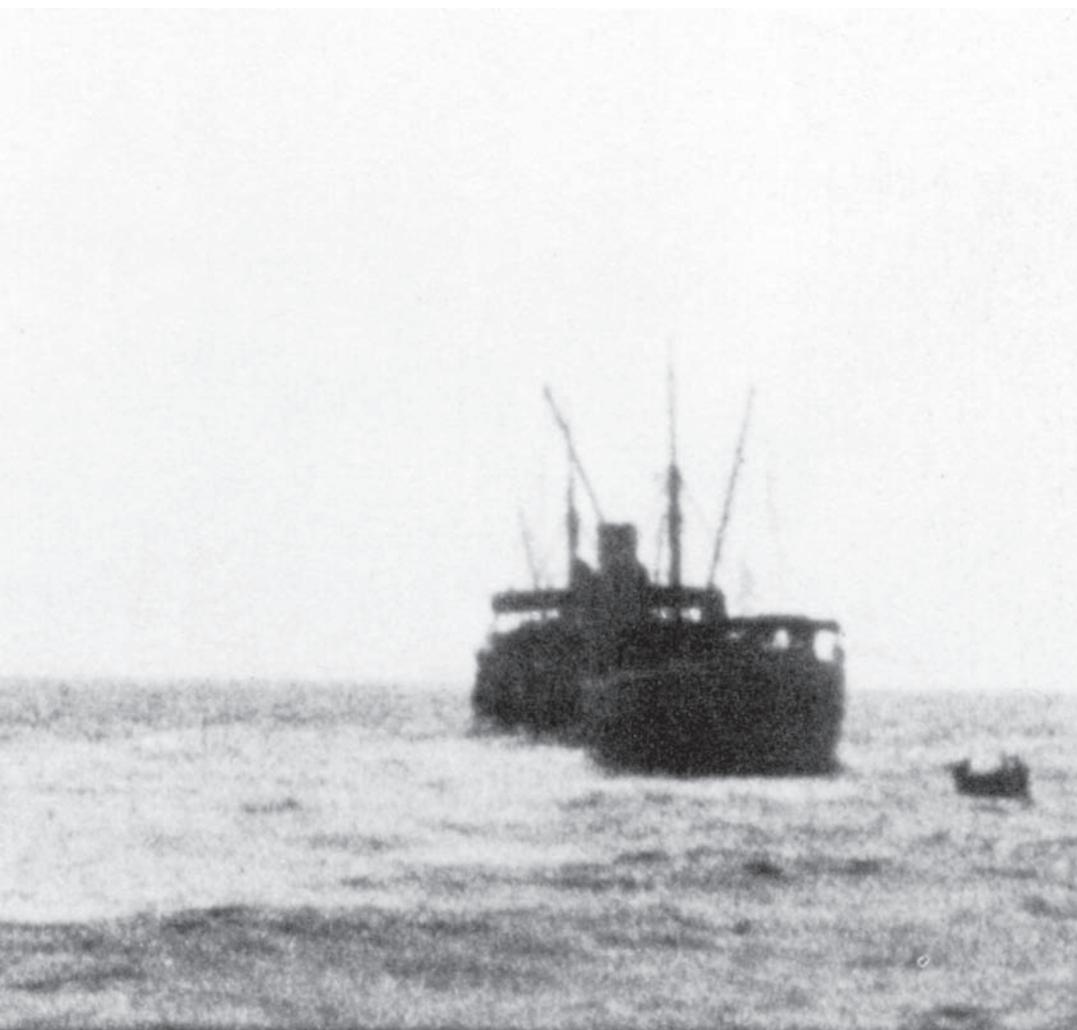
Captain F. W. Harvey,  
*Empire Tide*



*Pozarica* and *Poppy*, seen from *La Malouine*, find refuge in Matochkin Strait with *Palomares* and her group (see page 255)



*Pan Atlantic*, hit by a bomb from a Ju 88 (see page 263)

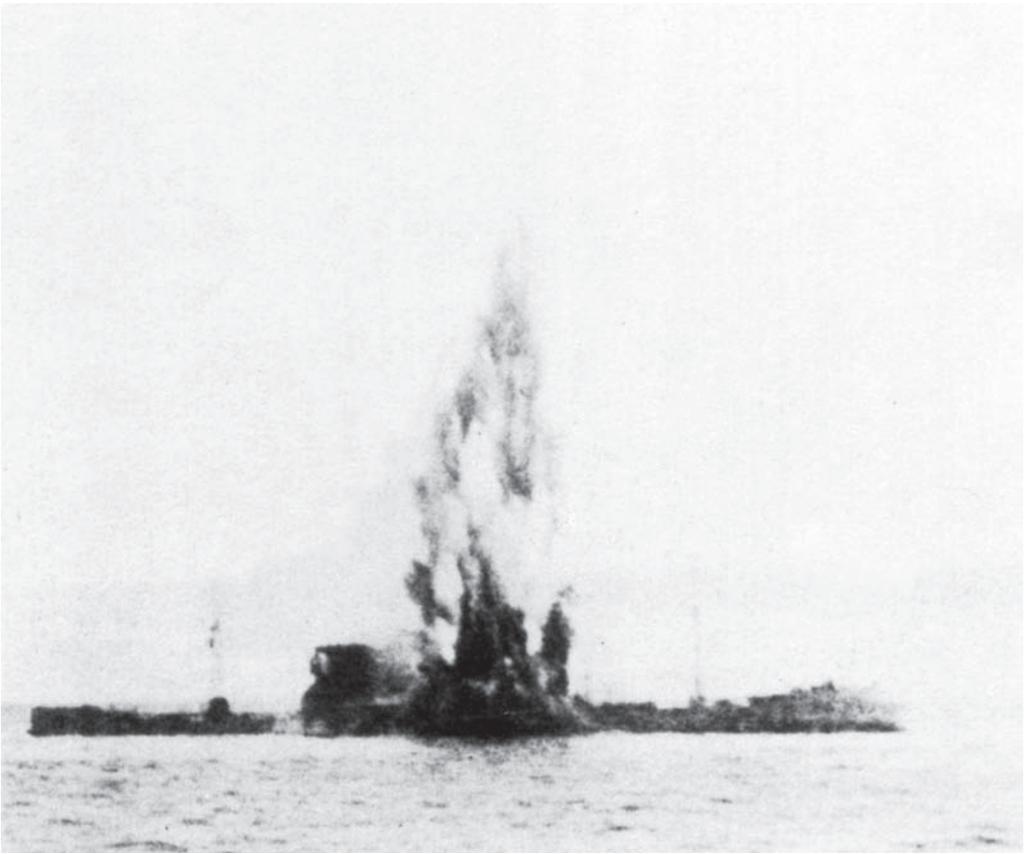


*Olopana* breaks in two as the American ship's Captain Mervyn C. Stone's lifeboat pulls away (see page 293). A frame from a cine-film taken from *U-255* by Chief Officer Hugo Deiring



The anti-submarine minesweeper HMS *Britomart* and the first ship to reach Archangel, the corvette HMS *Dianella*, which promptly put to sea again on a lone search for survivors



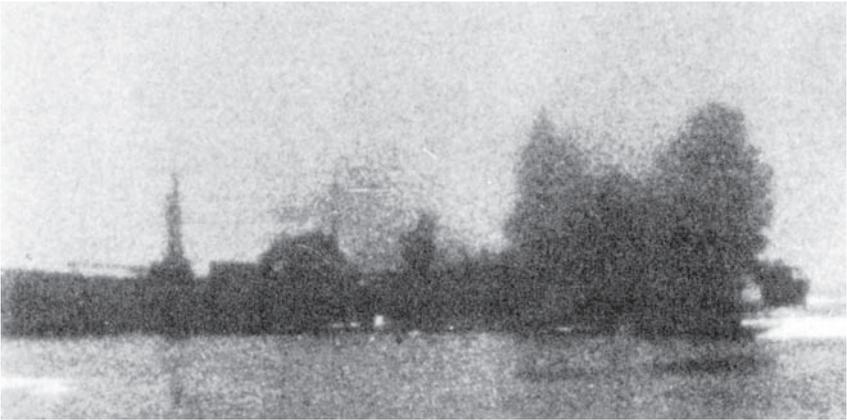
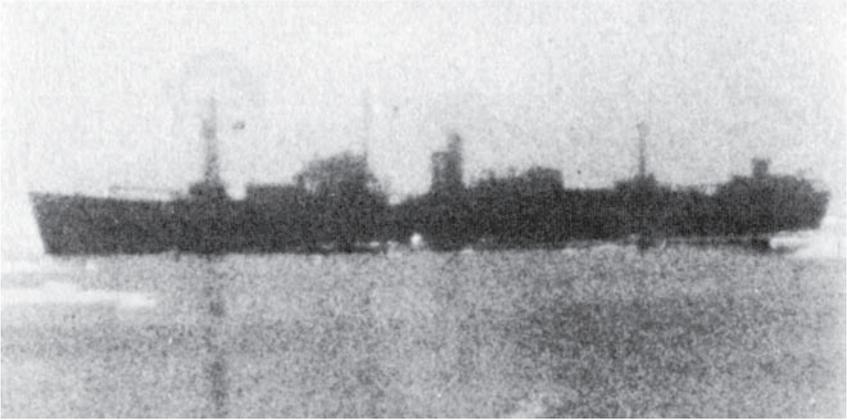


Commander Friedrich-Karl Marks of *U-376*  
watches his torpedoes give the *coup de grâce*  
to the abandoned *Hoosier* (see page 322)



*Ironclad* aground in Matochkin Strait, from *Troubadour* (see page 334). A photograph by Ensign H. E. Carraway

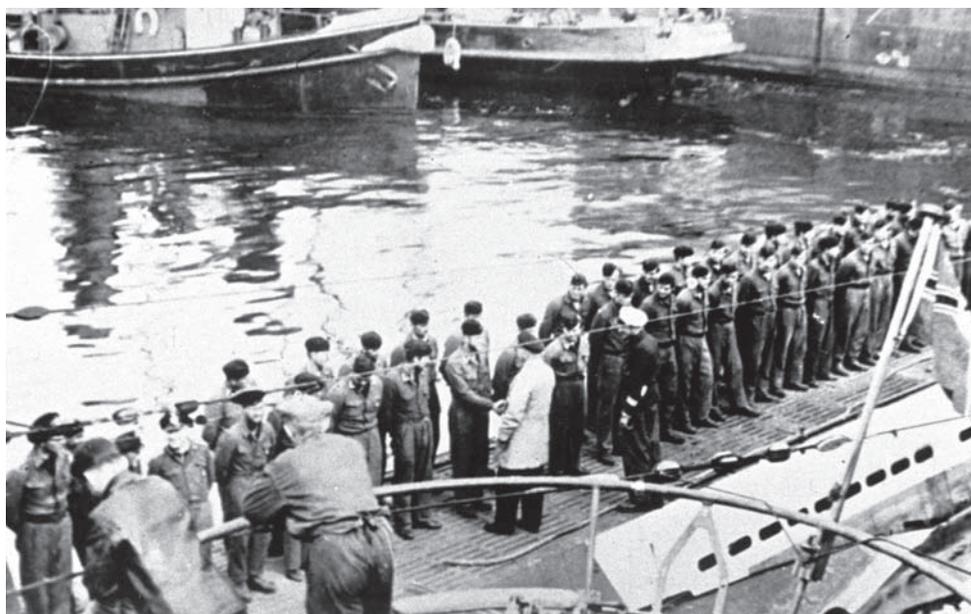




The sinking of the abandoned *Paulus Potter* with the last torpedo held by Commander Reche's *U-255* (see page 342)



Rewards: Colonel-General Stumpff awards decorations to his pilots, and the crew of Commander Siemon's *U-334* muster on deck at their base at Kirkenes to receive their commendations



---

---

fairly good shape as we were we soon baled it out, rigged the sail properly and picked up the land.<sup>39</sup>

Gordon had his compass with him, and he knew where the land was because the U-boat commander had told him.

As the lifeboat's four survivors were recovering with tots of brandy, biscuits, condensed milk and Horlicks tablets, the lifeboat nosed through a narrow bar into a little bay with a flat and rocky island in it. Here the shipwrecked seamen landed and set up camp. The island was barren, but there was plenty of driftwood, and soon the Chief Officer fashioned a tent from the canvas sail and was boiling milk and corned beef over an open fire. The U-boat's gift of black bread was shared round, and Naval discipline was again enforced, with regular watches and the posting of lookouts. There were meals of goose-eggs and pemmican soup. At the same time, Chief Officer Gordon organised searches for other inhabitants.

The days passed, sunny, but breezy and cold. The fog gradually cleared, and three days after the sinking the Chief Officer reported that he had sighted an American ship aground 10 miles away. Within a very few hours these seamen – the last of *Hartlebury's* survivors – were also safe aboard the big merchant ship. Of the fifty-six men who had sailed with the British merchant vessel, only twenty had survived.

A year later, La Baume's torpedoes claimed their thirty-seventh victim as Captain Stephenson died of his head injuries – the only merchant ship's Master to die on convoy PQ.17. The German submarine service had exacted its revenge.<sup>40</sup>

ON THE EVENING of the *Hartlebury* tragedy, William Joyce was again broadcasting to Britain a long and gloating description of the desperate situation in the relations between the Soviet Union and her Western Allies now that the Germans had wiped out

---

PQ.17, with all that it meant for the fighting on the Eastern Front.<sup>41</sup> And from Wilhelmstrasse in Berlin came the official comment that “British and American armaments works which are supposed to be working for Russia are actually busily producing war materials for the Germans to send to the bottom of the sea.”<sup>42</sup>

## 4

THE SUBMARINE “kills” of 7 July brought their score to thirteen vessels claimed from PQ.17, totalling 94,000 tons. But during the evening, as we have seen, the weather worsened again and widespread fog set in.

The three U-boats taking up station across the entrance to the White Sea – Timm, Marks, and von Hymmen – were reporting dense fog, which left little prospect for finding further merchantmen, crippled or otherwise.

Admiral Schmundt accordingly planned to call off the submarines’ hunt for the convoy’s remnants at midday on the 9th.

In the meantime, he decided to establish a second patrol line with the remaining operational submarines, at present working freelance along the coast of Novaya Zemlya. Half an hour before midnight on 7 July, Schmundt drafted orders to Brandenburg, Bielfeld, Reche, and La Baume to occupy a patrol line somewhat to the south of the other three U-boats in the White Sea, provided they had not in the meantime made contact with the enemy.

Commander Bohmann’s *U-88*, which was now low in fuel, was ordered to return to base.<sup>43</sup>

The patrol zones to which Schmundt was assigning these four U-boats would in fact have been impossible, as they coincided with the field of pack-ice barring the eastern half of the entrance to the White Sea.

In any case, one of the four was already closing on a new victim. After losing *Empire Tide* during the afternoon of the 7th, Commander Reche had continued northward up the coast of Novaya Zemlya, only to sight late that evening yet another freighter hurrying south past him. He turned south to follow her, thereby missing by the narrowest of margins sighting the little convoy of seventeen ships which had emerged from Matochkin Strait a few hours earlier.

Throughout the evening, Reche continued the long process of overtaking his victim, all the while keeping out of sight. An hour before midnight he radioed Narvik that he was chasing a straggler heading southward close in to the south-western shore of Novaya Zemlya.

For two hours he accompanied the unsuspecting vessel southward, passing her in a wide circle. Then he submerged across her path and ahead of her. His victim was the Matson Navigation Company's 6,069-ton *Olopana*.

The moment had come which those hundred or so men in the lifeboats from *Washington*, *Paulus Potter* and *Bolton Castle* had so clearly anticipated two days before. From less than 700 yards, still submerged, Reche carefully fired tube III at the freighter's midships, right below her funnel.<sup>14</sup> At five minutes after one, the one well-aimed torpedo slammed into the ship's main engine-room from the starboard side, and *Olopana's* 22 years of voyaging were over.

Her Master, Captain Mervyn Stone, had just finished a short conference with the Chief Engineer and the Second Officer when the torpedo struck. Again there was a brief delay before its warhead exploded – one might suspect this was another faulty torpedo – but when it did, all the bulkheads caved in and the ship began to settle at once.

Reche was certain that the torpedo had hit, for the ship was blowing off steam and slowing to a halt, but she was still on an

---

---

even keel. He could not afford to expend a further torpedo, so he ordered *U-255* to surface, and her guncrew to stand by.

The vessel staggered [Stone reported to Archangel Naval Control] and felt as though as she had received her death blow, as indeed she had. Lights went out and water was pouring on the main deck into quarters. I made my way onto starboard deck, and then up to boat deck. The starboard boat had been thrown in the air, all equipment was blown out including thwart. On the port side, the boat had been lowered too hastily, and the emergency radio antenna had become fouled in the forward boat fall block. Result was, after end of boat was in water and swamped.

Some of the crew were attempting to bale out boat and cut forward fall. I gave orders to launch and take to rafts, and then turned my attention to making sure that the distress message was sent out. Charles Schultz USNR (first trip to sea), deserves commendation for his devotion to duty regardless of his safety. I requested that the message be repeated and gave him the ship's position; these messages went out on the ship's main antenna.

The submarine surfaced some 200 yards away, as the rest of the crew of the sinking freighter escaped on rafts from the starboard side of the ship. Three men had been killed in her engine-room, one man had jumped overboard and been drowned, and a British gunner had been lost overboard when the wall of water thrown up by the torpedo swept over the ship's decks. A sixth man was missing.

Commander Reche ordered his crew to open fire from the 88-millimetre gun on the *U-boat's* foredeck. Twenty rounds were fired into the port side of the ship and twenty more into her starboard side to speed her sinking. Reche wanted no trace left

of her to warn off future victims. *Olopana* sank by the bows soon after.<sup>44</sup> A signal went to Narvik reporting the sinking, but by this time Reche had learned from his radio room that a distress signal had been transmitted by the victim.

*U-255* was last seen on the surface heading “at fast speed” for her new patrol zone across the White Sea entrance, while behind her tossed the crew of the *Olopana* on their rafts and floats, to await their fate in these lonely waters.

FOR CAPTAIN Lovgren, Master of the 6,223-ton American merchant ship *Winston-Salem*, the sudden loud distress signal transmitted by the *Olopana*, torpedoed only a few miles ahead of him, was the last straw.

He turned his elderly freighter into the nearest bay – Obsiedya Bay – and headed through the fog toward the shore; the ship surged at right angles to the beach and ran hard aground on a sand bar. Lovgren ordered the breech-blocks of every gun in the ship to be cast into the sea, and all the ship’s secret papers were burned. The captain and his crew lowered the lifeboats into the shallow sea, loaded them up with cigarettes and provisions from her cargo, and set up camp in a disused lighthouse not far away. This was the mysterious “American ship” to which the first survivors of the *Hartlebury* tragedy struggled some hours later.\*

It seemed certain that there was to be no salvation for any ship. The nearer the surviving ships came to their goal – the White Sea – the more determined the enemy’s attack became. In each man a new struggle developed – a struggle between the will to

\* *Winston-Salem*’s Armed Guard officer, Lieutenant Robert Chitrin, was called to account for this episode, and his report has been available to this author. In it he claims that the grounding was accidental, that nine days passed before the guns and ammunition were thrown overboard, and that every attempt had first been made to refloat *Winston-Salem* (Armed Guard report, 1 August 1942). The reports of the *Olopana*, *Washington*, and *Hartlebury* survivors are in clear conflict with this version.

---

survive and the will to win through. A single Focke-Wulf 200 found the 5,345-ton freighter *Bellingham* (Captain S. Mortensen) at about half past two that morning, accompanied only by the British rescue ship *Rathlin* about a mile ahead of her. Both ships were in the open sea and heading straight for Archangel, with about twelve more hours to go. *Bellingham*'s crew first sighted the big four-engined reconnaissance bomber on their starboard quarter.

Their eyes were so strained from lack of sleep, the glare of the ice-barrier and the constant search for the enemy, that at first they thought the approaching speck was just a bird. But its course was too steady, its intent too obvious for that.

“General Quarters” was sounded on the under-armed freighter, as the huge bomber circled once round its prey, losing height, and then vanished in a cloud bank astern.

The next time it appeared it had increased speed and was heading into the ship, straight as an arrow, on its port quarter. The ship's Second Officer tried to fire the Lewis gun on the bridge, but it jammed at once, so he dived for cover in the steel wheel-house. *Bellingham* opened a crackling fire with her three puny .50-calibre machine-guns and a Browning, but the bomber seemed to shake off the tiny bullets and came roaring in only a few feet above the waves, its 115-foot wingspan darkening the sea as it raced toward the ship. The plane's own 20-millimetre cannon had begun firing now in an attempt to drive the ship's gunners away from their guns.

Then the miracle happened. One of the ship's machine-gun bullets must have punctured a sensitive spot in the bomber's fuselage, for when it had but 100 yards to come, its outer starboard and inner port engines began to smoke, and flames began to tear two gaping holes in the fuselage.

One of the plane's cannon shells split a block of wood some 15 inches above the head of one of the gunners, and another ex-

---

ploded the ship's ammonia tank. There were three explosions astern of the ship, where the bombs had fallen about twenty yards away, knocking one of the machine-gunners onto the deck below.

As the Second Officer looked over the edge of the wheelhouse, the German bomber thundered past only a few feet away and just above him. He could see its rear-gunner crouching in his perspex gun-turret, directing his cannon along the length of the ship, obviously unaware that the plane's fuselage was now a mass of flames. The crackle of the ship's machine-guns died away.

Before the astounded American seamen's eyes, the Focke-Wulf suddenly lost height and plunged into the sea 200 yards off the *Bellingham's* port bow, breaking up at once, while a pillar of black smoke shot up out of the floating wreckage.<sup>45</sup> The guncrew were "shouting like a carnival full of children" at this unexpected victory. White fumes were billowing out of *Bellingham's* engine-room from a burst ammonia tank, driving the choking engine-room crew on deck; two of the men had been blinded by the gas.

The rescue ship *Rathlin* turned back, but the Americans waved them away and sent a party below decks with respirators to man the engines. *Rathlin* moved over to the wreckage of the German bomber to pick up its crew, but all six men were floating outside in the water, perished.<sup>46</sup> Fifteen minutes later the two ships were under way again. Now there were only 160 miles to go to Cape Svyatoi Nos and the entrance to the White Sea.

ON 8 JULY the full story of the PQ.17 disaster broke in the newspapers throughout the length and breadth of occupied Europe, coupled with another notable victory, the capture of Voronezh on the Eastern Front.

It was the convoy disaster which continued to hold the Reich's front-page headlines for the next three days, and continued indeed as a main propaganda item until far into the following

month.\* It was a story on which the Germans could hardly miss. On 8 July the *Völkischer Beobachter* published a circumstantial account of the battle, blow by blow; when the Allies issued a *démenti* soon after, the Germans countered with the names and photographs of the merchant ships that had been sunk and details of their cargoes. The British press stayed silent.

At lunchtime at the Führer's headquarters on 8 July, it was obvious that Hitler was elated by the operations in the Arctic, despite the German battle fleet's failure to intervene.

Martin Bormann afterward noted how "especially pleased" his chief was that all but six of the convoy's thirty-eight ships heading for Archangel had been sunk. The day before, when the news had been that "barely two-thirds" of the convoy had been sunk, Hitler had suggested to Bormann that the victory should be marked by a special Roosevelt cartoon in *Kladderadatsch*, a comic periodical. As it was primarily American war material that had been sunk, they ought to depict an American worker handing up tanks, aircraft and the like to the President, who was promptly dropping the lot into the sea from a suitably elevated position. Underneath the cartoon, they could put a mocking couplet:

*We do not work for pay or Gold,  
We work to build a better world!*

He added that anybody who owned a shipyard in America really was sitting on a Gold mine.<sup>47</sup>

5

IN THE CRUISER FORCE, a shocking exchange of signals between the Admiral Commanding, Iceland, and a section of QP.13 – the

\* See, for example, the editions of *Völkischer Beobachter* published on 7–11, 17, 18, 23, 28 and 31 July and 2, 11 and 22 August 1942.

---

westbound convoy from Russia that PQ.17 had passed a week before – had been decoded. It seemed that half of convoy QP.13 had continued to the United Kingdom, while the other half had just been rounding the “home stretch” on the west coast of Iceland on 5 July, in a thick fog. Within three minutes the Senior Officer’s ship and four merchantmen blew up, and two more were seriously damaged in explosions. The convoy had been guided into an Allied minefield off Iceland by mistake.

The news caused dismay in the American ships: “It seemed to our officers inexcusably stupid – fog or no fog,” commented Lieutenant Fairbanks. “It is beginning to look as if blunders were the rule rather than the exception.”<sup>48</sup>

Far to the south, the British cruiser *London* trailed behind Admiral Tovey’s flagship back to Scapa Flow, and Rear-Admiral “Turtle” Hamilton retired to write to his Commander-in-Chief what must have been one of the bitterest letters of his career.

“I must confess,” he wrote, “I hated leaving that convoy of fine ships on the night of the 4th when every indication was that they were going to be shot at by *Tirpitz* and party almost immediately.” Now, however, he fully realised the “correctness” of the Admiralty’s decision.<sup>49</sup>

Hamilton knew too well the major line of criticism that would be invoked against him as a result of Commander Broome’s orders to his escort destroyers to withdraw; he did not flinch from meeting the criticism. “I felt that they were of much more use to me than being scattered with the convoy to be mopped up singly.” And with great prescience he added: “As things have turned out, I may be severely criticised by the Admiralty, but judging the situation on the spot, with action against superior forces imminent, I feel my decision was correct.”

The Home Fleet arrived at Scapa Flow on the afternoon of 8 July. There was no doubt that Hamilton’s cruiser captains fully supported him. On the same day, *Norfolk* arrived at Hvalfiord

---

---

with the two American cruisers, and Captain Bellars wrote a long and friendly letter to Hamilton admitting that his ship's company had been "hopping mad" about the events of 4 July, and he had gone so far as to address them publicly using Hamilton's revealing signal of the 6th\* as a basis for his address.<sup>50</sup> Rear-Admiral Hamilton knew some similar action was urgently expected from him: "Judging by the feeling on the lower deck of *London*," he informed Tovey, "the sailors were very upset about leaving the merchant ships and 'running away at high speed from the convoy.'" No sooner had *London* berthed at Scapa than Hamilton went ashore to see his Commander-in-Chief, fully aware that he would be facing something of a trial, but hopeful nevertheless of being able to carry his point of view across.

Admiral Tovey filled in for him the part of the story he did not know, and Hamilton was horrified to realise the true enormity of the blunder. He coldly wrote to his Commander-in-Chief afterward:

It would have been a great assistance to me had I known that the Admiralty possessed no further information on the movements of the enemy heavy units other than I had already received.<sup>51</sup>

That afternoon, he and his Flag Captain, R. M. Servaes, went ashore alone together to climb the hills bordering on the Flow. They exchanged little conversation until they had reached the top, and stood gazing out over the Home Fleet at anchor.

Then Hamilton said, "Well I suppose I ought to have been a Nelson. I ought to have disregarded the Admiralty's signals."

Captain Servaes shook his head. Not even Nelson, he said, could have ignored a series of signals like those.<sup>52</sup>

\* Pages 251-2..

---

ON BOARD *London*, the loudspeakers announced “Clear Lower Decks. Everybody aft!” Division by division, the whole ship’s company fell in and marched to the quarter deck, where they waited breathlessly to see what was about to happen. A blackboard had been set up with an outline map of North Cape and the Arctic. After a while the sailors were called to attention and Rear-Admiral Hamilton appeared. He had them stand at ease, and addressed them through a microphone.

What followed was unprecedented.<sup>53</sup> Admirals are not given to explaining their actions to the lower deck. Hamilton began:

I propose to be quite frank with you, but don’t misconstrue any remarks I make as being a criticism of the Government, of the Admiralty, or of the Flag Officers of the Fleet.

He put the whole history of the PQ convoys to north Russia into perspective. He reminded *London*’s company that in 1941 they had themselves transported Lord Beaverbrook on his mission to Moscow – the genesis of these convoys – and he stressed the importance of their continuation, even at the expense of heavy losses.\* He continued:

As the weather in northern Norway improved, the German air attacks increased exactly as every Flag Officer had visualised. Unfortunately, the ice is farther south in the early part of June. Fleet opinion was against Convoy PQ.16 going until the ice had receded, but was overborne by the political

\* As in the case of his speech at the convoy conference, an almost verbatim note of Hamilton’s speech, headed “*London* ship’s company 8th July,” in typescript, is among Hamilton’s personal papers. He clearly wanted an exact record of what he did in fact say. The reader is invited to judge the effect of his opening gambit, quoted above, for himself. The sailors were also warned, “Must not write home about what I’m going to say.”

---

---

considerations. Consequently PQ.16 ran and came in for a hell of a time east of Bear Island, being attacked by two hundred aircraft altogether.

Admiral Hamilton recalled to the company the *Bismarck* episode, to show how greatly Britain's future would be jeopardised if ever *Tirpitz* should break out into the North Atlantic:

I want to bring it home to you that when a PQ convoy is running, the C-in-C has other problems to worry about as well. Things began to boil up on the afternoon of the 4th, when it was discovered by reconnaissance that *Tirpitz* and *Hipper* were at sea, and we were ordered to scatter the convoy and withdraw at high speed to the west. I have never hated carrying out an order more in my life . . .

As he said this, a great cheer went up from the ship's company, and it was clear that Hamilton had won them over. He had difficulty in making himself heard for some time. Finally he continued:

I felt – as I know all of you felt – that we were running away and leaving that convoy to its fate. If the decision had been left to me, I would have stayed and fought – and I should have been wrong. You have got to put personal feelings on one side, and consider the question in cold blood as a matter of strategy: if we had been engaged in the Barents Sea, it might have incurred the C-in-C's coming there and being forced to engage the *Tirpitz* in face of attacks by German aircraft. We might well have suffered a major disaster.

Hamilton concluded sombrely that he would be surprised if more than half the convoy's ships arrived. When one looked at

what had been achieved in seventeen convoys, however, he thought they would all have to admit that the risks and losses were worthwhile.

At 10·30 P.M. that night, William Joyce again broadcast from Germany to his millions of listeners in Britain, commenting now on the Admiralty's "deathly silence" on convoy PQ.17's losses. "As time goes on," he added, "it must be realised even in Britain that the German war communiqués state nothing but the facts. There is no reason to doubt the accuracy of the reports of the destruction of this convoy."<sup>54</sup> In a further attempt to draw the British authorities into making an announcement confirming PQ.17's losses, the "New British Broadcasting Station," a thinly disguised German transmitter operating ostensibly from British soil, asked plaintively: "What about the Arctic? The public is getting very dissatisfied at the failure of our government to give any reply to the Nazi claim to have wiped out an important convoy carrying supplies to Russia."<sup>55</sup>

Whitehall very properly refused to pass any public comment on the German claim, and certainly did not attempt to refute it. For that matter, Whitehall was still unaware just how many of PQ.17's ships had been lost, in spite of widespread searches by Catalinas and other aircraft of Coastal Command based in north Russia, and by a few isolated vessels like the corvette *Dianella* and Captain Drake's trawler.<sup>56</sup>

That evening, the Cabinet decided that a long-anticipated Debate on the shipping situation, scheduled for 16 July, would now be held in Secret Session. This decision surprised many MPs, and their uneasiness was not assuaged by Sir Stafford Cripps's assurance the next day that they would realise when they secretly learned the facts that the decision had not been arrived at because of a Government desire to conceal unpleasant facts.

Several Members, including Mr. Arthur Greenwood and Mr. Emanuel Shinwell, protested that the whole purpose of the De-

bate had been to set the public mind at rest; the decision to hold it in Secret Session would have the very opposite effect. But the Government would not be dissuaded.<sup>57</sup>

TOWARD MIDNIGHT on 8 July, Admiral Hubert Schmundt decided to alter his U-boats' tactics for what he assumed would be the closing phase of their operation.

During the previous hours, he had received reports that ice was blocking much of the entrance to the White Sea. Commander Bielfeld had signalled: "Big field of dense pack-ice at pinpoint AC.9380. Fog. Visibility 1 to 10 miles." And La Baume (*U-355*) had reported: "My progress to patrol-zone badly delayed by necessity to skirt round pack-ice fields at pinpoints 9390 and 9380." He was down to his last 16 cubic metres of fuel.<sup>58</sup>

Assessing the position on the basis of the signals reaching him, Schmundt guessed there were no further prospects of success for his submarines patrolling near this ice. No ships had crossed the two patrol lines he had set up with his six remaining operational submarines; *U-88* and *U-355* were both returning, short of fuel. He decided on a change of tactics: the entire submarine force would march back in line abreast, raking over the latter part of the convoy's general route since it scattered, crossing certain "check lines" at fixed times. In this way they would account for any crippled stragglers too.

A few minutes before midnight he ordered the six remaining Ice Devil U-boats – Marks, von Hymmen, Timm, Bielfeld, Brandenburg and Reche – to begin this final sweep at three o'clock the next afternoon, crossing one check line each twelve hours in a broad curve northward up the coast of Novaya Zemlya, and then due west, almost as far as Bear Island.<sup>59</sup> This was a tactic which no enemy trick could counter, but little was expected from it. "The operation can be said to be over," affirmed the Naval Staff that night.<sup>60</sup>

---

PASSING SOUTHWARD down the coast of Novaya Zemlya was the little convoy that had left Matochkin Strait on the evening of the 7th. After nosing out into the Barents Sea, it had formed up into two columns of two merchant ships each, screened by a dozen escort vessels. At a quarter-to-ten on the morning of the 8th, they passed through a large patch of oil and wreckage marking the resting place of one of *U-255*'s victims – probably *Alcoa Ranger*. In dense fog, the four freighters – *El Capitán*, *Hoosier*, *Samuel Chase* and *Ocean Freedom* – continued to plunge due south, heading for the entrance to the White Sea. The fog persisted throughout the day as they hugged the south-western coast of Novaya Zemlya. Every hour was bringing them 10 miles closer to their final destination, Archangel.

The First Officer of *El Capitán*, the oldest ship in the convoy, was on the bridge at 4:30 P.M. that afternoon, when suddenly the anti-aircraft ship directly ahead started blasting her siren in a prearranged ice-warning.<sup>61</sup>

In mounting crescendo, the other ships joined in – their sirens, bells and whistles shrieking in dull cacophony through the dismal fog. *El Capitán*'s engines were thrown from Full Ahead to Full Astern, and the ship lost way, creaking and groaning in every plate, but not soon enough to avoid the broad expanse of white fading into the grey fog ahead. She and several other ships ploughed for hundreds of yards into the brittle pack before finally shuddering to a halt.

When the crashing and screeching subsided, a momentary silence descended on the ships and, in the midst of that vast waste, *El Capitán*'s First Officer heard the shrill note of a boatswain's pipe. He pulled out his binoculars and peered ahead. He saw nothing at first, but then – as a scarcely perceptible breeze gently shifted the veil – he glimpsed a tiny red sail two miles away in the midst of the tightly packed ice. Captain Thevik came on the bridge and confirmed that there seemed to be a lifeboat stuck

---

fast in the ice. While the other ships set about backing out of the icepack, *El Capitán* nosed forward, forcing a way through the splintering and bursting ice until the little lifeboat was close by. The boat had drifted into the ice fifty-three hours earlier and had been unable to extricate itself. Nineteen survivors from the American *John Witherspoon* were lifted out from beneath the red sail, which they had lowered and fashioned into a windbreak. Some of them were badly injured.

Sound carries far in those cold, dry latitudes; had the American officer not blown his whistle at precisely the moment when the freighters' engines were stopped, all the survivors would have suffered a terrible end.

As he was carried aboard, the First Officer pressed the whistle into the hands of *El Capitán*'s First Officer as a memento of this encounter. The freighter now reversed out of the ice's clutch, and teams of seamen began to massage the survivors' limbs with whale oil. By the time the escorts and merchant ships had extricated themselves from the ice, the convoy as such was at an end. The fog was as thick as ever, and there had been so many course alterations and diversions in the last few hours that navigation by dead-reckoning had ceased. At times their speed was reduced to 8 knots or less, and zigzagging was impossible.

The anti-aircraft ship *Palomares* radioed all the ships to report their present locations by wireless, and all dutifully reported in except the minesweeper *Salamander*, who thought any wireless transmission at this stage most ill-advised. She maintained a discreet silence. At seven o'clock that evening the minesweeper *Britomart* sighted *Lotus*, with Commodore Dowding aboard, and together they tried to round up the lost merchantmen.

Two hours later further ice was encountered, and visibility was down to only eighty yards in the fog. Such ships as had now grouped round them changed course to the north, but found that the ice was getting thicker instead of looser – a navigator's

nightmare. They seemed to be in a cul-de-sac of ice. They turned east again, and eventually found open water in the early hours of 9 July. Now they were able to proceed cautiously northward once again. It seemed the Russians had given their Senior Officer a course leading straight into a massive barrier of ice coming from the Kara Sea, barring the eastern part of the entrance to the White Sea. This was, of course, the same ice the German U-boats had encountered a few hours before.

There was no alternative: the freighters and their escorts would have to make a long detour to the north-west, drawing all the time closer to the German air-bases in Norway – and closer to the three U-boats stationed by Schmudt at the western end of this ice-barrier. At 2 A.M. on the 9th, the fog suddenly lifted, and *Britomart* and *Lotus* were joined by *Halcyon* as they proceeded along the ice-edge. Two hours later they found *Samuel Chase* stuck in the ice, and shepherded her to the open water. In the hours that followed, two trawlers – *Lord Middleton* and *Northern Gem* – and the merchant ship *Ocean Freedom* were also sighted and ordered to close.<sup>62</sup> The corvette *Lotus* found the twenty-three survivors of *Pan Atlantic* in an open lifeboat and took them aboard. But that was all; there was no sign of the other ships. The convoy had been effectively halved.

THE TWO OTHER merchant vessels and their escorts, including the rescue ship *Zamalek*, the two anti-aircraft ships and the corvette *La Malouine*, continued along the ice-edge, making more ground westward than those whose progress we have just examined. For them, the fog persisted. *La Malouine*'s Asdic officer, Lieutenant Caradus, wrote in his diary: "Awakened at 4 A.M. by engine-room telegraph. The RDF was still operating – the continual whine loud and annoying to say the least. Revolutions were down to 50–60, i.e., 5½ knots." At about a quarter-past five, the fog cleared rapidly and they could see the ice-edge about 5

miles to port; not far off, the ice came to an abrupt end and beyond that lay the open sea again. Now the extended line of ships could see each other again, and they saw that three minesweepers, a trawler and two merchant vessels had vanished in the fog. A new “little convoy” was formed, consisting of the corvettes *Poppy*, *Lotus* and *La Malouine*, the two AA ships, the rescue ship *Zamalek* and the Asdic trawler *Lord Austin*, all escorting just two freighters, *Hoosier* and *El Capitán*.

Between them, as the fog lifted, signal lamps began to flash, and almost at once the port-side lookout in *La Malouine* reported to the bridge an unidentified object slightly abaft their beam two miles away. The corvette made for the object at full speed and anti-submarine stations were manned. Soon two lifeboats with red sails came into sight, and within ten minutes willing hands were helping twenty-nine more survivors from *John Witherspoon* to climb up the scrambling-nets into the corvette.\*

As the other corvette turned to rejoin the convoy – at cautious speed, to conserve her dwindling fuel reserves – hot meals and a change of clothing were issued to the exhausted American seamen, who had been three days in their lifeboats. “Their rescue,” wrote Caradus, “was nothing short of a miracle. Had the fog persisted for another five minutes and had a less experienced lookout been on watch these twenty-nine survivors in two small

\* Godfrey Winn, in *PQ.17*, gave the impression that it was *Pozarica* who had rescued the *Witherspoon*’s survivors. Not so – see the private diary of *John Witherspoon*’s second assistant engineer: “7th July: In motor boat, ran out of gas and are rowing at times to keep warm. First assistant Swanson had his hand over the side with his glove on – seal came up and snatched glove from his hand. Cold feet mostly in boat. I recommend that everyone massage feet every 30 mins. which we are doing. 8th July: Still in lifeboat, connected up with Captain’s boat. He came over to ours and we hooked on to 2nd mate’s boat which had a sail. 9th July: Picked up by HMS *La Malouine*, which with HMS *Poppy* and a couple of minesweepers and trawlers were escorting two ships, the SS *El Capitán* and the SS *Hoosier*.”

open boats would not have been seen.” What ponderous mechanism had decreed that this ship’s crew should thus be rescued by two such remarkable Acts of Providence we shall not know.

Certainly, her crew were not specially marked by virtue or saintly character. They fell asleep as soon as they lay down, at various places in the corvette, and seemed little to appreciate their great fortune. Lieutenant Caradus found one of them asleep in the officers’ small bath. Ten more took over the wardroom and forced the wine cupboard; they were now lying about the floor in a stupor. The bath’s tenant awoke when Caradus saw him there. The Lieutenant later described:

He had an amazing collection of nude postcards and obscene flicker photos. He pushed these cards and photos into my coat pocket. It was when I got to my cabin, after stepping over men sleeping in groups in passage ways, that I saw what I had been given. Flicking the photos gave the motion-picture effect of sexual intercourse. I nearly vomited.

The RN Lieutenant returned the man’s property to him at once and was profusely thanked for returning the crew’s “girlfriends.” The seaman said he wouldn’t go anywhere without them.

There was little sleep for these frightened men. At 8.15 A.M. *Lotus* dropped a pattern of depth-charges at a suspected U-boat, but without success. It became very cold indeed, although the sun was shining. By 11 A.M. ice was forming on the signal hal-yards and on the guard rails. *La Malouine* had only one quarter of her fuel left now, and food was strictly rationed; the situation was the same in the other ships. At 1 P.M. the temperature dropped even lower as they ran back into dense fog, a fog which was to blanket their movements all afternoon and evening.

That day, while Moscow radio announced that “the convoy reached our port safely,”<sup>62</sup> the first compliments on its destruc-

tion were already arriving at Naval Group North's headquarters in Kiel. Colonel-General Dietl, Commanding General of the Twentieth Army in Norway, signalled his "heartiest congratulations" for the decisive relief this victory would bring to the German armies fighting on the Eastern Front; his own Army sent greetings to its brothers-in-arms, the gallant U-boat crews.

The German Naval Staff in Berlin already considered the operation to be at an end, but all of Admiral Schmundt's orderly plans for the six remaining U-boats to rake back round the Barents Sea were shattered by the signals which reached him during the latter part of 9 July.

At about 10.45 A.M., Commander Brandenburg (*U-457*) urgently wirelessly to him that he had "sighted a convoy of up to five merchant ships" heading almost due west past the ice-barrier at the mouth of the White Sea. During the afternoon and evening, *U-703*, *U-376* and *U-408* all picked up this little convoy, or sections of it, heading westward in dense patches of fog; they were transmitting homing signals for the other U-boats to follow. *U-376* was depth-charged unsuccessfully while trying to attack, and *U-408* fired two torpedoes at one ship, but missed.

All this was something of a shock to Hubert Schmundt. He commented: "This means that a major portion of the convoy has been located, contrary to expectations." He added: "Apparently not all the freighters the Air Force claims to have sunk, *have sunk*."<sup>63</sup> He began to consider what he should now do.

AS THE SHIPS in the rescue vessel *Zamalek*'s little convoy finally swept out of the dense fog at a quarter-to-nine that evening, heading almost due south now that the ice-barrier had been passed, lookouts reported an enemy submarine trailing them on the surface six miles astern of them. Captain Morris suggested to *Palomares* that it would be prudent to hug the ice in the blessed fog belt, and thus avoid being observed by the enemy.

He received a snotty reply directing him to maintain station and carry out the Commodore's instructions. No attempt was made to detach a corvette to harass the shadowing U-boat, which Morris strongly suspected was beaconing in German aircraft at that very moment. The submarine-chasers were probably too low in fuel to engage in a prolonged U-boat hunt. In any event, two German aircraft were sighted soon after, and "action stations" was sounded.<sup>64</sup>

They were only shadowing aircraft, but they must have observed that there were by now two splinter groups from the original little convoy – one comprising *Zamalek* and the other heavier escorts, shepherding the freighters *El Capitán* and *Hoo-sier*, while about fifty miles behind them followed *Samuel Chase* and *Ocean Freedom*, accompanied by four smaller escorts. "Fog never was with us when it could have helped us," recorded Lieutenant Caradus in his diary at this time. At 10 P.M., *Zamalek's* convoy still had some 480 miles to run to Archangel.

Captain Morris's forebodings would have been confirmed, had he been in Admiral Schmundt's headquarters at eighteen minutes to ten, when the signal despatched by a U-boat at 8.45 P.M. was just reaching him. The U-boat was Commander Reche's *U-255*. Reche had reported: "Convoy at pinpoint AC.9543, heading south. Three destroyers [*sic*] and two escorts in front, with three freighters behind them. Am transmitting homing signals. Visibility outside fog 15 miles." The way was thus prepared for the most violent and dramatic air attack of the entire convoy operation. The ice-barrier had forced the ships to come much closer to the Norwegian airfields – in particular that at Banak – than had been foreseen. Within an hour, Reche was wirelessly that the convoy was now on a south-westerly course leading toward Banak airfield at ten knots.

On Banak airfield itself, nearly forty Junkers 88 dive-bombers were being hastily bombed and fuelled for the final sorties to

---

put an end to this importunate remnant of PQ.17.<sup>65</sup> Reche advised Narvik that there was little wind and visibility was up to about 20 miles; two Blohm & Voss aircraft were already circling the convoy. Ten minutes before midnight, he reported in again: the convoy was still heading methodically south-westward, with five escorts in line abreast preceding three merchantmen. Then he flashed, “Junkers 88s coming in to attack. Will continue to transmit homing signals. [Distress] Signals are being jammed.”

## 6

SHORTLY BEFORE MIDNIGHT, the first “action stations” for several days was sounded on the Allied merchant ships in *Zamalek*’s little convoy. Enemy aircraft were approaching, seventy miles away. The dreaded Flag “Q” – air attack imminent – was flown in the convoy again. This time every seaman knew just how tough the fight would be, for they were very close indeed to the German airfields, and they need expect no respite. They were only 140 miles from Murmansk when the first five

The Junkers 88s arrived from Banak airfield a few minutes before midnight. Cotton-wool was handed round by the sickbay attendants for those without rubber ear-plugs. Those ships that were crowded with survivors formed them into supply and reammunitioning parties to keep them occupied.

A beautiful sun illuminated the evening sky as the *II./KG-30* Junkers aircraft were first sighted twenty miles away, climbing from 1,000 feet. The seamen saw at once that they were not the expected torpedo-bombers. Soon the aircraft were wheeling overhead, picking out the most rewarding targets.<sup>66</sup>

Then the five aircraft plummeted down on the ships near the centre of the formation, swooping from their starboard side. The bombs all missed, but threw up huge fountains of water between the ships. All the ships’ guns had opened fire, and the noise was

---

terrific, and yet the scream of falling bombs had still been heard, despite the sailors' ear-plugs. "Our bloody Pom-Pom gun jammed again," wrote Caradus. Already there were fresh waves of aircraft upon them, switching their tactics, coming in from several quarters at once, attacking the escorts as well as the merchant ships. Then an aircraft peeled off and hurtled down on the 5,060-ton American freighter *Hoosier* in the centre of the pattern. According to her Armed Guard officer:

They went into a dive, pulling out at approximately 3,000 feet and releasing their bombs. The gunners manning the .50-calibre machine-guns opened fire although it was realised that at that range their fire would be ineffective; about 3,500 rounds of ammunition were expended.

The first stick of three bombs dropped into the water approximately 50 yards on the port bow of the ship; no damage was inflicted. The second stick of bombs hit the sea about 5 feet from the boat deck on the starboard side. Considerable damage was inflicted by this blow to the ship and equipment. Several men in the gun-crew were knocked onto the deck.

The third stick of bombs struck on the port side just abaft of the beam, approximately 20 yards away. It was believed that some of the ship's seams had been opened. The chief engineer went below to determine if the ship could continue to be operated; he concluded that it could not. Planes were still flying overhead, and there was a submarine on the surface, distant about 15,000 yards.

The ship, having lost way, was now alone. The convoy proceeded onward. The captain thereupon gave the order to abandon ship.<sup>67</sup>

The *Hoosier* was on an even keel and did not look as though she was finished. Another Junkers 88 bombed her and again

missed, but she was an old ship and could not take much more of this punishment. The corvettes *Poppy* and *La Malouine* were detached to minister to the freighter's needs. *La Malouine* stopped in the midst of *Hoosier's* lifeboats and took all the American seamen on board; she now had 129 survivors packed between her decks.

As an RNR officer and an ex-Merchant Navy officer, Lieutenant Bidwell knew full well what "salvage" meant. He took *La Malouine* close alongside the deserted *Hoosier* and said, "No. 1, I think we can take her in tow." A boarding party was put on the American, consisting of the corvette's First Lieutenant, *Hoosier's* engineers and those from the late *John Witherspoon*, with orders to try to restart the ship's main engines. The attempt met with no success, but the First Lieutenant reported to Bidwell that the ship was seaworthy and would keep afloat. There was an air of excitement in the corvette as the news passed from mouth to mouth. Towing gear was prepared, and a line was put aboard the American freighter. Their sister corvette *Poppy* was circling slowly round them, standing anti-submarine guard.

Then lookouts spotted the U-boat astern of them, only four miles away and closing in. The tow was smartly dropped and the boarding party taken off. Bidwell made as though to attack the U-boat, but his fuel was low, and on the surface a U-boat was faster than he was. There were no aircraft to force the submarine to submerge. In any case, the matter was decided for him by an R/T signal from the escort commander directing him to sink the *Hoosier* and rejoin the convoy. He withdrew a short distance and opened fire on the deserted but seaworthy freighter with his corvette's 4-inch gun.

He fired one round after another into her, until she was engulfed in flames. She refused to sink. Some of the *Hoosier's* survivors stood weeping on the corvette's deck to see this bitter spectacle; others were depressed only by the knowledge that it

---

would now be even longer before they saw the United States again. Convoying is seldom spectacular, and often dull, but having to sink one's own ship in the face of a jeering enemy was "sufficient unto the day."<sup>4</sup>

From *U-255*, Commander Reinhard Reche was wirelessly reporting to Narvik that he could see a ship blazing while two escorts stood by; the rest of the convoy was vanishing over the southern horizon, with three shadowing aircraft circling round it.

HOUR AFTER HOUR, in perfect bombing weather, the Germans pressed their relentless attack on the surviving ships of the little convoy in its final dash for Iokanka and the entrance to the White Sea. A total of thirty-eight Junkers 88s from the first and second squadrons of *KG-30* took part in the operation from Banak airfield. The aircraft were now coming in to attack from out of the low glare of the midnight sun, making them almost impossible to spot in time.

These were the first determined dive-bombing attacks these ships had suffered, and the effect on the sailors was shattering. In one corvette, a rating who was otherwise a "fine ordinary seaman" suffered mentally, and had to be locked in a cabin for the rest of the action.

Again the Senior Officer signalled to Archangel a request for fighter cover.\* Just two or three fast fighter aircraft would have made all the difference. The merchant ship and her mighty escort were now not many miles from the Russian coast. At 1:50 A.M. a single Junkers 88 dropped three bombs only 40 feet astern

\* According to Lieutenant Caradus (*La Malouine*), the signal was delayed for twelve hours by the Russian authorities. Other officers had at that time a distinct impression that "the Russians were not unhappy to see our ships sunk." In particular Allied naval officers were puzzled to find cargoes from previous convoys still standing on Russian quays when new convoys arrived.<sup>68</sup>

---

---

of *El Capitán*. The after-peak began to take water and the guncrew's quarters were flooded, but the ship – the only merchant vessel left with them now – persevered.<sup>69</sup>

An RAF Flight Lieutenant lay on his back on the monkey island of the rescue ship *Zamalek* shouting directions to the Captain as each bomber came in to attack. Captain Morris was passing them on to the helmsman, and the little ship was weaving in and out of the great plumes of salt water thrown up by the bombs. The two anti-aircraft ships had exhausted almost all their ammunition and were unable to put up a barrage any longer. One had fired 1,200 rounds of 4-inch anti-aircraft shell in this attack. No aircraft had been shot down, but some had evidently been damaged.

The aircraft were taking turns attacking, peeling off in leisurely fashion as though this were only a practice bombing-range. They were clearly concentrating on *El Capitán* and the rescue ship now. Over the horizon, the sailors glimpsed a Catalina aircraft, but it wisely turned back very quickly when it saw the battle. As each German aircraft retired, its bomb-racks empty, a fresh one arrived from Banak to take its place. *Zamalek's* guns and pig-trough rocket-launchers were fired non-stop; seamen stood by to reload the pans as each one was emptied. As the helm was continually thrown over at full speed, Captain Morris knew the ship's engines would not stand the punishment much longer.

A bomb hit the sea barely 20 feet from her bows, throwing up a wall of water into which *Zamalek* rammed head-on. The shock was so violent that the ship's pregnant cat had a miscarriage; her two abortive kittens were irreverently baptised "Blohm" and "Voss" and thrown into the sea. For a moment it seemed as though the ship must surely sink under the sheer weight of hundreds of tons of water descended on her fo'c's'le. Three feet of sea crashed down her companionways, and her compasses were unshipped by the shock.

---

The nerves of the eight Russian seamen picked up on the 4th could take it no longer. They crowded onto the foredeck, while their Second Officer tugged at the release gear of a raft strapped to the rigging. The raft slid into the sea with a splash on the end of a short painter, and the Russians began clambering over the rails into the sea. Captain Morris shouted furiously, "Somebody shoot that sod. It's all right, the ship's not sinking!"

His own Second Officer leaped onto the foredeck, threw aside the panicking Russians and hacked the raft adrift.

On the boat deck, where the other 150 survivors had prudently foregathered, there was a rush for the lifeboats. Morris's Chief Officer, Mr. Macdonald, seized an axe from one of the lifeboats and kept the mob at bay. Within a minute the crisis was over: the ship was upright, but still swinging violently to avoid the bombs being aimed at her.

One particularly wild swoop brought her close to the AA ship *Pozarica*, and the latter nervously signalled Captain Morris not to come so close – they were trying to draw the enemy's fire.

Shortly before three o'clock that morning, 10 July, *Zamalek* was finally stopped. A heavy bomb detonated just twenty feet from the starboard side and Captain Morris felt the sign he had been dreading: the steel deck under his feet stopped vibrating to the throb of the two main engines. Gradually the vessel lost way and fell out of the convoy, a helpless, sitting target for the Germans. With both hands Morris seized the engine-room telegraph and rang four times Full Ahead, and four times Full Astern. It was his private signal to his Chief Engineer to bring the engine-room crew up as fast as he could.

The sky was quiet however and the air was still. The Germans had withdrawn. For four hours the battle had raged, but now it was over – or so it seemed. The Chief Engineer and his men were clattering up the steel companionway from below, when the naval signallers shouted to Morris that *Palomares* was mak-

ing a signal to them: she was signalling that she was reluctant to return to *Zamalek's* assistance.

This roused Morris's Welsh temper to its limits. He determined to show the anti-aircraft ship whether they were finished or not. He turned to his dazed Second Officer and ordered him to give his Chief Engineer his compliments and tell him the ship was all right. "Can he get the engines started again?"

The officer did not reply, but stood there looking vacant. Morris slapped his face and shouted at him to make haste. He must have known that only a miracle could save them, but he was determined to achieve the impossible. He marched excitedly up and down the bridge, and encouraged the lookouts to keep their eyes peeled for U-boats.

In the engine-room there was chaos. The four-hour hail of bombs had smashed just about everything. The light bulbs throughout the ship were broken, the dynamo had a broken bed-plate, the keeps of the propeller-shaft were splintered, and the oilpipe taking fuel to the settling tank had fractured. Even the lavatories and baths were smashed. But now *Zamalek* had not one but three Chief Engineers – her own and those of *Christopher Newport* and her late rival *Zaafaran*. As soon as the ship's plight became known, the other ships' entire engine-room personnel mustered in the blacked-out engine-room, although they knew full well that if a submarine put a torpedo into her now their chances of survival down there were very slim.

At 3.04 A.M., Commander Brandenburg wirelessly notified Narvik that he had sighted the convoy under heavy air attack, and his boat, *U-457*, was now working its way ahead of them.<sup>70</sup> Time was running out for the rescue ship, but at twenty-past three, grimy and sweating, *Zamalek's* Chief Engineer reported to Captain Morris that he had repaired the dynamo and replaced the oilpipe. The ship's hull was leaking badly, but the main engines were both restarted. The battered ship slowly got under way again, at a

---

maximum speed of 10 knots, heading for the southern horizon – where the German Air Force had already resumed its attack.<sup>71</sup>

THE FINAL MINUTES of *El Capitán*, an elderly oil-burner flying the Panamanian flag, with a Norwegian Master, a British First Officer and a fifteen-nation crew, had now arrived. At a quarter to six that morning, as tea was being served by the gallon in the escort ships, a lone yellow-tipped Junkers 88 aircraft arrived and knocked out *El Capitán*. Three bombs sufficed, placed close to the starboard side of the engine-room and abreast the bridge. The engines stopped and the ship slowed to a halt. “If the Russians want war material they should bloody well send us fighter protection,” commented Lieutenant Caradus bitterly,<sup>72</sup> as the merchant ship fell back out of the convoy’s formation. Some “convoy” now, with its last freighter gone!

The *Capitán*’s First Officer volunteered to go below and see for himself what had happened. The engine-room telegraphs were broken, and the voice-pipe produced no reply. In the stokehold he found four clear feet of water. The sea valve had been blown in, and the fuel and water pipes to the main engines were ruptured. The Third Engineer came out, drenched in black fuel-oil and water, shouting that the water was coming up to the fires. Captain Thevik quickly mustered everybody on deck, including the nineteen *John Witherspoon* survivors. Fire was breaking out below decks, but nobody was trapped. Thevik ordered his crew to abandon ship.

He and his First Officer had long before made the best possible provision for being sunk, by adapting the two ships’ lifeboats to enable them to sail back to Iceland, or even to Scotland should the need arise. The First Officer had made a gaff and a boom for his boat, laced a bright orange sail, and added a jib and keel to enable him to tack into the wind; Captain Thevik made a Bermuda rig for his lifeboat. Both men had stocked their craft well

with fishing lines, charts, .22 hunting rifles, and tarpaulins to shelter their passengers from the elements.

How ironic that now that they were indeed cast adrift in these two magnificently equipped lifeboats, they were picked up after barely five minutes by the trawler *Lord Austin*, which had raced back to the scene, attracted by the smoke from the burning ship. All of Commodore Dowding's wirelessed appeals for fighter protection, in code at first and then, in desperation, in plain language, had gone unheeded.

Now once again there were only the eight naval vessels left as the burning *Capitán* fell back over the horizon. The ship had been laden with four Boston bombers and eight Valentine tanks as deck cargo, and 7,500 tons of machinery, leather, tallow, and general *matériel de guerre*, none of which would now reach the Soviet Union.

Captain Thevik was almost in tears at the loss of his fine old ship. He reminisced to his war-time Chief Officer years later:

I think it was you who got hold of *Lord Austin's* Chief Officer and asked him for a drop of rum for the old Captain as he was about all in.

So I sat up in the bunk and took it easy, and the midnight sun was looking in at the porthole. My very good chief mate was sleeping on the sofa and the poor little *Lord Austin* was ploughing steadily on toward the entrance to the White Sea – and the Jerries were likely gone home for a glass of beer. And my good old ship *El Capitán* on her way down to the bottom of the Barents Sea.<sup>73</sup>

The battle was over. In the escort ships, Flag "Q" was hauled down. "Secure from action stations" was piped around them.

More gallons of tea were being brewed, and the gunners' parties were already checking over their guns, refilling the magazines,

---

and counting and collecting the cartridge-cases. Now that the two last lame freighters had been disposed of, the escorts could increase speed, and they did so, to over 11 knots as they headed for Iokanka, the small Russian port outside the entrance to the White Sea.

As the rescue ship *Zamalek* gradually caught up with the speeding convoy, Captain Owen Morris saw that the anti-aircraft ship *Pozarica* was altering course and coming close alongside.

For a moment he toyed with the idea of signalling *Pozarica* not to come too close, as he was trying to draw the enemy's fire. Then he saw that the anti-aircraft ship's crew were scrambling off gun-platforms, out of hatches and companionways, and into the wing of her bridge to line the rails of the ship, which dwarfed the tiny *Zamalek*. The AA ship's company was "manning ship."

Not only that, for as the two ships slowly closed on each other, rising and falling in the gentle seas, the Royal Navy doffed caps, held them high and roared themselves hoarse for the gallant rescue ship which had come out of the jaws of hell. It was so unexpected that Captain Morris found himself choking with emotion. The anti-aircraft ship's powerful Ardenite amplifier was crackling, and then the voice of a woman, many times amplified, boomed out across the short stretch of water dividing the two ships, bellowing a line from a famous war-time song: "*Oh, What a Night it was, Really was, Such a Night!*"

Captain Morris ordered the *Zamalek*'s Red Ensign to be dipped in acknowledgement; then his crew gave the anti-aircraft ship three cheers for its protection. "See you in Archangel," he belled through a megaphone to his opposite number on the bridge of the slate-grey warship, and the two vessels moved apart.

THE LATTER STAGES of the air attack on the *Zamalek* convoy had been seen from afar, but not heard, by the crews of the two merchant ships – *Ocean Freedom* and *Samuel Chase* – following far

---

behind them, escorted by two RN minesweepers and two Asdic trawlers.

At 2.56 A.M. they had seen disembodied AA shell-bursts in the sky and several aircraft wheeling over some object beyond the southern horizon. The attack on *El Capitán* was also witnessed and, many hours afterward, they saw a sudden explosion and the *Capitán* sinking.

Half an hour later, at 9 A.M., the minesweeper *Britomart* saw a single German submarine sitting impudently on the surface, trailing them on a parallel course four miles on their starboard quarter. The submarine stayed there for about an hour, then vanished.

The submarine was probably Commander Reche's *U-255* again. He had certainly been following these six ships for over two hours when he was first sighted, and he had already radioed details of this new group of ships to Narvik. An hour after Reche's first report, Commander Bielfeld (*U-703*) was also reporting sighting a group of two merchant ships and four escort vessels heading south-west toward the White Sea, so Schmundt's office was in no doubt but that a second group of ships existed.

Two further signals lay on Admiral Schmundt's desk when he arrived that morning, 10 July: *U-376* had finished off *Hoosier*, laden with tanks; and Commander Timm (*U-251*) had torpedoed a second freighter, which accounts for the sudden explosion in *El Capitán* seen by the following ships.

Air Force reconnaissance sighted the burning *Capitán* and the surviving ships soon after. Timm reported to Narvik that his U-boat was suffering from a faulty diesel compressor and could barely submerge, and Reche had now lost the enemy.

By this time, however, Commander Brandenburg's *U-457* had also found the convoy being trailed by Bielfeld – a group of two merchantmen and four escorts – and he radioed its position to Narvik.

The target had thus been definitely located, but it was right on the 69th parallel, south of which the U-boats had been instructed not to proceed.

Admiral Schmudt decided that if the submarines were in contact, they should be allowed to exploit the situation to the full. At 11.26 A.M. he wirelessly the Ice Devil pack:

According to aerial reconnaissance 7.41 A.M., blazing freighter sighted at pinpoint AC.9797. Permission granted to operate to within 30 miles of coast, or line between Cape Kanin Nos and Svyatoi Nos.

Naval Group North in Kiel also recommended that the U-boats be allowed to follow their quarries into the jaws of the White Sea. But even they thought the risks of pursuing beyond Cape Kanin too great. Schmudt, in the meantime, was obliged to assume that quite apart from this latest little bunch of ships, the possibility of still further stragglers coming down from the north could not be ruled out.

At 11.07 A.M., sixteen Junkers 88s of the first squadron of *KG-30* and the experimental squadron from Petsamo thundered in for a final attack on these six ships, concentrating their venom on the two large merchant vessels.

When the ships were just north of Iokanka, the aircraft arrived and delivered a series of terrifyingly accurate attacks from well above the ships' gun-range.<sup>74</sup>

Twenty miles to the south-west, watchers lining the decks of the ships in *Zamalek's* convoy witnessed an amazing spectacle, refracted by the layers of air of different temperature so common in these parts.

They had heard by radio telephone that the six ships were only some 20 miles behind them and, as they scanned the north-eastern horizon, they saw the bombing attack just as it began.

---

Each bomb hitting the sea threw up a pillar of water, which was so refracted and inverted that it appeared as a huge mushroom of spray to the distant watchers.

Suddenly, high in the sky, there were ships, *upside down*, suspended on “mushrooms” of salt water. One watcher wrote:

It was all so silly. There were spikes, cones, pyramids, pillars – all very beautifully suspended for many, many seconds.

My Captain said to me, “Cook’s Tours can’t boast of that attraction.”

I knew it was refraction – so did we all. Perhaps we were at the perfect distance for a perfect view. Here before our eyes was a sight for poets – not for seamen.

Here was something that could rouse from sleep the whole of the ship’s company, and that is a fine compliment far above the words of any poet.<sup>75</sup>

After ninety minutes of determined dive-bombing, with several near-misses on both ships, the attack ended. *Samuel Chase*’s engine had stopped, all her steam lines had been severed and her auxiliaries cut off, and the compass had been blown out of its binnacle.<sup>76</sup>

The Germans claimed that she “sank within a few hours.” But now her escort were more than ever determined to cheat the Germans of this last prize, and a minesweeper and an Asdic trawler were detached to stand over the crippled American.

The minesweeper took the heavy merchantman in tow, while the British *Ocean Freedom* raced on alone to Iokanka with *Britomart* and *Northern Gem* escorting her.<sup>77</sup>

Three minutes before 1 P.M. a single Junkers 88 came roaring in and straddled the British freighter so accurately that her compasses were unshipped and her Master, Captain William Walker, was badly injured in the hip by a bomb splinter. But the sea wa-

---

ter poured off the ship and she righted herself; her engines were still running and land was coming into sight at last. A compass could be dispensed with now.\*

The Germans claimed the Briton was so badly damaged by two “direct hits” with 1,000-pounders that she could be “considered destroyed.” The Fifth Air Force summarised: “Thus the surviving ships of the convoy which were trying to reach Iokanka were annihilated.” But *Samuel Chase* and *Ocean Freedom* were not to be cheated of success so easily. A Russian flying-boat flew low overhead and then turned back to the coast, obviously fetching reinforcements. *Britomart*’s captain stationed the Asdic trawler ahead of the blind merchantman to pilot her, while he himself continued his anti-submarine sweep around them.

At half-past one that afternoon, the two merchant ships were sighted again by the amazed German aerial reconnaissance, 120 miles east of Murmansk and proceeding separately, each accompanied by “patrol boats.”

Eighteen more Junkers 88s were scrambled from *II./KG-30*’s base at Banak, detailed to finish off these troublesome freighters. But at 3.45 P.M., as the bombers rose above the horizon of the enemy’s radar system, German radio monitors heard a British unit ashore transmit a warning of imminent air attack on “convoy ‘Competent’” 10 miles north of Svyatoi Nos; and an hour later they heard Murmansk radioing the unwelcome news that “Fighter cover for ‘Competent’ has been scrambled.”<sup>78</sup>

As the eighteen Junkers 88s were about to swoop on the two merchant ships, many miles apart by now, a swarm of Russian

\* Captain Walker of *Ocean Freedom*, Captain F. W. Harvey of *Empire Tide*, and Captains Banning of *Rathlin* and Morris of *Zamalek* were awarded the DSO for their heroism in this convoy. This military decoration had not hitherto been awarded to any Merchant Navy officer or seaman (*London Gazette*, 29 September 1942). They were also awarded the Lloyd’s War Medal for Bravery at Sea (*Lloyd’s List*, 31 August 1943).

Pe.3 and Hurricane fighters appeared and beat them back. The German aircraft returned to Banak, thwarted, savaging a destroyer and a stray coaster on their way back.

So it was only now, after the ships had covered 2,500 miles from Iceland and were in sight of the Russian coast, that the Soviet Union was forthcoming with its defences. Soon after, two minesweepers from Captain Crombie's First Minesweeping Flotilla, *Hazard* and *Leda*, came into sight. The minesweeper *Britomart* gave them the position of the crippled *Samuel Chase* and proceeded toward Iokanka with the British *Ocean Freedom*.

AT IOKANKA, the eight escorts of *Zamalek's* convoy were waiting for them. They had anchored there shortly before noon, but there was no oiler waiting for them. It was warm and sticky. The officers and men had not been out of their kapok suits for four days – ever since leaving Matochkin Strait. Before they left for the last sheltered leg of their voyage to the White Sea and Archangel, a signal reached the escorts that two Russian destroyers at Iokanka had offered to show them the way to the entrance to the White Sea.

The Royal Navy's ships weighed anchor at 12:30 P.M., grateful for this added protection, with the Russian destroyers leading the way. The Russian destroyers were strange-looking ships, with their guns all in separate mountings and all facing aft. Outside the port entrance, the destroyers "showed them the way" to the White Sea, then turned back to their berths. *La Malouine's* Captain recovered his astonishment in time to signal them by 10-inch projector: "Hope you get back safely." There was no acknowledgement of this sarcasm from the Russian destroyers.

The ships proceeded single file toward the Gorlo – "the neck" – the entrance to the White Sea. By midnight a Russian minesweeper force had joined company, and a Hurricane fighter and a Stormovik bomber were circling overhead. For the first time in

---

many days, there was a slight darkness. It began to rain heavily, and the ice melted away into memory. Moscow Radio announced that Soviet airmen had shot down thirty German aircraft that day, and repeated that the convoy had arrived “safely.” To this a Portuguese propagandist replied, “It would appear then that the ships which were sunk have finished their voyage under water.”<sup>79</sup>

This was the end of the story for the rescue ship *Zamalek*. If any single ship ever deserved to have a film made of her life, it was Captain Morris’s sturdy vessel, whose life from her passenger-carrying days in the Levant to her ignominious end in 1956 – scuttled in Port Ibrahim by the Egyptians after the Suez war, and cut up by United Nations salvage engineers after the settlement was reached – was more colourful than any fiction. On the next convoy after PQ.17, one of the Russian ships’ officers rescued by *Zamalek* gave birth to a baby in the vessel’s operating theatre. But that is another story.

Early on the afternoon of 11 July, *Zamalek*’s little convoy swept proudly down the Dvina River, past the saw-mills, the ferryboats packed with silent women workers, and the thousands of logs floating in the river. Some of the villages gave them a rousing cheer as they passed; others remained silent. At four o’clock, *Zamalek* berthed in the minaretted port of Archangel, 2,490 miles out from Seidisfiord. Before he could be stopped, the American seaman who had been transferred to them insane four days earlier jumped overboard and swam the last few yards to shore. Captain Maund, the British Senior Officer, personally boarded the rescue ship to greet her Welsh Master.

The rescue ship *Rathlin* and the American freighter *Bellingham* were already there, together with the Russian tanker *Donbass*. (The latter owed her survival in no small measure to the American seamen she had rescued. Though at the extreme limit of physical endurance, they had manned one gun, brought another into service, and fought continuously at action stations for sev-

eral days and nights until the tanker reached Molotovsk. A high-ranking Soviet government official personally thanked Captain George Sullivan for the unselfish effort of his crew.<sup>80</sup>) One day later, the freighter *Samuel Chase* also limped into Molotovsk.

“Three ships brought into port out of thirty-seven,” Commodore Dowding reported to the naval authorities in Archangel on the 13th. “Not a successful convoy.”<sup>81</sup>

## 7

THERE WERE STILL a score or more lifeboats, and many rafts, scattered about the Barents Sea, some still several hundred miles from the nearest land. Five days after *Carlton* was sunk, on 10 July, her survivors saw the first sign of human life: a lone aircraft came over the horizon, and turned out to be an RAF Catalina, probably taking part in a search operation. There was little wind and the sea was glassy smooth, so the American seamen expressed some hope that the flying-boat would land and pick them up. The aircraft circled the lifeboat several times, then dropped a package into the sea nearby: it contained a rubber life suit, corned beef and biscuits, and a message reading “Help is on the way.”

Most of the seamen took this cheering news literally, and within the next few hours they consumed a goodly quantity of their food and water rations in a bacchanalian celebration feast. Then they settled back to wait for the rescue, which never came.<sup>82</sup>

As far as the German Air Force was concerned, the operation was over. Colonel-General Stumpff, of the Fifth Air Force, telegraphed to Reichsmarschall Herman Göring on 12 July:

*Herr Reichsmarschall!* I beg to report the destruction of Convoy PQ.17. During reconnaissance execute,d on 12 July over the White Sea, the western passage, the Kola coast and the waters to the north of the coast, not a single merchant ship

was observed. Photographic reconnaissance of Iokanka showed that no ship belonging to PQ.17 has reached that port.

I report the sinking by the Fifth Air Force of: one cruiser; one destroyer; two escorts totalling 4,000 tons; 22 merchant ships totalling 142,216 tons.<sup>83</sup>

Of these sinkings, the lion's share was claimed by the Junkers 88 units. The cost of this victory was very low: the Junkers 88s had flown only 130 sorties, dropping just 212 tons of bombs; the Heinkel 111-T torpedo-bombers had flown forty-three sorties (of which twenty, on 5 July, were abortive), dropping a total of forty-six aerial torpedoes; and the Heinkel 115 torpedo-bombers had flown only twenty-nine sorties (of which six were abortive), resulting in the expenditure of fifteen aerial torpedoes.

Only five aircraft had failed to return during the whole operation, of which the crew of one (a Heinkel 115) had been recovered in the daring rescue under the guns of British destroyers, while the crew of another (a Heinkel 111) had been picked up by the destroyer *Ledbury*. Two other Heinkel 111s had returned to base with fatal casualties aboard from ships' gunfire. The remaining missing aircraft were the Focke-Wulf 200 brought down by the gunners of the *Bellingham*, one Blohm & Voss shadower, and one other Heinkel 111 lost during the big evening attack on 4 July and subsequently credited with having crashed his bomber onto an American cruiser (*U-334's* sighting of a "sinking cruiser" could not otherwise be explained).<sup>84</sup>

At about the same time as *Zamalek* was docking at Archangel, Admiral Miles and his interpreter were being ushered into Admiral Kusnetsov's room by Admiral Alafusov. Kusnetsov was the Soviet Chief of Naval Staff, and his office was in the new Admiralty building in Moscow.

"We had a very interesting discussion about convoys afterward," Miles cautiously noted in his diary. That morning he had re-

ceived from Admiral Pound what in his opinion was a very unconvincing explanation of the PQ.17 decisions taken in Whitehall, and had paraphrased it as accurately as possible for the Russians. The interview was “chilly,” but afterward the Soviet Chief of Naval Staff led Miles and the interpreter out of his cavernous office and into his adjoining ante-room. There, over caviar and cognac, he commiserated with the British admiral for having been landed in such a position by his superiors.<sup>85</sup>

The Russian was probably mellowed by the news that the two Russian ships in the convoy had both escaped destruction.

In London, it seemed that only a handful of the ships would ever arrive. When Mr. Maisky, the Soviet Ambassador, called on Mr. Eden on 14 July to ask whether there was any news of the convoy, the British Foreign Secretary could only tell him that what news there was was very bad: only five ships out of the forty-odd which had sailed got through, and it was possible that two more might yet do so. Out of 600 tanks, only about a hundred had arrived. Maisky, with more verve than tact, asked Eden what plans the British had for the next convoy.

The Foreign Secretary rejoined that the British Government had learned a lesson from the last one. Admiral Pound held the belief that if he were on the German side, he would guarantee that not one of the next convoy’s ships would reach port.

It was, said Eden, no help to the Russians for the Allies to send convoys out and have nearly all the ships sunk.<sup>86</sup> The Admiralty felt it would be necessary to cancel all further PQ convoys until the autumn. This kind of answer did not satisfy the Russians. Admiral N. M. Harlamov, head of the Soviet military mission in London, made no attempt to hide his indignation at the fate of PQ.17, and Mr. Churchill was finally obliged to ask Eden to call a meeting between the Admiralty and Soviet government representatives.

Two weeks passed without the meeting being called.<sup>87</sup>

## First Back from Hell

6 July – 21 July

*The more law that comes to sea the better, and  
let litigation look after itself.*

— SENIOR BRITISH NAVAL OFFICER,  
NORTH RUSSIA, TO AN EX-BARRISTER  
LIEUTENANT WHO HAD SAVED THREE  
MERCHANT SHIPS, 15 JULY 1942

IN ARCHANGEL, many anxious voices were raised about the fate of the Asdic trawler *Ayrshire*, commanded by Lieutenant Leo Gradwell. The trawlers that had been requisitioned for convoy escort duties were not the most popular of Naval vessels, but this one had inexplicably inspired a high degree of fondness since leaving Iceland.

We last saw her many days ago, on 5 July, steaming slowly northward into the ice, while three merchant ships – *Troubadour*, *Ironclad* and *Silver Sword* – trustingly followed her in. In obedience to Gradwell's commands, they had painted their vessels white, and listened in anguish to the appeals for help being broadcast by the less fortunate vessels to the south of them.

Many of the distress signals had given no indication of the nature of their attackers and, unable to decipher the signals from the Admiralty, Gradwell could only assume that the German battle fleet was marauding in the Barents Sea. This strengthened his resolve to lie low until the distress signals had died down.<sup>1</sup>

---

During 6 July, however, the wind changed to southerly, and the heavy ice began to show signs of packing against the ships. Lieutenant Gradwell decided the time had come to edge through the icefield and out to sea again, following the technique he had found laid down in the navigation manual: steaming very slowly toward the ice, until the bows just touched it, then giving the engines a sudden burst of power so the ship rode up on top and the ice broke under its weight.<sup>2</sup> Sometimes the ice was alarmingly thick and refused to break. Gradwell ordered the sixty men in his crew to run together backward and forward along the deck, rocking the trawler until the ice cracked. If the worse had come to the worst, he was prepared to depth-charge the icefield. At nine o'clock that night, after two days in the icepack, the four ships of Lieutenant Gradwell's private convoy broke out into the Barents Sea again and set cautious sail for Novaya Zemlya.<sup>3</sup>

For two days and more, in almost continuous fog, they skirted along the ice-edge. On the 7th they heard *Pankraft* blow up, and later that day they heard an aircraft passing overhead, but these were the only incidents before they sighted land again. In the early hours of 9 July the four ships ran into a fiord, in the northern half of Novaya Zemlya, and here they were once again able to conceal themselves against the background of a sparkling glacier. While *Ayrshire* took this opportunity to replenish her coal and water from the freighter *Troubadour*, Gradwell called a conference of the three ships' Masters aboard his trawler to discuss their further plan of action.

He had tried in vain to contact Archangel, so he directed his wireless operator to try to pick up any German broadcast about the convoy. As the four ships lay at anchor in this fiord, the latest communiqué from Germany was picked up. It announced that in a series of air and submarine attacks, "only three ships escaped destruction so far, which however are still being pursued." This was discomfiting news, but Lieutenant Gradwell had the

---

---

message sheet posted in his ship's bulletin board, with the hopeful postscript that perhaps the German facts should be taken "with a pinch of salt."\*

The three merchant ships' Masters were not encouraged to learn that theirs were apparently the only ships to have survived this far; it was clear that their morale was very low indeed.

Lieutenant Gradwell learned that they had decided on an almost certain way of bringing their crews safely to Archangel. They planned to scuttle all three ships in that very fiord, transfer their crews and food supplies to the trawler, and travel the rest of the way as inconspicuous passengers aboard her. A pained Lieutenant Gradwell pointed out to them that this was not the object of convoy operations.

Having completed coaling and watering, he sent his First Lieutenant, Elsdén, aboard *Ironclad* to defuse the shell that had been put through her bows by another freighter on 4 July. He then announced that he intended to lead them to Matochkin Strait and arrange for the radio station at its western end to apprise Archangel of their presence.

There was but one obstacle to this plan: he was convinced that the Germans were masters of the Barents Sea, which meant there would be a German occupation force to be silenced in the strait before his three charges could safely anchor there.

As the four ships moved out of the bay and headed south toward the well-concealed entrance to Matochkin Strait, Dick Elsdén assembled a raiding party of sailors and American Armed Guard personnel from the merchantmen.

They were armed with a remarkable collection of tommy-guns (broken out of the M-3 tanks in the deck cargo), pistols and rifles, ready to invade Novaya Zemlya from *Ayrshire's* whaler. With to-

\* The despatch appears to have been a telegraphic communiqué transmitted for the benefit of foreign newspapers. Gradwell headed it: "German version of Russian Convoy. Intercepted Enemy Press Report."

tal silence ordered on all ships, the little armada crept round the mole at the entrance to the strait.

They were not challenged, but with a loud screech the *Ironclad* went aground on a submerged rock formation. Believing she had been torpedoed, Gradwell hastened to screen the merchantmen. In the process, *Ayrshire* also ran aground, crushing her Asdic anti-submarine dome.

Relations with the American officers were strained at this time in any case, in consequence of Gradwell's rejection of their plan for scuttling the freighters. *Ironclad's* Master, a former tugboat captain from New England, met Gradwell as he came aboard and in a drawl which the British officer found rather offensive said, "All right, Lootenant, if you're so smart – you get her off." The Master descended to his quarters to have lunch, leaving Gradwell in command.

With the Americans refloated, the invasion began afresh. At six o'clock that evening, the ships anchored and swung their sterns round in the tide just enough to bring the entire weight of ship and tank armament to bear on the unsuspecting radio station.

While *Ayrshire's* whaler was lowered, Gradwell ordered his 4-inch gun to be laid off with shrapnel for use if the Germans should prove tougher than expected. But as the Naval party advanced across the strait, a civilian came out to meet them in a punt – very evidently a Russian. At the same time, they saw a Soviet flag being hastily run up the radio station's flagpole. Never can machine-guns and pistols have been harder to conceal in Naval clothing.

Half an hour later, Elsdon was back aboard the trawler. He had a scrap of paper given him by the Russians, showing the cruising order of the little convoy that had left the strait three days before. Apparently there were still five merchantmen afloat at that time, and several escort vessels.

The Russians also told him that to the south of the strait there were three lifeboats full of shipwrecked seamen. *Ayrshire* proceeded at once to the spot, and found that they were seamen from the American *Fairfield City*; there were thirty-four of them, all delirious and in a very bad way except for the Third Officer and the Chief Engineer, who was as fearful as his comrades were ill.

As soon as he boarded the trawler, this officer unbuckled a large automatic pistol and presented it to Gradwell, crying that he did not want to be found armed in any way if the Germans should capture the trawler.

He kept asking, “Do you think we’re going to get through? Do you think we’ll be mined? Do you think we’ll be torpedoed?” Gradwell accepted the gun and coldly told him he had no doubt whatsoever that they would be sunk; there was not the smallest chance of getting to Archangel.

Lieutenant Elsdon had been advised by the Russians that the best anchorage was some nine miles up the strait, and a Russian motor-launch piloted them to it. Gradwell had no chart of Novaya Zemlya and had been relying on a *Times Handy Atlas* for his navigation. According to the manuals, the eastern part of the strait was habitually cold, and it was indeed bitterly so.

The strait was deep and the cliffs were high; to find bottom at all, the freighters had to anchor close to these mountainous cliffs. But near their new anchorage was a Russian hospital, and Gradwell had three seriously ill survivors from *Fairfield City* transferred ashore.

They also found a fourth merchant ship, the American Liberty ship *Benjamin Harrison*, which had put out with *Zamalek*’s little convoy some days before and lost contact in the fog. *Benjamin Harrison*’s Master, Captain E. J. Christensen, told Gradwell that his men wanted fresh milk now that they were in harbour; the British lieutenant was unable to humour his request.

Uncertain whether or not the wireless station had reported the ship's arrival to Archangel, because of the language difficulty, Lieutenant Gradwell waited for further instructions.\*

## 2

LIEUTENANT GRADWELL'S private convoy was not alone in Novaya Zemlya. After seeing *Alcoa Ranger* torpedoed before his eyes some days earlier, the *Empire Tide*'s Master had turned his ship round and run for shelter into Moller Bay on Novaya Zemlya's south-western coast. There was a settlement and a little wireless station there, and by this means Captain Harvey sent a message to Archangel asking for medical aid for one of his gunners, who had been shot through the thigh by a machine-gun bullet during the air battle on the 4th. He also asked the Russians to inform British Naval Control of *Empire Tide*'s presence there.<sup>4</sup>

Several rafts and lifeboats had also reached the shores of the large, barren island, and the seamen were now eking out an uncomfortable, "Robinson Crusoe" existence.

Through the morning mist of 8 July, nine survivors of the sinking *Olopana*, crouched on a raft with the ship's Master Captain Stone, saw the phantom shapes of *Zamalek*'s convoy flit by.<sup>5</sup> They lit flares and shouted, but "no assistance was rendered, probably because vigilance could not be relaxed," as Captain Stone reported later in Archangel. In fact, none of the ships or their escorts seems to have seen the flares. During the night it began to rain lightly, but Captain Stone kept all the men manning the raft's oars to maintain their blood circulation and make some progress to land, which he thought should be only ten miles away. During the

\* Later the Americans joined in the universal praise of Gradwell and his "mighty little ship." In Archangel, the Master of *Silver Sword* wrote on 8 August to Captain Maund, the SBNO, drawing attention to the Lieutenant's "high courage" and adding, "I do not know how we could ever have reached Archangel without his aid."

early hours two corvettes were seen through the mist, “hunting around like bloodhounds,” but efforts to attract their attention were again disappointed. At about eight o’clock in the morning, the fog lifted and they sighted North Gusini Light on Novaya Zemlya; then they sighted land itself.

After two days’ continuous rowing, they beached their heavy raft at 4:30 A.M. on 10 July, on a stretch of beach seven miles south of the Light and free of outlying reefs – a circumstance which undoubtedly saved many lives, for to the north were the high, rocky cliffs and to the south were reefs extending for several miles offshore. The exhausted American seamen tumbled onto dry land. After a short spell for them to relax and for “everyone in his own way to meditate on his survival,” the rafts were broken up and used to build a windbreak, while driftwood was collected to start a fire. Two officers set off toward the Light to see if there was any means of communication there. The others drifted off into a deep sleep before a blazing fire.

AS THE TWO *Olopana* officers approached the Light, they found that three miles beyond it a large merchant ship had evidently run aground. Captain Stone and a number of men set off on a forced march toward the ship, leaving the Second Officer in charge of their makeshift camp. Stone was afraid that the stranded ship might manage to refloat herself and sail away before he could get his men safely aboard her. Upon reaching the Light, he lashed a yellow flag to its top, and started a fire to attract the strange ship’s attention.

After a time, one of the ship’s lifeboats was seen to put out, and after a long pull against the current it beached below the lighthouse. The lifeboat was manned by an Armed Guard officer of the U.S. Naval Reserve; he had brought some provisions for the shipwrecked seamen. The American officer told the astonished Captain Stone that the Master of his ship, *Winston-Salem*,

was “preparing to abandon her.” Stone requested to be taken to see the Master, and within an hour he was talking to him, together with the injured Captain Stephenson of the British *Hartlebury*.

It was decided to build a camp ashore capable of housing about a hundred seamen. For legal reasons, *Winston-Salem*’s seamen would ferry the ship’s large quantities of stores ashore, while *Hartlebury*’s survivors assisted in handling them on the beach and erecting a tarpaulin to cover them. The three Masters also agreed that, should *Winston-Salem* be attacked, a radio message would be broadcast covering all three ships. During the afternoon they had their first alarm when a flying-boat arrived and circled the ship, drawing closer each time. As *Winston-Salem*’s guns had been “rendered useless in preparation for abandonment of ship”<sup>\*</sup> – as Stone reported in Archangel – the seamen were all quite anxious about their position. But then they saw its Red Star emblem and realised it was a Russian-manned Catalina. The plane headed off southward, while the seamen resumed their round-the-clock work of unloading the ship’s cargo.

The Russian Catalina, piloted by a famous Arctic flyer, Captain I. P. Mazuruk, brought medical aid for the injured gunner aboard *Empire Tide*, about 30 miles to the north. Russian officials aboard the aircraft instructed Captain Harvey to remain at

\* The Sailing Orders issued to Masters of U.S. merchant ships specifically prohibited this kind of action: “There shall be no surrender and no abandoning ship so long as the guns can be fought. The Navy Department considers that so long as there remains a chance to save the ship the Armed Guard should remain thereon.” Moreover, the Master’s order to abandon ship did not apply to the Armed Guard, who were to stay until their officer so instructed them (Chapter IV, Section I, Paragraph 413). Captain Frankel, the U.S. naval attaché at Archangel, subsequently (13 August 1942) reported to Washington that he considered the *Winston-Salem* Armed Guard Officer’s decision to render his armament inoperative “justified in view of the factors involved.”

---

---

anchor where he was. A woman doctor examined the injured gunner and decided that an immediate operation was necessary.

He was transferred on a stretcher to the *Catalina* by motor-boat; Mazuruk took off, and transferred the gunner to a hospital elsewhere on the island. Harvey logged: “His effects and wages due – amounting to £1 12s 6d [£1.62] – are to be handed over to HM Consul at Archangel.”<sup>6</sup> Before he left, Mazuruk told Harvey that a Russian coaster had been sent to pick up further survivors stranded along the coast; he had seen some of them already making their way toward the settlement.

Captain Harvey sent a party ashore to forage for eggs and birds, and to erect signs and beacons along the shore to guide the other shipwrecked seamen to *Empire Tide*’s anchorage. In the meantime, he would not sail without a full naval escort.

Captain Mazuruk made several flights up the coast of Novaya Zemlya locating and picking up groups of shipwrecked seamen. In the early hours of 13 July, he landed in Matochkin Strait, and discussed the position with Lieutenant Gradwell. Only now did Gradwell learn that there had been no great surface battle in the Barents Sea. He had been thinking in terms of breaking through into the Kara Sea and heading for Siberia – or even for Canada – to restart the war from there. Now he began to re-examine the prospect of heading for the White Sea and Archangel.

He still refused to put out to sea without a proper escort. Before Mazuruk returned to Murmansk, Gradwell wrote a hurried report on the position for the naval authorities in north Russia:

The situation at present is that there are four ships here in Matochkin Strait. My Asdic is out of action, and the Masters of the ships are showing unmistakable signs of strain. I much doubt if I could persuade them to make a dash for Archangel without a considerably increased escort and a promise of fighter protection in the entrance to the White Sea. Indeed,

there has already been talk of scuttling ships while near shore rather than go to what they, with their present escort, consider certain sinking.

In these circumstances, I submit that increased escort might be provided, and that I may be informed as to how to obtain air protection. I shall remain in the Matochkin Strait until I receive a reply.<sup>7</sup>

Having despatched this note, Lieutenant Gradwell took his convoy some 20 miles farther eastward along the strait as the Russian officer had warned him that his ships were still visible from seaward.\* They did make some attempt to set off for Archangel, but *Ironclad* and *Troubadour* “went aground” almost at once and more time was wasted in towing them off.

On the following afternoon, the heavily armed Russian trawler *Kirov* arrived with news that a search party was being organised to take them in. Communicating by means of the International Code, Gradwell learned that Archangel was sending out corvettes to meet him and bring him in, and that a Russian icebreaker was also coming.

Four days later the icebreaker *Murman* arrived, with the Russian tanker *Azerbaijan* from the convoy; the tanker had gaping holes in her sides and her decks were buckled from the blast of the torpedo that had struck her a week before. But still there was no sign of a naval escort proper.

\* Gradwell’s letter was the first news of *Ayrshire* and several other ships that had been received by Admiral Bevan, the SBNO North Russia. “It was a great adventure,” he wrote to ex-barrister Gradwell on 15 July. “I believe that *Ayrshire* is very legally minded. All I can say is that if this is the case, the more law that comes to sea the better, and let litigation look after itself, until there are no more PQ convoys!” Even the Russian Admiral Golovko felt compelled to write to Bevan on 16 July praising Gradwell for saving three ships, and for refloating *Ironclad* when she had run aground.

---

ON 13 JULY, Mazuruk's Catalina landed about a thousand yards offshore, opposite a camp set up by nine of *Olopana*'s survivors. The seamen had found *Hartlebury*'s empty jollyboat washed ashore several miles to the south, and used it now to put out to the flying-boat. Mazuruk took them aboard and flew them to a small mining town on the Soviet mainland. They reached Archangel some days later.

The Soviet officer also made a detailed report to Vice-Admiral Golovko, the Admiral Commanding, Northern Fleet, on the unhappy affair of *Winston-Salem*, still aground in a bay on the south-western coast of Novaya Zemlya. As Mazuruk reported to Golovko, he had landed his Catalina and boarded the ship, which was completely deserted although unharmed. On inspecting the ship's armament he found that all her guns had been rendered useless.

Her crew had set up camp on shore, and her Master refused to take them back on board. He told Mazuruk that he had turned his vessel into the first bay he had come to – no doubt an action which had saved her from the fate which had met the *Hartlebury* and *Olopana* and many other ships off this very stretch of coast – but had then less prudently run his ship deliberately aground and ordered the guns to be wrecked. Of Mazuruk, as a "representative of the Soviet Government," he demanded to be provided with a seat on the first available plane to the United States. He had lost all further interest in his ship and her cargo, which were, he said, "now in a harbour of the Soviet Union."

Admiral Golovko must have choked to hear this latter claim. "By harbour," he wrote in his diary, "this shameless entrepreneur meant a deserted bay on an Arctic Island, thousands of miles from the nearest railway line. And these are our allies!"<sup>8</sup>

FROM MIDNIGHT of 10–11 July, the German submarines were returning to base, covering as much as possible of the convoy's

---

route as they did so. Admiral Schmudt recorded a hope that his U-boats might still be able to set about rescue ships searching for shipwrecked seamen. One by one, the U-boats ran low on fuel and broke off the sweep to return to base. *U-355* and *U-88* returned to Narvik on 12 July and reported fully on this extraordinary convoy to Admiral Schmudt.

Finally, early on 13 July, Commander Reinhard Reche radioed that he had found a deserted and drifting freighter about 600 miles north of Murmansk – the Dutch *Paulus Potter*, still afloat eight days after being bombed and brought to a stop. Reche’s signal added, “Papers salvaged.”

He had cautiously approached the merchantman, on the very edge of the icefield, and put a three-man boarding party aboard her, including the U-boat’s Chief Engineer, to see whether the ship’s engines could be restarted. The latter reported that the engine-room was awash with water. As in *Marie Celeste*, the lunch-tables were fully laid.

The pantry was raided and the tables stripped bare. The ship had obviously been abandoned in a hurry, for the boarding party found a box of secret papers on the bridge; it had been holed and staved in, but nobody had actually thrown it overboard. The papers showed the ship to be of 7,169 tons, owned by the Dutch Government in London; her cargo was of aeroplanes.<sup>9</sup>

According to Reche, the box contained “exact details of the composition of PQ.17, the new signals codebook for convoys and other welcome papers.”<sup>10</sup> The papers showed that the major part of the convoy had been bound for Archangel, with a minor section bound for Murmansk. To the melancholy trill of the boatswain’s pipe, the Dutch flag was hauled down. While his Chief Officer filmed the scene from *U-255*’s conning-tower, Commander Reche put his last torpedo into the ship, and within two minutes she had sunk, on fire.<sup>11</sup> The icefloes closed over her.

The German Naval Staff commented that evening:

---

Thus the last victory has been scored in the battle of PQ.17. This brings the U-boats' score up to sixteen ships totalling 113,963 tons, of which twelve ships have been identified by name.

The cross-checked Air Force score is 20 ships, totalling some 131,000 tons sunk. By this reckoning, only one or two units of PQ.17 can have reached harbour at most.<sup>12</sup>

A study of the U-boat records shows that during the entire operation, from 2 to 10 July, the Ice Devil submarines expended seventy-two torpedoes on the convoy's ships and escorts, of which twenty-seven hit their targets and exploded.<sup>13</sup>

On 15 July, Timm, Reche, von Hymmen, Bielfeld and Marks all brought their submarines into Narvik, followed the next day by Brandenburg.

3

SHIPWRECKED SEAMEN, very inadequately clad for these latitudes, were still struggling into sight of land. The raft of the *Olopana*'s Chief Engineer had finally landed 30 miles south of the Captain's raft on the coast of Novaya Zemlya. The twelve shipwrecked seamen found some oil in a can that drifted ashore, and with this they lit a driftwood fire. The smoke attracted the attention of a small Russian coaster, which took seven who were seriously ill to a hospital in Byelushya Bay. Proceeding along the coast, this little ship picked up forty-one more castaways from *Alcoa Ranger* and *Olopana* and ferried them to *Empire Tide* in Moller Bay.

The newcomers were a considerable embarrassment to Captain Harvey and his officers, as the ship's accommodation was already strained; they were unaware that worse was to follow. Suffering badly from hunger and exposure, the crews of the *Washington* (forty-three men) and *Paulus Potter* (twenty-eight men)

---

had also made land about 40 miles north of Moller Bay after battling through floating ice and two days of snowstorms. They brewed duck soup in the lifeboats' balers, and after resting overnight followed the coastline southward in their lifeboats until 15 July, when they were picked up by the Russian coaster.

Together with fifteen more *Hartlebury* and two *Olopana* survivors, they were placed aboard the crowded *Empire Tide*, at anchor in the bay. Both the indigenous crew and their 129 guests were put on short rations, and fresh water was at a very high premium indeed.<sup>14</sup> Almost all of these new survivors were in a pitiful condition, having crossed several hundred miles of open sea in their lifeboats. Fifty of them were suffering from severe frostbite and unable even to walk. A British Catalina seaplane landed in the bay, and Captain Harvey went out in *Empire Tide*'s motor-launch to ask the pilot to report their critical situation to the Naval authorities in Archangel. He could already sense very grave trouble brewing between the crews.

The Russian coaster also brought a small stock of foodstuffs salvaged from *Winston-Salem*, aground farther down the coast, including tins of pork, corned beef, some bags of beans and one bag of flour; these were held in reserve. With great foresight, the Russian vessel had towed along six of the shipwrecked seamen's lifeboats, for use should the British vessel be attacked when she made her final dash for Archangel. It was a voyage to which nobody was looking forward with enthusiasm.

The motor-launch was used to ferry many of the worst frostbite cases, their fingers and toes black from exposure to the Arctic elements, to the settlement ashore. The others crept into every corner of the ship seeking warmth and sleep: "Wherever you look you see poor chaps sleeping heavily in a state of exhaustion."<sup>15</sup>

Once ashore, the task of carrying the sick up to the huts of the settlement was a nightmare. The groaning seamen had to be

---

---

manhandled over sharp-edged rocks buried beneath the snow “like huge tiles set up on edge.” The ship had only two stretchers, so most had to be carried bodily up the slope on the backs of their more fortunate comrades, while the local population of snarling husky dogs snapped at their heels. “This insignificant little hill grew to be a mountain, with a fairly hefty man on your back,” Harvey recorded.

The nine worst frostbite cases were put aboard Captain Mazuruk’s Catalina when he next called, on the 17th, to be flown to base hospital for immediate amputation of their feet. When Mazuruk left, he took Captain Stone to report personally to the Naval authorities, as there was distressingly little news from them.

It was two days before he reached Archangel. He reported to the U.S. Assistant Naval Attaché, Captain S. B. Frankel, and to Captain Maund. He told Frankel that *Winston-Salem*’s Master was demanding to be fetched by an American destroyer and flown back to the United States with his crew; Frankel’s reaction was to “let them stew in their own juice.”<sup>16</sup> Captain Maund learned that *Winston-Salem*’s crew had removed “a hell of a lot” of food-stuffs from their ship.<sup>17</sup> As a result of Stone’s reports, steps were taken to send food and blankets up to Moller Bay, and to find some way of refloating *Winston-Salem*.

“The fly in the ointment in North Russia,” reported Stone, “is apparent lack of close liaison between Russian and Allied forces.”

THE CONDITION of several of the survivors worsened after Mazuruk’s plane left, and the Russian settlement’s medical officer was brought aboard *Empire Tide* on the 17th to attend to them. While he was ministering to them that evening, a single Junkers 88 bomber appeared overhead and circled the ship at great height. Captain Harvey prepared to catapult his Hurricane from the foredeck, but the sight of the fighter’s whirring propeller appears to have sufficed, for the enemy aircraft sheered off at once.

---

But the half-forgotten sound of alarm bells ringing “actions stations” was the last straw for the survivors. All had been sunk once by the Germans, and none wanted a second dose. After a heated “council of war,” forty-six of them decided to abandon ship and set up camp ashore. If the ship was sunk, at least they would not have to swim for it. “This decision was made entirely on their own accord, and they received no suggestion or order from me of any description,” stressed Captain Harvey.<sup>18</sup>

The foodstuffs “salvaged” from *Winston-Salem* were divided equally among three of the lifeboats, and Harvey gave each boat a bag of flour from his own stores.

The seamen were warned that they could not “make a restaurant” of the merchant ship.

At 11.15 P.M. the three boats left, crowded with the survivors of *Washington*, *Olopana* and *Hartlebury*. They set up two camps ashore in sight of the ship, leaving some officers and ratings, and all the ships’ Masters, aboard *Empire Tide*, which they clearly considered doomed.

The ships’ Masters (*Olopana*’s Chief Officer deputising for Captain Stone, now in Archangel) signed a declaration rejecting all liability for the deserters:

EMPIRE TIDE

*This is to Certify:* that the men who decided to land ashore from the above ship were given an equal proportion of the stores which had been brought up for them, and that they left the ship of their own free will and responsibility, having had no orders or suggestions from us to do so, and that we, the undersigned, accept no responsibility whatsoever for their actions.<sup>19</sup>

In any case, Captain Harvey had problems of his own, of which the fresh water shortage was the most critical.

British inventiveness came to his aid. Originally they tried filling the ship's American steel lifeboats with snow and towing them back to the ship, but this resulted in very little water indeed. Harvey's seamen found a fresh water river some way inland, but how could they get the water to the ship? Working parties were organised to dig a small canal down to the seashore.

The canal was lined with driftwood and rocks to keep the water flowing clean; sluices were built to control the flow.

The ship's Chief Engineer constructed a funnel and nozzle from several tins. The trench was extended by means of an aqueduct across the beach, so that it was above the level of the lifeboats' gunwales. The river water flowed along the canal and aqueduct into the funnel, then poured through one of the ship's firehoses into the steel lifeboat.

When it was half-full, the sluices were closed and the lifeboat was towed to the ship and pumped into the ship's water tanks. In this way, *twenty tons* of fresh water were gathered as boiler feed, to economise on the drinking water; and the shipwrecked seamen had something to wash down their diet of snared birds and beans.

IN ARCHANGEL, the first steps to organise the rescue of these last frightened merchant ships were being taken. Chaos after a military defeat always seems more complete than at other times, and in Archangel the chaos was absolute. News was beginning to filter through about the reasons for the disaster, but the truth was hard to come by, and it seemed to become lodged at the higher levels without permeating down to levels where the mood was already ugly, without the truth to make things worse.

Lieutenant Caradus and several officers searched out Captain Maund's headquarters at Norway House, hoping to hear some details of what had happened to ships of the convoy, and what had happened to the "German destroyers" which had put such

fear into them. “Reluctance on part of staff to discuss the subject. Not unwelcome, but not welcome.”<sup>20</sup>

On the 16th, Lieutenant Rankin’s corvette *Dianella* returned from her lone nine-day search for survivors with sixty-one of the crew of the British *Empire Byron* aboard, the first ship to go down after the convoy was scattered. To the American authorities, he reported that he had sighted much wreckage in the Barents Sea, including a ship’s bell marked with the name SS *Edmore*. According to *Lloyd’s Register*, this was the former name of one of the convoy’s missing freighters, *Honomu*: so she had been sunk as well.<sup>\*21</sup>

At midnight that night, Commodore Dowding sailed for Novaya Zemlya again in the corvette *Poppy*, with her sister ships *Lotus* and *La Malouine*, on a search for further ships and survivors that would last about eight days. The indomitable Dowding was wearing a borrowed Army battledress and a junior naval officer’s cap. Big green Russian charts of these unfamiliar waters had been issued to them, but they treated them with caution. There was still no food other than rice to eat, and cigarettes were strictly rationed. It was raining in torrents as the three ships sailed up the Gorlo, and blowing very hard as they thrust out into the Barents Sea. The big ice-barrier of ten days before had vanished.

The next day the seas were still very rough and it was growing bitterly cold. *Lotus* came abeam of *La Malouine* and signalled: “Will swap two USSR officers for fifty survivors or one packet Woodbines – won’t have part open.” And of her own goods she added: “Very seasick and reek of perfume and other non-British smells.”

*La Malouine* answered shortly: “Will keep our Woodbines.”<sup>22</sup>

\* On 17 July, the SBNO Archangel signalled *Dianella*: “The Commander-in-Chief of the White Sea Flotilla has asked me to convey to you, your officers and ship’s company his warm appreciation of your good work in rescuing sixty-one survivors under difficult conditions.”

Early on the afternoon of 19 July, they entered Byelushya Bay, where they found an anonymous raft, well stocked with biscuits, pemmican, Horlicks tablets and chocolate; upon these the hungry sailors feasted. As they sailed farther north, they sighted two Russian trawlers trying to pull *Winston-Salem* off her stretch of beach. *Lotus* “interrogated” *Winston-Salem*, while *Poppy* approached the lighthouse nearby. Here Dowding found a party of nineteen of the American ship’s crew still camped, “with two lifeboats and ample stores.”\* *Poppy* lost her Asdic dome on an uncharted rock in the bay, which left only *Lotus*’s in working order. In the early hours of the 20th, the corvette *La Malouine* entered Moller Bay and found the quiet reaches where the *Empire Tide* lay at anchor – in a famous bird sanctuary, sheltering some queer feathered creatures which required a hundred yards’ take-off room before they could get airborne. Lieutenant Bidwell steered his corvette through squawking flocks of thousands of these birds, bringing her alongside the towering British merchantman. What seemed like hundreds of seamen were lining the latter’s rails, and cheering wildly. Bidwell laconically signalled Captain Harvey: “Greetings. Will tow you round and out of bay later.” He told Harvey to be ready to sail the following day.

After the corvette left, amidst great activity, nineteen of the sick men were carried back aboard *Empire Tide* from the settlement hospital, and the “campers” were re-embarked before breakfast on the 20th. The officers’ smoke-room was converted into a sickbay for the seriously ill: “Most of them cannot help

\* On 22 July the U.S. naval authorities in London cabled Washington: “SBNO Archangel reports *Winston-Salem* not heavily aground off North Gusino and inner bottom not pierced. Crew have abandoned ship and now living in lighthouse. They have taken machine-guns and have thrown overboard breechblocks of guns and refuse assistance to Russian surveying vessel which is attempting to refloat ship. Frankel proceeded by air to take charge and now reports *Winston-Salem* crew refuse to return and navigate ship. Therefore C-in-C Northern Fleet will provide Russian crew if necessary.”

themselves,” wrote Harvey in his diary that day. “Don’t know what will happen if we get an attack on the way down. Still, must not think about that!”

The six extra lifeboats were hoisted onto the ship’s decks, or hung over the side on derricks. All her crew and survivors were allocated boat stations, and lifeboat drill was held. Then they settled back to await the return of the corvette that night.

SOME HOURS LATER, the three corvettes entered Matochkin Strait. The sun shone brilliantly on *Ayrshire* and her several charges, all unnaturally white, as though they had been through some ghastly and unnerving experience. Lieutenant Bidwell broadcast to his ship’s company that Gradwell’s trawler had been found alive and well, and “great cheers” were heard from the corvette’s mess decks.

After a brief Masters’ conference held by Dowding, to plan courses, speeds and dispositions, all the ships sailed out of the strait that evening.

The corvette *La Malouine* went on ahead to collect *Empire Tide*. She passed an officer with medical knowledge to the merchantman, along with a small quantity of foodstuffs.

Eight of the worst frostbite cases from *Paulus Potter* and ten from *Hartlebury* were transferred to the corvette for the passage, then the hour-long struggle began for the 950-ton corvette to tow the 10,000-ton freighter round to face the open sea.

At 2 A.M. on the morning of the 21st, in the pale light of the midnight sun, Lieutenant Bidwell shouted, “Please follow me” over his loudhailer, and proudly led the ship out of Moller Bay.

With her Asdic useless, the corvette none the less zigzagged impressively ahead of *Empire Tide* as they set a perfect course to join Commodore Dowding’s convoy, already some way to the south-east of them.

Two days out, and with two days to go, *Pozarica*, *Leda*, *Hazard*, *Dianella* and two Russian destroyers joined the convoy to afford

extra protection, but the Germans left these ships alone. In *La Malouine* somebody was playing a gramophone record of the Ink Spots' "*Somebody's Rocking my Dream-Boat*" over and over again in his cabin.

Her Captain was fast asleep in his wooden chair on the bridge. To the Germans, these ships didn't even exist.

CHAPTER 9

## Inquest

*Buzz this day that PQ.18 did not sail. Means one thing: We'll be here much longer than we hoped.*

— PRIVATE DIARY OF NAVAL OFFICER  
AT ARCHANGEL, 29 JULY 1942.

**A**FTER THE PQ.17 DISASTER, the British Admiralty advised suspending the Arctic convoys altogether until the autumn was drawing in.

Mr. Churchill proposed a rudimentary plan whereby two battleships would accompany the next convoy to Russia, keeping well to the south and not hugging the ice.

Fortunately the Admiralty could not be persuaded, and the Prime Minister had to telegraph Marshal Stalin on 17 July that “with the greatest respect” the Western Allies had concluded that to attempt to run PQ.18 now would bring the Russians no benefit and involve a dead loss to the common cause. As he told Stalin, the final results of PQ.17 were not yet known. Only four ships had arrived at Archangel, he said, while six others were in “harbours” in Novaya Zemlya and stood to be attacked at any time. He proposed that a senior Air Force officer be sent to Russia to discuss air protection of the convoys.<sup>1</sup>

He found Marshal Stalin’s answer to this a “rough and surly” one. Unimpressed by Churchill’s summary history of the PQ

---

---

convoys, and their perils and anxieties, the Russian leader focused his wrath on the British Admiralty's signals ordering the convoy's Naval escorts to withdraw while the merchant vessels were expected to reach Soviet ports singly and unprotected.<sup>2</sup> (It might here be recalled that the British was not the only Admiralty to have taken recourse to such desperate measures in an emergency. One year before, in August 1941, the Russians had abandoned sixty-seven merchant ships carrying thousands of Soviet troops from Tallinn to Leningrad to the mercy of German aircraft, and half the ships were sunk. This was not known in England at the time.)

The scale of PQ.17's material losses, when they finally became known, was indeed staggering. On Captain Frankel's orders, *Winston-Salem* was refloated and finally brought into Molotovsk on 28 July, partially crewed by survivors from other ships; she was however the last to arrive.

Of the thirty-five merchant vessels that had sailed with PQ.17 from Iceland, only eleven had reached Russian ports, and three of these had been saved from scuttling only through the intervention of Lieutenant Gradwell, RNVR. His little trawler *Ayrshire* suffered her final indignity – which she ill-deserved, having been the only escort to stay with her charges throughout the operation – when she ran out of coal while traversing the last stretch of the River Dvina into Archangel and had to be towed the last few miles by Commodore Dowding's corvette.

Twenty-two freighters, one rescue ship and the fleet oiler had been sunk – a total of 142,518 tons of shipping. Of the eleven British ships in the convoy, only two would ever see British shores again; three more of PQ.17's surviving ships went down on the return convoy – *Silver Sword*, *Bellingham* and *Gray Ranger*.

Nor was the loss of shipping space the only consideration, for 3,350 motor vehicles, 430 tanks, 210 bomber aircraft, and 99,316 tons of general cargo including crated vehicles, radar sets, food-

stuffs, steelplate and ammunition were also lost in the disaster. One-third as many tanks as in the gigantic July 1943 Battle of Kursk, and three times as many bombers as in the catastrophic American attack on Schweinfurt were lost in this convoy operation. In addition, the Soviet tanker *Azerbaijan* had been holed and lost her cargo of linseed oil, and much of *Winston-Salem's* cargo had been jettisoned in Novaya Zemlya.

“Apparently PQ.18 did not sail,” Hitler was told late in August.<sup>3</sup>

For Convoy PQ.17 this was almost the end of the story. In Archangel, rumour had it that seven of the eight seamen who had deserted *Azerbaijan* had already been executed by their fellow-countrymen; certainly, the eighth was clamouring to the Master of one of the rescue ships to be taken back to England before the police caught him.<sup>4</sup>

A British seaman had been shot by a Russian sentry during an air-raid, and *Troubadour's* mutinous crew were being rounded up in the streets of the city and confined in chains below decks after a riot over women.<sup>5</sup>

The story of how the *Carlton* had “defected” into German hands – apparently lured by the promise of a substantial reward – was the talk of the survivors.<sup>6</sup> In *Silver Sword*, they were just discovering that somebody had attempted to sabotage the engines by putting emery powder in the engine-oil somewhere between Iceland and Archangel.<sup>7</sup> The Master of the beached *Winston-Salem* was seriously ill and being readied for return to America.<sup>8</sup>

One of the AA ships was driven aground by her Russian pilot and had to be floated free. Lieutenant Caradus observed in his diary: “Nobody is very concerned, and no ship had volunteered to pull her off.” In fact, the crews of the two anti-aircraft ships were hardly on speaking terms.

Mr. Godfrey Winn was touring the wardrooms of the escort vessels, organising party games. In *La Malouine* he was asked how he had liked being the guest of *Pozarica's* captain.

---

---

He replied memorably, “Captains are heavenly, but Admirals make me shy.”\*

On the quayside, the tanks were being unloaded, greased, run around the dockyard a bit, and then loaded onto flat-cars for their journey to the front. Russian labourers were carefully painting over the inscriptions on the sides of the scores of Red Cross ambulances – “Gift from the people of Plymouth” for example – as soon as they were swung out of the holds of one of the ships. Even *Norfolk’s* battered Walrus, which had been towed all the way by the *Palomares*, was loaded aboard a flat-car in docks – the Russians refused to believe it was not part of the Allied supply programme.

In face of the Allies’ unwillingness to mount an early Second Front in the West, the Russians were also taking reprisals against such Allied personnel as were in their hands, and this was a double misfortune for the survivors of PQ.17 in Archangel.

The ships’ crews were subjected to every indignity. The crews of the merchant ships were at first not allowed to visit other ships, and armed guards were placed on their gangways. Ships’ mail was deliberately withheld by the dockyard authorities, and the ships had to go on plundering expeditions to secure the food they needed, as the Russians refused to supply any. *Ayrshire* at last had her “invasion” when she raided a dockyard coal dump – “very poor quality,” commented Elsdén.

Much of the Royal Navy’s ammunition reserves had been lost with the convoy, and four destroyers had to be rushed through

\* A well-known homosexual, and brother of the wartime Commander Rodger Winn of the Submarine Tracking Room – late Lord Justice Winn – who had his own reasons for disliking the author, Godfrey Winn commenced, but abandoned, libel proceedings against him for reporting this diary entry. Lieutenant Caradus of *La Malouine* did add that Winn was a tough character beneath the surface. “*Pozarica* gunnery officer on board – relates several incidents of voyage out.” A couple of verses were written about *Pozarica*, to a popular tune, but they were not very complimentary.<sup>9</sup>

to Archangel before the end of the month, laden with ammunition and foodstuffs.\*

Admiral Tovey, who had heard “disquieting reports” from Admiral Miles about the conditions under which the maimed and sick PQ.17 survivors were being treated by the Russians, arranged for a British medical unit to transfer to Archangel. The Russians refused permission for them to land from the destroyers.<sup>10</sup> Eventually Admiral Miles travelled personally to Archangel, where there were now 1,200 survivors in a very unattractive mood. Over lunch, Captain Maund told him that the Russians were doing what they could, and had turned all the children out of their schools and turned them into hospitals. Miles saw the most ghastly cases, including two young British seamen who had lost all their limbs from frostbite.†<sup>11</sup>

Worst of all for the authorities was the fear that there were still some lifeboats unaccounted for: there was a troubling discrepancy between the numbers of lifeboats seen to have got away from the sinking ships and the number so far accounted for. Gradually the gap diminished. Two of *Alcoa Ranger’s* lifeboats made Novaya Zemlya, and the third reached the mainland at Cape Kanin Nos. Thirty-seven survivors of the *Honomu* had

\* There were numerous instances of extreme lack of co-operation from the Russians. On one occasion the cruiser *Norfolk* carried two hundred RAF personnel to Murmansk, where they were to establish a Coastal Command unit in support of the convoys. This had been agreed with Moscow in advance, yet the Russians refused to allow them to land, and *Norfolk* had to take them home again.

† Several of the ships’ reports made complaints about the conditions the officers and men were subjected to in Archangel. Captain Stone’s (*Olopana*) was the exception. He found no cause for complaint about the food and medical treatment: the food was “more than Russian people on rations received,” and the authorities placed a “practically new” hospital at the survivors’ disposal. The real problem was that this was the first time such a survivor problem had been encountered there, and the Russians were not equal to the task.

drifted for thirteen days before being picked up by a British minesweeper hundreds of miles off Murmansk. After rowing 360 miles from the spot where their ship went down, *Peter Kerr's* survivors made landfall a short distance east of Murmansk, where they were met a mile offshore by a highly suspicious and heavily armed Russian torpedo-boat.

The two *Bolton Castle* lifeboats drifted apart soon after their ship sank, as one had a sail and the other an engine. As the days turned into weeks, and the water and food ran out, knife-fights broke out between the Arabs and the white seamen in the Captain's lifeboat, and Pascoe despaired of ever surviving to see land again. Then a seaman in the bows shouted that they were approaching an empty lifeboat. Across its stern was painted "SS *El Capitán*, Panama."

There was every sign that its occupants had abandoned it in haste. On its bottom boards were discarded clothes and a half-eaten biscuit. But that was not all, for in the provision-lockers the incredulous Pascoe found large stocks of food, liquor and drums of fresh water. There were even compasses, charts, a gun, fishing nets, lines and reels. Marvelling at the munificence of the Panamanian Mercantile Marine, Pascoe transferred the stores to his own lifeboat, and increased the water ration to one cupful per day. Some days later, both of *Bolton Castle's* lifeboats independently reached the north Russian coast.

One of the *Earlston's* lifeboats with twenty-eight survivors was picked up by a British escort vessel seven days after the freighter had been sunk. The other had rowed toward Russia, on rations badly diminished by the fact that Clydeside dock-workers had broken open the lifeboat's lockers and stolen most of their contents. After ten days and nights of rowing, sustained only by half a cupful of water in the morning, and half a cupful mixed with condensed milk at midday, the British seamen came ashore, delirious from hunger and thirst, only to find themselves in

German-occupied Norway, 10 miles to the east of North Cape. Too weak to weep, the twenty-six angry seamen were hauled off to spend the rest of the war in a German prison camp.<sup>12</sup>

By 24 July, almost a month after the convoy had set out from Iceland, all the survivors of PQ.17 were on dry land or aboard rescue vessels, with the exception of one hapless craft – the lifeboat of the American freighter *Carlton*. This was still tossing and heaving out in the Barents Sea, numbering among its seventeen passengers a modern Jonah without parallel, who brought calamity with him wherever he went. James Akins has related how their voyage ended:

Every day was about the same. We saw plenty of birds, which made us think that we must be near land. Now, it's very hard to get comfortable with seventeen men in a boat 32 feet long. We didn't mind it for a few days, but after five days' sitting up, one's back begins to feel like it's broken. Lieutenant Harris and C. Blockstone, it seems, were always leaning on me. I would push them off, but a minute later they would come back.

We rationed our food and water after the first day.

Hurley who was in charge said we were within a hundred miles or so from Russia one day. I stood six hours lookout that day to see if I could be the first one to sight land. Kelly and Gonzales offered a case of whisky to the first one to see land. Malchy came up and relieved me. I told him to keep a sharp lookout, as we should see land any minute. He said the wind had changed, and we were going away from Russia. I felt like jumping overboard I was so mad.

On the ninth day we saw something we thought was a destroyer. As it came closer, we changed our mind about twenty times. It finally turned out to be a German submarine. They came alongside and asked a lot of questions. They gave us a

---

---

compass, blankets, water, biscuits, cigarettes and a course to steer for the USSR. They wished us Good Luck, said they were sorry but it was nothing personal: they had no room to take us on board. (And this is *war . . . ?*)\*

The same day, the first assistant engineer became sick. His feet began to swell and get purple. Three days later he froze to death. He had his wife's name on his lips. Hurley read a sermon, and we tossed him overboard.

The seas were running high, between fifteen- and thirty-foot waves; we all began to argue and quarrel with each other. We caught Benny – a Philippino mess-boy – stealing water. We made him do without water for the rest of the day.

On the morning of 24 July, I was on lookout forward and sighted land. For a while, nobody would believe me. From the time I first saw land, it took us about eight hours to reach it. We started up a small fiord. The current was rather strong and pulling was tough. We fell to arguing again about nothing in the world. Finally, everybody was threatening to beat everybody up when they got ashore.

A man and a boy came out in a small boat, and they took us in tow. We were surprised to see how easily they pulled us. We didn't realise how weak we were. We came alongside a dock, and Dooley climbed out with Hurley; they staggered

\* The U-boat was *U-376*, commanded by Lieutenant-Commander Friedrich-Karl Marks. He sighted the lifeboat at 2:30 P.M. on 13 July, at which time, from the pinpoint he gave for it in his signal to Admiral Schmundt, it was 350 miles from North Cape. The summary of statements by *Carlton's* survivors described how the U-boat's commanding officer regretted that he could not take them on board as he was "still outbound on patrol," and offered medical aid, which was refused. "He gave them a compass, charts, position, time and course and the distance to the nearest Norwegian coast, also biscuits, cigarettes, water and blankets. Most of this gear was of U.S. manufacture. The German stated that he had torpedoed the *SS Hoosier* a few days before and later boarded her after the crew had been removed."

all over the place. I didn't know what was wrong with them. I was the third man out and fell flat on my face. I just could not get used to my legs after nineteen days in the boat.

All the women brought food, milk, coffee, fish, etc., and we had a good meal. We all had four months' beard and I guess we looked a pretty tough bunch.

Our propaganda messed us up again, as we had heard how the Germans killed anyone they caught.<sup>13</sup>

*Carlton's* lifeboat had landed – like *Earlston's* – in Norway. Three days before, the German propaganda service had again broadcast the lie that *Carlton's* crew had brought her to a German-held port, and this time they had named names.

Among the survivors were three officers of the U.S. merchant fleet: officer Vernon Frank, from New York; officer Joseph Eshwode of Rhode Island; and Captain Frederick A. Strand.\* Captain Strand said that his transport had been one of the last to be sunk, and they had already abandoned all hope of rescue when German Red Cross planes appeared and searched for survivors. Despite the rough weather, a German Red Cross plane came down and picked them up. He did not think anyone who had escaped this hell would ever volunteer for a convoy through the Arctic Ocean again.<sup>13</sup>

*Carlton's* survivors were brought down to Tromsø, where those who were not suffering from frostbite left for Bergen and Oslo on 7 August.

Soon after, they discovered that their “Jonah” was still with them. At 4 A.M. on 16 August, the American seamen were taken

\* In fact, Vernon Frank was *Carlton's* Third Officer, and Strand was Captain of *Honomu*, rescued by submarine.

---

---

to an Oslo dock where a thousand German troops were embarking on the large troop-transport *Wuri*. The American prisoners embarked with them on the last leg of their long voyage, this time bound for Denmark and Germany. "We kept the guards busy all night," recorded James Akins frankly, "as our kidneys were on the bum." The following morning the ship entered Aalborg channel and everybody handed in his life-jacket. At 6.46 A.M., as the troop-transport edged toward the quay, still hundreds of yards off-shore, it hit a mine and began to sink.

*Boom*, we had got it again. Everyone ran to the ladder leading to the upper deck. The soldiers were afraid of the sea anyhow, so they just went crazy. Charles Dooley and I grabbed life-jackets and handed them out – in fact we made them put the jackets on. We stayed below until all were out, and then we went on deck.<sup>14</sup>

The American seamen calmly organised the Germans' rescue. By this time, the sinking transport had a twenty-degree list to starboard. A lot of the rafts were already in the water, and some of the troops were jumping into the sea, where they were in some danger of the rest of the rafts hitting them; the Americans shouted to warn them of the danger.

Hurley found a first-aid kit under his bed, and some of the Americans set to work bandaging the wounded and showing them how to get away from the ship when it went down. *Carlton's* seamen themselves clustered on top of the No. 4 hatch, planning to use this when the ship sank. The ship listed several more degrees, and the German troops in their hobnailed boots found it difficult to keep their balance on the deck. "By this time, a large wooden platform was in danger of sliding off the hatch and crushing a lot of men lining up along the rail." They called the attention of the German officer-in-charge to this, and he moved

the Germans aside while the Americans toppled the platform over.

I looked over the side and saw a large wooden raft with Dooley and Malchy on it. Hurley, Gonzales and myself jumped overboard and swam to the raft. Between the five of us, we managed to pick up a dozen or so soldiers. By that time, a large number of small boats were around the ship, picking up the men. We were taken aboard a small trawler, where we found one of the guards.

*Carlton's* survivors found themselves the heroes of the hour. The captain gave them schnapps, and everyone handed them cigarettes. The next morning the German officer-in-charge came personally to see them, and thanked them for saving the lives of hundreds of his troops. (German records do in fact show that of the 1,000 soldiers on board, only six were killed and 29 missing.) The officer promised to write personally to the Führer about their bravery, recommending the award of a decoration to them.

The American seamen entrained for Germany, followed at every station and junction – or so it seemed to them – by Allied air-raids and sabotage attempts by the Danish Resistance.

The saga of the *Carlton* ended on 27 August, with the last of her crew under lock and key in Marlag-Milag Nord on Lüneburg Heath, braving the contempt of their countrymen for having surrendered their ship to the Germans in Norway. Nor did they hear any more of the Führer's medal that had been promised them.

ON 28 JULY, four days after *Carlton's* lifeboat brought the last survivors of PQ.17 to land, the joint Anglo-Soviet enquiry into

the disaster finally took place, as ordered by Mr. Churchill. The scene was Eden's room in the House of Commons. Anthony Eden himself, A. V. Alexander the First Lord, and Admiral Pound the First Sea Lord were present to state the British case.\*

Eden invited Pound to speak, but before the Admiral could do so Ambassador Maisky interrupted, wanting to know when the next PQ convoy was to sail. Pound countered that Marshal Stalin had not so far replied to Churchill's proposal that a senior Air Force officer should go to Russia to arrange air cover for the convoys. To the Russians, this remark seemed to be just a means of gaining time.

According to Maisky's version, Harlamov criticised the Admiralty's orders that the cruisers withdraw and the convoy scatter, whereupon Pound, "his face growing redder and redder," retorted: "That order was given by me! Me! What else should have been done?" A. V. Alexander intervened to apologise for the Admiralty's and Pound's actions, and Maisky commented ingratiatingly that "even British admirals make mistakes." At this, Pound grew even more furious: "Tomorrow I shall ask the Prime Minister to appoint you First Sea Lord instead of myself!"<sup>15</sup>

There was a brief exchange in the House of Commons the next day on the armament of merchant ships.<sup>16</sup> Several Members were evidently extremely disquieted by facts that had been revealed to them in Secret Session two weeks before, and Mr. Emanuel Shinwell asked the Financial Secretary to the Admiralty:

Is my Right Hon. Friend aware that a recent convoy proceeding in a very important direction was denuded by Admiralty protection almost at the last minute and that a large number of vessels were lost?

\* At the meeting, according to Maisky, were Eden, Alexander, Pound, Maisky himself, Admiral Harlamov and his assistant H. G. Morozov.

There was mounting uproar as Members chanted, “Answer, answer!” but the Minister concerned, Mr. George Hall, remained resolutely seated and refused to reply. No news of this extraordinary convoy operation reached either the British or the American publics before 1945. When Mr. Vernon Frank, *Carlton’s* Third Officer, wrote a brief account of the disaster to his wife in America, his letter – which had been forwarded from Germany by the Red Cross – was censored, and his description of how “the naval escort left the convoy and we were told to split up and make port the best we could alone,” and of how “the entire convoy was defenceless and sunk by bombers” as a result, was excised by the U.S. censorship authorities.<sup>17</sup>

Since then, an uncomfortable silence has descended on the history of PQ.17. Occasionally, like a ghost from the past, the designation PQ.17 has been mentioned, but is always quickly glossed over and put away. Stung by Soviet allegations in 1946, the Admiralty issued a formal statement about its actions during the PQ.17 affair, but it was dishonest and untruthful to say the least.<sup>18</sup> As recently as 1962 the Admiralty repeated its denial of Russian accusations that British escort vessels deserted the convoy after the 4 July attacks, and asserted in turn that the German battle fleet broke off its attack because the British fleet was moving to engage it. This is just not true. As we have seen, the Home Fleet was withdrawing at the time of the *Tirpitz* group’s advance, and the German operation was broken off in spite of this British movement, not because of it.<sup>19</sup>

Even the version of the convoy operation reproduced in the otherwise excellent Official History, *The War at Sea*, is incomplete in its depiction of the naval operations, while its account of the fate of the merchant vessels themselves is perhaps necessarily less than summary. The passage of merchant vessels and their cargoes was, on the other hand, what convoys and the naval operations surrounding them were about.

---

---

PQ.17 was not the only costly convoy operation of the war. Only five of the fourteen big merchant ships survived in the “Pedestal” convoy to Malta in the following month, and in March 1943 the combined North Atlantic convoys SC.122 and HX.229 lost twenty-one ships totalling 141,000 tons.

What was exceptional about PQ.17 was the manner in which the disaster was brought about, and the feelings it left in the Merchant Navy’s ranks. A first privileged group of survivors was brought back to England in the USS *Tuscaloosa*, and the remainder returned as passengers in QP.14.

They sailed up the River Clyde on 28 September 1942, but instead of being allowed to proceed home immediately the 1,500 seamen were marched into St Andrews Hall in Glasgow for a civic welcome and to be addressed by the Under-Secretary to the Minister of War Transport, Mr. Philip Noel-Baker.

“We know what this convoy cost us,” said Noel-Baker. “But I want to tell you that whatever the cost, it was well worth it.”

His speech was howled down by the weary and embittered seamen. “At times,” said one who was there, “the noise in St Andrew’s Hall was as bad as it had been on Saturday 4th July in the Barents Sea.”<sup>20</sup>

The convoy cost the lives of 153 Allied seamen, all of them in the merchant ships. Of these deaths, only seven occurred before the convoy was scattered. In view of the magnitude of the catastrophe, the casualties seem in fact remarkably low, and this inevitably invites comparisons. During the whole war, 829 officers and men were lost in the north Russian convoys, in ninety merchant ships – an average of just over nine men killed per ship lost. The casualties during PQ.17 were just over six men per ship lost. Even taking into account the mild season of year and the prolonged hours of daylight, this does seem to indicate that there was a greater tendency for crews to abandon their ships during PQ.17.

Indeed, as we have seen, never were so many ships abandoned while still seaworthy as during this convoy. Counting *Winston-Salem*, no fewer than nine ships (of which one was British) were deserted by their crews after being attacked by German aircraft or submarines while still nominally seaworthy. Had there been a German surface attack on the convoy, many of these might well have been captured by prize crews and removed to German ports, for such was their intention, as we know.

Convoy PQ.17 was born not out of strategy and reasoning, but of pressure and despair. It was launched by the British only after the most strenuous appeals by the Americans and Russians. But while it was the Americans and Russians who called the tune, it was the British Merchant Navy who had to pay the eternal "price of Admiralty" in blood.

Of the 153 seamen who lost their lives, no less than half came from ships under the British flag, which was out of all proportion to the number of British ships in the convoy. The Allies achieved nothing by the tragedy.

Admiral Hamilton's only private comment at the time was in a letter to his mother: "I have just returned from running the Russian convoy, where we lost a lot of good merchant ships without doing any damage to the *Tirpitz*. However, that is all in the game and we have got to face up to it."

He urged her not to worry about the war, as he was sure Hitler was finding it very much more unpleasant than the Allies were.<sup>21</sup> Broome was subsequently promoted to Captain, but Hamilton was posted to shore command for the rest of his career.

Hamilton was in no doubt about where the real blame lay. Mr. Churchill also reached conclusions about this, which would in no way reflect upon the integrity of the First Sea Lord.

He chose to have no doubts as to who was to blame for the fate of the merchantmen after their scattering, and was out for his blood. "I was not aware until this morning," he minuted A. V.

---

---

Alexander and Admiral Pound on 15 July, “that it was the Admiral of the cruisers, Hamilton, who ordered the destroyers to quit the convoy.” This was simply untrue, of course.

Churchill asked ominously: “What did you think of this decision at the time? What do you think of it now?”<sup>22</sup>

Mr. Churchill awaited the results of an enquiry into the conduct of those concerned. Not surprisingly, the enquiry assigned the blame to no one. On 1 August, Admiral Pound described to the Cabinet the reasons for the scattering of the convoy.

In particular, he stated that during the night of 3–4 July the Admiralty learned that *Tirpitz* had eluded the submarines patrolling off North Cape. Although information given to the author by the then First Lord supports Pound’s contention, we learn from the Official Historian that “the existence of such precise Intelligence has not been confirmed by post-war research,” and this statement must be respected.<sup>23</sup>

It was unfortunate for Hamilton that it was one of the recipients of Mr. Churchill’s peremptory minute who was himself most to blame for the disaster, even if Mr. Churchill himself could disclaim responsibility for the actual decision to sail the convoy. Despite Hamilton’s insistence that the fuel situation of Broome’s escort destroyers was quite critical, Churchill subsequently expressed the view that their withdrawal was a “mistake,” and he thundered in his war memoirs: “All risks should have been taken in defence of the merchant ships.”<sup>24</sup> Was this the same pen that had in 1942 privately stated that a convoy was “justified” even if half the merchant ships were lost?\* It was sad that “Turtle” Hamilton should have been made the butt of this unattractive campaign.

In his report on the operation, Hamilton stressed again the vital importance of air cover, and in particular of shooting down the persistent shadowing aircraft. It seemed “not unreasonable”

\* See page 23.

to expect a much more effective means of dealing with them than the single catapult Hurricane mounted on a merchant ship. He believed the provision of an auxiliary aircraft-carrier in the close escort presented the obvious solution.<sup>25</sup>

In a personal letter to Admiral Tovey on 10 September, he reiterated that Britain would pay for the Government's unsound strategy of starving the Navy of aircraft: "We have taken a chance with our communications," he wrote, "and concentrated on killing women and children in Germany as a quick road to victory."

A few days later he wrote to another admiral a letter which those who knew the mild "Turtle" Hamilton would find hard to believe he had composed:

All the public wants is to be told the facts and they will see that Winston & Co toe the line. We all know the RAF have behaved like shits as far as naval air is concerned: the Old School tie means nothing to them. The First Lord and Winston hate the sight of Tovey and are trying their best to lever him out of his job and get a "yes-man" in as C-in-C who will sit down calmly under this unsound Bombing Policy and allow the Navy to go on fighting with the last war's weapons.

I have only been a ruddy admiral eighteen months, but during that time I have nearly got the sack three times and in addition been called a funk by the Prime Minister.

The Russian convoy is and always has been an unsound operation of the war.<sup>26</sup>

Hamilton went into hospital for an appendicitis operation and another admiral took his place when PQ.18 was eventually sailed in the middle of September. This time it had an auxiliary carrier in the escort, as Hamilton had asked.

By the time the convoy ran into the White Sea on 21 September, ten of its forty merchant vessels had been sunk by torpedo-

---

---

bombers, and three more by submarines. The German fleet did not come out on this occasion, but the lessons had already been learned. As Tovey wrote to Hamilton soon after, “On this occasion I was able to prevent unnecessary signals emanating from the All Highest.”

In fact, Admiral Tovey had also learned a lesson, for he had remained at Scapa Flow and ran the operation from there, which effectively cut out what Hamilton termed “Admiralty interference.”<sup>27</sup>

By destroying PQ.17, the Germans had achieved strategically more than was at first apparent. They had deprived the Russians of the cargoes not only of the vessels that went down, but of several entire convoys in the months remaining before winter closed in again.

The exemplary PQ.18 was run, but only as a showpiece to quell Marshal Stalin’s anger; after that, all convoy sailings ceased until the winter, when they became once more a feasible operation of war. The German operation *The Knight’s Move* had touched the lines of Anglo-Soviet communication at their tenderest joint, and at just the right moment to create maximum discord among the Allies.

There was one consolation: when the convoys were finally resumed in December – with the ominous “PQ” cipher dropped – the German fleet again intervened, and again fumbled and ran. With the German battle fleet’s cringing attitude during its brief *Knight’s Move* sortie six months earlier uppermost in his mind, Hitler summoned Raeder and delivered a diatribe on the failure of the German Navy in all wars since 1866. He announced that he was scrapping the battleships. Raeder resigned, and Admiral Dönitz, the submarine admiral, succeeded him.<sup>28</sup>

## **Appendix A**

### *The Admiralty's Instructions of 27 June 1942*

NAVAL MESSAGE TO COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF, HOME FLEET.  
FROM ADMIRALTY.

SECRET. IMMEDIATE.

HUSH. Your 1355 22nd and 1727 25th and my 0221 25th [June 1942]

- (a) After consideration of above telegrams and as Admiralty may be in possession of fuller and earlier information of movements of enemy surface forces than our forces will be and as you may not wish to break W/T silence it appears necessary for Admiralty to control movements of convoy as far as this may be influenced by movements of enemy surface forces.
- (b) Paragraph (a) will not prevent either C-in-C H.F., C.S. One [Hamilton], Senior Officer of Escort [Broome] or Commodore of Convoy [Dowding] giving such orders regarding movements of convoy as local conditions may necessitate.
- (c) Should Admiralty consider it necessary to reverse course of convoy, the time on which reverse course is to be held will be specified and it is to be understood that it is a temporary measure unless Admiralty give the order for convoy to return to Iceland.
- (d) Admiralty may be unaware of weather conditions in the vicinity of the convoy and even though Admiralty may give the order for course of convoy to be reversed it is at the discretion of Senior Officer present with convoy to ignore the Admiralty order should the weather be thick.

- (e) As Admiralty will be exercising control, it is essential that they should be kept informed not only of positions and movements of forces but also of any damage incurred. It is not intended above should be carried out when ships by breaking W/T silence would give away their position, but only when position of forces must be known to the enemy.
- (f) Generally speaking the safety of the convoy from attack of surface ships must be met by our covering forces to westward of meridian of Bear Island and be dependent on our submarine dispositions to eastward of that meridian.
- (g) The Admiralty will keep all forces as fully informed as possible of enemy movements.
- (h) The movements of the Battle Fleet covering force will be at the discretion of C-in-C H.F., but it is not expected that this covering force will be placed in a position where it will be subject to heavy air attack unless there is a good chance of bringing *Admiral von Tirpitz* to action.
- (j) The movements of cruiser covering force will be at the discretion of C.S. One subject to instructions from Admiralty or C-in-C H.F. It is not intended that cruiser covering force should proceed to eastward of Bear Island unless convoy is threatened by the presence of surface forces which cruiser covering force can fight. In any case it is not intended that cruiser covering force should proceed eastward of meridian of  $25^{\circ}$  East.
- (k) Our primary object is to get as much of the convoy through as possible and the best way to do this is to keep it moving to the eastward even though it is suffering damage.
- (l) Should the passage of the convoy be barred by a force including *Admiral von Tirpitz* in weather of good visibility and to eastward of meridian of Bear Island there will be no alternative but to reverse course of convoy, anyhow for a time. This action may be taken by Admiralty, but if necessary C-in-C

- H.F. or Senior Officer of cruiser force or Senior Officer with convoy may give this order.
- (m) Once convoy is to eastward of meridian of Bear Island circumstances may arise in which best thing would be for convoy to be dispersed with orders to proceed to Russian ports. It is at the discretion of either C-in-C H.F., Senior Officer of cruiser force or Senior Officer of escort or convoy to give this order.
- (n) C.S. One pass [this signal] to *Keppel* and destroyers of escort and Commodore of convoy.

*Time of origin:* 0157B 27 June 1942

## Appendix B

### *The Cost of Convoy PQ.17*

Ship	Tons	Date	Registry	Fate
<i>Alcoa Ranger</i>	5,116	1919	US	sunk
<i>Aldersdale</i> (oiler)	8,402	1937	UK	sunk
<i>Azerbaijan</i> (tanker)	6,114	1932	USSR	
<i>Bellingham</i>	5,345	1920	US	
<i>Benjamin Harrison</i>	7,191	1942	US	
<i>Bolton Castle</i>	5,203	1939	UK	sunk
<i>Carlton</i>	5,127	1920	US	sunk, 4 killed
<i>Christopher Newport</i>	7,191	1942	US	sunk, 3 killed
<i>Daniel Morgan</i>	7,177	1942	US	sunk, 3 killed
<i>Donbass</i>	7,925	1931	USSR	
<i>Earlston</i>	7,494	1941	UK	sunk
<i>El Capitán</i>	5,255	1917	Panama	
<i>Empire Byron</i>	6,645	1941	UK	sunk, 18 killed
<i>Empire Tide</i> (CAM ship)	6,978	1941	UK	
<i>Fairfield City</i>	5,686	1921	US	sunk, 6 killed
<i>Hartlebury</i>	5,082	1937	UK	sunk, 37 killed
<i>Honomu</i>	6,977	1919	US	sunk, 19 killed
<i>Hoosier</i>	5,060	1920	US	sunk
<i>Ironclad</i>	5,685	1919	US	
<i>John Witherspoon</i>	7,180	1942	US	sunk, 1 killed
<i>Navarino</i>	4,841	1937	UK	sunk, 1 killed
<i>Ocean Freedom</i>	7,173	1942	UK	
<i>Olopana</i>	6,069	1920	US	sunk, 6 killed
<i>Pan Atlantic</i>	5,411	1919	US	sunk, 26 killed
<i>Pankraft</i>	5,644	1919	US	sunk, 2 killed
<i>Paulus Potter</i>	7,168	1942	Holland	sunk
<i>Peter Kerr</i>	6,476	1920	US	sunk
<i>Rathlin</i> (rescue ship)	1,600	1936	UK	
<i>River Afton</i> (Commodore)	5,423	1937	UK	sunk, 23 killed
<i>Samuel Chase</i>	7,191	1942	US	
<i>Silver Sword</i>	4,937	1919	US	
<i>Troubadour</i>	5,808	1920	Norway	
<i>Washington</i>	5,564	1919	US	sunk
<i>William Hooper</i>	7,177	1942	US	sunk, 3 killed
<i>Winston-Salem</i>	6,223	1920	US	
<i>Zaafaran</i> (rescue ship)	1,559	1921	UK	sunk, 1 killed
<i>Zamalek</i> (rescue ship)	1,567	1921	UK	

Sources: *Lloyd's Register* 1941–2, *Lloyd's Register* 1942–3, and their *Supplements*; ships' logs, C & D (casualty and death) lists, and articles held by the Registrar General of Shipping and Seamen, Cardiff; Armed Guard and voyage reports; private papers.

## Source Notes

---

### 1. *The Regular Millstone*

1. House of Commons, *Official Report* (Hansard), vol. 381, cols. 423–4, 1 July 1942.
2. This early narrative is based except where otherwise stated on the *Despatch* submitted by Admiral Sir John C. Tovey to the Lords Commissioner of the Admiralty, 20 May 1942 (published with his later *Despatches* as a supplement to the *London Gazette*, 17 October 1950). See also Admiralty monograph BR.1736, *Battle Summary No 22: Russian Convoys 1942*.
3. Hamilton to C-in-C Eastern Fleet, 30 September 1942. See also p. 999–375.
4. Interview with Vice-Admiral Sir John Eccles, April 1963 (since deceased).
5. Except where otherwise stated, the following paragraphs are generally based on the study, *Die Lage im Nordmeer im Winter 1941/42* prepared by the German Admiralty's Historical Branch and circulated in *Operation und Taktik (Heft 13)* in August 1944. A copy of this is in file K10-2/74 OKW – *Seekriegsleitung* in the German Federal Archives, Koblenz.
6. OKW's assessment of the situation in Norway, dated 25 December 1941; copy in War Diary of German Army of Norway.
7. Report of the C-in-C Navy to the Führer on the evening of 29 December 1941 at the Wolfsschanze. These will be cited uniformly as *Führer Naval Conferences*. Abbreviated English translations were published in *Brassey's Naval Annual* 1948. The German originals of these documents were held by the British Admiralty in London and given PG-serial numbers; they were subsequently microfilmed, each film being given a T-number. As these microfilms of German documents are now generally available through the National Archives in Washington, I am giving the file and film number where applicable. This conference is in file PG/32186 (Film T-14-B).
8. Führer Naval Conference, 13 November 1941. File PG/32186 (Film T-14-B).
9. Interview with Vice-Admiral Sir Norman Denning, April 1963.
10. Churchill, *The Second World War*, vol. IV, *The Hinge of Fate* (Cassell, 1951).
11. Cf. Captain S. W. Roskill, *The War at Sea*, vol. II (HMSO, 1956), pp. 119–20.
12. *Vorstoss Tirpitz (Bds) mit 5. Z. fl. nach der Bäreninsel 6. bis 9. März 1942*, a study by German Admiralty

- Historical Branch issued in *Operation und Taktik (Heft 13)*, August 1944. Also, German Naval Staff War Diary. See note 5.
13. Memorandum by Hamilton, 12 March 1942.
  14. Cf. Roskill, *op. cit.*, p. 124.
  15. German Naval Staff War Diary. There is also a version of this appreciation in Führer Naval Conference, 12 March 1942. File PG/32187 (Film T-14-B).
  16. Führer Naval Conferences, 13 April and 14 May 1942. File PG/32187 (Film T-14-B).
  17. Führer's order issued through naval operations branch of OKW's operations staff, dated 14 March 1942, number 55493/42. OKW file 119.
  18. AI(K) Report 196/1942.
  19. Roskill, *op. cit.*, p. 127; and Tovey *Despatch*, 2 August 1942.
  20. Churchill, *op. cit.*, p. 231. Telegram Roosevelt to Churchill, 27 April 1942.
  21. Führer Naval Conference, 13 April 1942. File PG/32186 (Film T-14-B).
  22. *Operationen von Flottenstreitkräften im Nordpolarmeer im Jahre 1942*, published in *Operation und Taktik (Heft 13)*, August 1944. See note 5.
  23. Quoted by Roskill, *op. cit.*, p. 130. Cf. Tovey *Despatch*, 2 August 1942.
  24. Churchill, *op. cit.*, pp. 233–4. Minute, Prime Minister to General Ismay for COS Committee, 17 May.
  25. Quoted by Roskill, *op. cit.*, pp. 115 and 130.
  26. See note 22.
  27. German Naval Staff War Diary, and AI(K) Report 196/1942.
  28. This narrative was made available to me by Mr. Akins in December 1962. It was written during captivity in a German prison camp.
  29. For an authentic report of PQ.16 written from private methods, see Graeme Ogden's *My Sea Lady – the Story of HMS Lady Magdeleine* (Hutchinson, 1963).
  30. German Naval Staff War Diary, 27 May 1942.
  31. For details of the German air units' training, tactics and equipment, see Air Ministry Pamphlet No. 248, *The Rise and Fall of the German Air Force (1933–1945)*, issued by Air Ministry, ACAS(I), 1948. Cf. *Die Kampfführung der Luftflotte 5 in Norwegen 1942*, by Major-General von Rohden. According to a document dated 18 September 1942 in file PG/31793 (Film T-576-B), the Blohm & Voss 138 had an operating radius of 450 miles and an endurance of about 14 hours; the Heinkel 115 torpedo-plane had an operating radius of 280 miles; and the Junkers 88 had an operating radius of about 650 miles as a bomber with 2,000 kilograms of bombs.
  32. Information from Lieutenant-Colonel Karl-Otto Hoffmann, director of the Air Signals Troops archives in Germany, given the author in 1962. Frequent results of the cryptographic work will be found in the German Naval Staff War Diary.
  33. *Vorstoss Tirpitz (Flottenchef), Scheer (BdK), Hipper, 5. und 8. Z. Fl. (FdZ) in die Barentssee, Unternehmung Rösselsprung, 2. bis 7. Juli 1942*, published in *Operation und*

- Taktik* (Heft 13), August 1944, which will be cited hereafter as *Tirpitz Sortie*. See note 5.
34. General-Admiral Carls, *Final Report on The Knight's Move*, dated 12 July 1942. Cited hereafter as Carls's Final Report. This is in file PG/32508, and there is a British Admiralty translation under reference NID/X.106/47. Also, German Naval Staff War Diary, 1 June 1942. File PG/32054 (Film T-14 Part I).
  35. Admiral Schniewind's appreciation of the naval situation is entitled *Operative Verwendung der Flottenstreitkräfte im Nordraum*, 30 May 1942. File PG/32586 (Film T-41-B).
  36. German Naval Staff War Diary, 1 June 1942.
  37. Naval Group North's operational directive, 4 June 1942, is in file PG/36795 (Film T-60-D): *Operative Weisung für Einsatz der Drontheim- und Narvik-Gruppe gegen einen PQ-Geleitzug*. (Deckname: *Rösselsprung*). As an appendix it contains an appreciation of the situation. Cf. also *Tirpitz Sortie*.
  38. German Naval Staff War Diary, 6 June.
  39. German Naval Staff War Diary, 9 June.
  40. German Naval Staff War Diary, 9 June. The "detailed scheme" is contained in a *Vortragsnotiz* (conference note) prepared by the Naval Staff and dated 9 June 1942. It is reproduced in file PG/31747 (Film T-353-B) and appears in translation as the appendix of Führer Naval Conference, 15 June 1942, *Brassey's Naval Annual* 1948, pp. 286–7.
  41. Details on German Intelligence about PQ.17 are in *Tirpitz Sortie*. The ordering to sea of the nine U-boats is reported in German Naval Staff War Diary, 10 June, 17 June and 23 June 1942. Admiral Schmudt's signals to the U-boats, ordering them to sail, are in the German Admiralty's special *Knight's Move* file PG/32586 (Film T-41-B).
  42. Admiral Schniewind's Operation Order, *Operationsbefehl. Einsatz der Flottenstreitkräfte in Nordraum gegen einen PQ-Geleitzug*, 14 June 1942, is an appendix to *Tirpitz Sortie*.

## 2. *The Knight's Move*

1. Diary of Martin Bormann as Secretary of the Führer, 11 June 1942.
2. Führer Naval Conference, 15 June 1942. File PG/31762 (Film T-413-B). Cf. diary of Captain Assmann, translated in *Report on the German Naval War Effort*, Admiralty document NID.24/T.65/45, 15 June 1942: "Proposed attack on PQ.17 H[itler] sees grave danger to heavy ships through enemy carriers . . . Planning of attack on PQ.17: there must be extensive reconnaissance and attack only to be carried out if enemy naval forces are proved to be not superior in strength." For additional general German material on north Russian convoys, see Assmann's *The German Conduct of the War Against the Anglo-Russian Convoy Traffic in Northern Waters, 1941–1945* – a general study, sum-

- marising German records.
3. Schniewind's Operation Order, 14 June. Fifth Air Force War Diary, with its complete summary of operations against PQ.17.
  4. Admiral Schmundt's War Diary, *passim*.
  5. Cf. *The German Northern Theatre of Operations* (U.S. Department of the Army pamphlet No. 20-271), p. 216.
  6. The signals ordering the U-boats to sea are in file PG/32586 (Film T-41-B), and the despatching of the U-boats is also recorded in German Naval Staff War Diary, 17 and 23 June. Cf. Herbert Zeissler, *U-Boots-Liste* (Hamburg, 1956).
  7. German Naval Staff War Diary, 19 June.
  8. German Naval Staff War Diary, 29 June.
  9. German Naval Staff War Diary, 30 June.
  10. Action Report on Voyage of *Troubadour*, by Ensign Howard Carraway, USNR, 25 July 1942; and recorded statement by Carraway in U.S. Naval Archives.
  11. Cables from Assistant U.S. Naval Attaché, London, to Chief of Naval Operations, Washington, 4, 11 and 20 June 1942.
  12. Information from Captain I. J. Anderson, *Bellingham's* Second Officer, July 1962.
  13. Tovey *Despatch*, 3 January 1943. Cf. Roskill, *The War at Sea*, vol. II, p. 135.
  14. Signal from C-in-C Home Fleet, originating at 10.41 P.M. GMT, 22 June 1942. Paraphrased also in *Wichita's* War Diary, 23 June.
  15. Signal from C-in-C Home Fleet to Admiralty and Rear-Admiral Hamilton, originating at 11.55 A.M. GMT, 22 June.
  16. Hamilton's letters home, 15 February, 26 March, 26 November, 22 February 1942.
  17. *Ibid.*, Easter Sunday, 26 March, 11 April 1942.
  18. Cf. Roskill, *op. cit.*, p. 124. Hamilton wrote a memorandum on the subject of tackling *Tirpitz* and the failure of the *Victorious* operation, dated 12 March 1942. The latter quotations are from his letters home dated 14 March and Easter Sunday 1942.
  19. Rear-Admiral Commanding, First Cruiser Squadron: "Report of the Proceedings of the Cruiser Force Covering Convoy PQ.17," dated 11 July 1942. (Secret, W.09/8/148.) Cited hereafter as Hamilton's Final Report.
  20. Lieutenant Douglas E. Fairbanks Jr., USNR: "Cruiser Covering Force, June 25 to July 8, 1942" (94 pages). My copy came from Vice-Admiral Howard E. Orem's personal files. Cited hereafter as Fairbanks Diary.
  21. Fairbanks Diary, 25 June. Also a file of *Wichita's* signals in U.S. naval archives: signals between *Wichita*, *Tuscaloosa*, ComDesRon 8 and Com-Task Force 99 (Admiral Giffen) between 4:30 P.M. and 5:01 P.M., 25 June.
  22. Rear-Admiral Commanding, First Cruiser Squadron: "Operation Orders," dated 25 June 1942. (Secret, W.09/8/604.) Copies of this, of Commander Jack E. Broome's "Instructions for Close Escorts, PQ.17"

- dated 28 June 1942, and of the improvised “*Keppel-code*” devised by Broome for his force’s signalling are in *Wichita*’s file at U.S. Naval Archives.
23. Admiralty signal to C-in-C Home Fleet, repeated to C.S. One, to be passed to *Keppel*, originating at 1.57 A.M., 27 June. Reproduced as Appendix I, pp. 370–2.
  24. Fairbanks Diary, 27 June.
  25. Rear-Admiral Hamilton’s pencilled “Notes for PQ.17 Masters’ Conference at Hvalfiord,” 27 June 1942. Cf. Hamilton’s Final Report. The description of the conference is also based on information from Mr. Leo Gradwell, March 1963, and on several of the ships’ Voyage Reports.
  26. Log kept by Captain O. C. Morris (*Zamalek*). Also *Zamalek*’s Voyage Report, dated 11 July 1942.
  27. Captain Mervyn Stone, *Olopana*’s Voyage Report.
  28. Fairbanks Diary, 27 June.
  29. U.S. Naval Institute *Proceedings*, January 1946. War Diary of Iceland Naval Operating Base, 27 June 1942.
  30. PQ.17 Convoy Orders. Roskill, *op. cit.*, p. 137, writes: “All the merchantmen were bound for Archangel.” Not so.
  31. *Troubadour*’s Armed Guard Report.
  32. Diary of Lieutenant James Caradus, *La Malouine*’s Asdic officer, cited hereafter as Caradus Diary. Cf. *Zamalek*’s Master’s Log, Hamilton’s Final Report, and information from Mr. Leo Gradwell, March 1963.
  33. Roskill, *op. cit.*, pp. 135–6.
  34. Tovey’s Final Report, and Tovey *Despatch*. For the movements of the Home Fleet, the War Diaries of USS *Mayrant* and USS *Rhind* were also consulted.
  35. Fairbanks Diary, 30 June.
- ### 3. “*The Victim is PQ.17*”
- 1 *Tirpitz* Sortie. Carls’s Final Report. Summary of the Operation in Schmundt’s War Diary, and summary in Fifth Air Force War Diary.
  2. Schmundt’s War Diary, 1 July. German Naval Staff War Diary, 1 and 2 July. (File PG/32055; Film T-14 Part II, 1–14 July; Film T-15, 14–31 July 1942).
  3. Godfrey Winn, *PQ.17, the Story of a Ship* (Hutchinson, 1947), p. 70.
  4. Fairbanks Diary, 1 July.
  5. *La Malouine*’s signal log.
  6. Schmundt’s War Diary.
  7. *Ibid.*, 1 July.
  8. *Wichita*’s War Diary, 1 July.
  9. Tovey’s Final Report.
  10. *Eingegangene Meldungen Generalstab Luftwaffe*, printed as daily appendices in War Diary of German High Command Operations Staff (OKW/WFSt), 1 July 1942. Cited hereafter as German Air Staff Brief Report. The text of the signals is in Schmundt’s War Diary.
  11. Carls’s Final Report.
  12. Appreciation in German Naval Staff War Diary, 2 July.
  13. War Diary of Fifth Air Force.
  14. *Tirpitz* Sortie. German Naval Staff War Diary, 2 July. Schmundt’s War Diary.

15. *La Malouine's* signal log. *Bellingham's* Armed Guard Report.
16. German Air Staff Brief Report, 4 July.
17. Hamilton's Final Report. USS *Wichita's* War Diary. USS *Rowan's* War Diary. USS *Tuscaloosa's* Report, "Operations of Cruiser Covering Force with PQ.17," 9 July 1942. Fairbanks Diary, 2 July.
18. Fifth Air Force War Diary. Air Ministry pamphlet, *The Rise and Fall of the German Air Force*, pp. 111–13.
19. Notes by Lieutenant-Commander Higgins, gunnery observer in *Wilton*.
20. *El Capitán's*, *Troubadour's* and *William Hooper's* Armed Guard Reports.
21. *Zaafaran's* Voyage Report.
22. *Zamalek's* Log, Master's Log, Ship's Articles, and interviews with Captain Owen C. Morris and Lieutenant N. McCallum.
23. *John Witherspoon's* Armed Guard Report.
24. *Tirpitz* Sortie. German Naval Staff War Diary, 3 July.
25. Schmundt's War Diary, 3 July.
26. Picker, *Hitler's Tischgespräche* (Seewald Verlag, Stuttgart, 1963), pp. 433–4.
27. Report by the Chief of Naval Operations in German Naval Staff War Diary, 3 July.
28. Schmundt's War Diary, 2 July. Brief Reports of *U-88* and *U-355* contained as an appendix.
29. Harald Busch, *So War der U-Bootkrieg* (Deutscher Heimat-Verlag, Bielefeld, 1957), p. 307.
30. Hamilton's Final Report. Also, Rear-Admiral L. H. K. Hamilton, "Report on the Operation of the Cruiser Force Covering PQ.17," 6 July 1942. (Secret. W.09/8/141.) Cited hereafter as Hamilton's Preliminary Report.
31. *Wichita's* War Diary, 3 July.
32. Hamilton's Final Report.
33. *Zamalek's* Master's Log, 3 July.
34. Tovey *Despatch*. Roskill, *The War at Sea*, vol. II, p. 137.
35. Fairbanks Diary, 3–4 July.
36. Tovey's Report. *Tirpitz* Sortie. German Naval Staff War Diary, 3 July.
37. Schmundt's War Diary, 3 July.
38. *Ibid.*
39. *Tirpitz* Sortie. Bormann Diary, 3 July.
40. Information from Mr. (now Lord) Justice Winn, April 1963. The then Commander Rodger Winn, RNVR, was CO of the Admiralty's Submarine Tracking Room at the time.
41. *Tirpitz* Sortie. Schmundt's War Diary, 3 July.
42. Diary of *Bellingham's* Second Officer.
43. Notes of gunnery observer in *Wilton*. Hamilton's Final Report. *Zamalek's* Master's Log. Information from Flight Officer H. H. Edwards, the pilot, and Mr. W. C. Taylor, the *Walrus's* catapult officer in *London*.
44. German Naval Staff War Diary. Schmundt's War Diary.
45. Diary of *Bellingham's* Second Officer.
46. *Tirpitz* Sortie. German Naval Staff War Diary, 3 July.
47. Information from Vice-Admiral Denning.
48. Appreciation timed soon after

midnight, 3–4 July, in German Naval Staff War Diary.

49. *Samuel Chase's* Armed Guard Report.

50. Statement by Armed Guard officer, Ensign Howard E. Carraway, USNR, in U.S. Naval Archives. Quoted in S. E. Morison, *U.S. Naval Operations in World War II*, p. 182.

51. Based on information from the Voyage Reports of *Olopana*, *John Witherspoon* and *Christopher Newport*; and from Mr. James E. Akins (seaman), T. J. Mooney (Chief Engineer), and Mr. W. Feldheim (seaman) of *Carlton*. Also, letter of commendation of *Christopher Newport's* gunner Hugh P. Wright, written by Armed Guard officer Lieutenant F. M. Coy, USNR, 11 September 1942.

52. *Zamalek's* Master's Log and ship's log. Information from Captain O. C. Morris, Second Officer Captain T. G. Lennard, and Surgeon-Lieutenant N. McCallum.

53. Information from Lieutenant-Commander J. Rankin (*Dianella*). Regarding the way in which the freighter had been abandoned, he commented: "I have never seen a ship abandoned as fast as she was; within 30 seconds of the torpedo's striking home, the lifeboats were being lowered away over the side."

#### 4. *Decisions and Disaster*

1. German Naval Staff War Diary, 3 July. In general, during this and

successive chapters extensive use has been made of a file of 800 memoranda prepared by the Office of Naval Intelligence – the summaries of statements by survivors of U.S. merchant vessels torpedoed during the Second World War. Those relating to PQ.17 are from the crews of *William Hooper*, *Carlton*, *Daniel Morgan*, *Honomu*, *Pankraft*, *Washington*, *John Witherspoon*, *Alcoa Ranger* and *El Capitán*.

2. Schmundt's War Diary.

3. Hamilton's Final Report.

4. Caradus Diary, 4 July.

5. The cable quoted in a naval message from Commander, U.S. Naval Forces Europe, to Commander-in-Chief, U.S. Fleet, Washington, 4 July 1942 (U.S. Naval Archives). Information on the subsequent developments in London is from Captain G. R. G. Allen, Admiral E. L. S. King, who was ACNS (Trade), the late Rear-Admiral E. J. P. Brind, who was ACNS (Home), and Sir Henry Moore, who was Vice-Chief of Naval Staff. Rear-Admiral H. B. Rawlings was ACNS (Foreign).

6. Signals appendix to Hamilton's Preliminary Report, 6 July.

7. Hamilton's Preliminary Report; and letter, Hamilton to Tovey, 9 July 1942.

8. *Tovey Despatch*; cf. Tovey's Report and *London's* Signal Log.

9. Letter, Hamilton to Tovey, 9 July.

10. German Naval Staff War Diary, 4 July.

11. Naval Group North's War Diary, 4 July, quoted in PG/31747 (Film T-353-B) and in *Tirpitz* Sortie.

12. Fifth Air Force War Diary, 4 July.
13. AI(K) Reports Nos. 175/1942 and 196/1942, July 1942.
14. German Naval Staff War Diary, 4 July; German Air Staff Brief Report, 4 July. ComDesRon 8's report. Hamilton's Final Report. Notes by Lieutenant-Commander Higgens. *La Malouine's* signal log. *Keppel* Diary, 4 July.
15. Schmundt's War Diary, 4 July.
16. *U-88's* Brief Report, 12 July; *U-88's* torpedo log.
17. *Britomart's* Report. Caradus Diary.
18. Signal C.S. One to *Keppel* originating at 8.11 P.M., 4 July.
19. *Zamalek's* logs and reports. Interview with Surgeon-Lieutenant N. McCallum. Notes by Lieutenant-Commander Higgens. *Wainwright's* Report. *La Malouine's* signal log.
20. Commodore Dowding's Report.
21. *William Hooper's* Armed Guard Report, and summary of statements by her survivors.
22. *Bellingham's* Armed Guard Report and *El Capitán's* Armed Guard Report; also diary of *Bellingham's* Second Officer. Commodore Dowding stated: "The concentrated fire on him was terrific and he must have been riddled with every kind of projectile – a very brave man."
23. Interviews with Captain John Evans (*Navarino's* Second Officer) and with Mr. Iain Laing.
24. Diary of *Bellingham's* Second Officer.
25. *The Sundial*, *USS Wichita's* newspaper, 5 July.
26. Letter, Hamilton to Tovey, 6 July.
27. Interview with Captain Rupert Hull, Second Officer of *El Capitán*, January 1963.
28. *Olopana's* Report.
29. Notes by Lieutenant-Commander Higgens.
30. *Wainwright's* Report.
31. Signal, Hamilton to *Keppel*, originating at 8.40 P.M., 4 July.
32. *Life* magazine, 3 August 1942; Caradus Diary, 4 July.
33. Fairbanks Diary, 4 July.
34. From an article by Broome in *TV-Times* in the summer of 1960 in connection with an episode of the television series "Sea War," for which he wrote the script.
35. Hamilton's Preliminary Report.
36. Caradus Diary.
37. Information from Mr. Nathaniel E. Platt, second assistant engineer, *John Witherspoon*.
38. Narrative by Ensign Howard E. Carraway, *Troubadour's* Armed Guard officer, 26 March 1945, in U.S. Naval Archives. Some waggish reviewing officer wrote "Damn polite torpedo!" beside this passage of Carraway's report.
39. Other information from Mr. James Bruce (*Zaafaran*) and from Captain C. T. R. Lennard, Surgeon-Lieutenant N. McCallum and Captain Owen C. Morris (*Zamalek*).
40. *Britomart's* Report, and signals appendix.
41. Information from Captain John Evans, Second Officer of *Navarino*. The sinking of *Navarino* and other British ships in this convoy is formally recorded in Admiralty monograph BR.1337, *British and Foreign Merchant Vessels Lost or Damaged by Enemy Action during*

- Second World War*. Time, tonnage and location are given.
42. Interview with Captain John Litchfield MP, executive officer of *Norfolk* at the time, January 1963.
  43. Schmudt's War Diary; German Naval Staff War Diary, 4 July. Schmudt's "Order for the Transfer of the *Lützow* Group . . . from Narvik to Trondheim" is in his War Diary, and also in *Tirpitz's* files, PG/48556 (Film T-74-E).
  44. Interview with Vice-Admiral Sir Norman Denning, April 1963.
  45. Interview with Mr. Justice Winn, April 1963.
  46. Interview with Admiral Sir Patrick Brind, April 1963 (since deceased).
  47. Interview with Admiral E. L. S. King, April 1963.
  48. Interview with Admiral Sir Henry Moore, March 1963.
  49. Interview with Admiral Sir John Eccles, April 1963 (since deceased).
  50. *La Malouine's* signal log.
  51. Interviews with Commander J. Rankin (*Dianella*) and Commander P. L. Newstead, January 1963.
  52. Roskill, *op. cit.*, p. 141n. Cf. J. E. Broome, *Make a Signal* (Putnam, 1955), p. 214.
  53. Information from Mr. E. C. Miller (Chief Engineer, *River Afton*), November 1962.
  54. Rear-Admiral S. E. Morison, *History of United States Naval Operations in World War II*, vol. II, p. 185n.
  55. Information from Vice-Admiral R. M. Servaes, October 1966.
  56. Hamilton's Final Report; *Wichita's* War Diary. Interview with Captain John Litchfield, February 1963. USS *Tuscaloosa's* War Diary records that the six destroyers of Broome's force joined the cruiser squadron at 11.05 P.M., 4 July.
  57. Notes by Lieutenant-Commander Higgens (*Wilton*), 4 July.
  58. Interview with Mr. W. G. Taylor, January 1963. G. Winn, *op. cit.*, p. 92.
  59. Signal, ComDesRon 8 to DesRon 8, Captain (D) 6, C.S. One, originating at 5.20 A.M., 5 July. In Hamilton's Final Report, *London's* signal log and *Wainwright's* War Diary.
  60. Interview with Mr. D. D. Summers (*Keppel*), March 1963.
  61. Interview with Captain Archibald Hobson (*Aldersdale*), November 1962.
  62. Interview with Mr. Leo Gradwell, March 1963; cf. *My Sea Lady*, p. 171.
  63. Information from Mr. F. N. Lewin, May 1962.
  64. Interview with Captain G. R. G. Allen, April 1963.
  65. Churchill, *op. cit.*, p. 236. The Admiralty strongly regretted that this passage had been published, as it contradicted the etiquette that orders were issued by "the Admiralty" rather than by individuals.
  66. Memorandum, Tovey to Secretary of the Admiralty, 11 July: "Most Secret. Reports of the Operations of the Forces Covering Convoys PQ.17 and QP.13" (919/HF.01325/4/98). This will be cited as Tovey's Report.
  67. Letter, Captain J. E. Broome to *Daily Telegraph*, 30 October 1950.
  68. Diary of Nathaniel E. Platt, 4 July.
  69. Interview with Lieutenant-Commander J. G. Rankin, January 1963.

70. *Britomart's* Report and signals appendix.
71. Interview with Commander S. S. Stammwitz, March 1963.
72. Interview with Leo Gradwell, March 1963. Cf. the account by Mr. Richard Elsdon, *Ayrshire's* First Lieutenant, in *My Sea Lady*, pp. 171–4.
73. *Ayrshire's* Report. Letter, Gradwell to Admiral Commanding, Iceland Command, and SBNO North Russia, 26 July.
74. List of PQ.17 signals maintained by Lieutenant Caradus of *La Malouine*.
75. Narrative by Ensign Howard E. Carraway, 26 March 1945. Also *Ayrshire's* Preliminary Report: letter, Gradwell to SBNO North Russia, 13 July 1942. Cf. *My Sea Lady* and various official accounts.
76. Interview with Vice-Admiral R. M. Servaes, March 1963. Mr. J. M. Waterhouse described in November 1962 the mood in the Chief Petty Officers' mess of *London* after the text of the Admiralty's signals became known.
77. Signal, C.S. One (Hamilton) to General, originating at 1.15 A.M., 5 July, on *London's* signal log. There is a copy in *Wichita's* Report, and in USS *Tuscaloosa's* "Report of Operations with British Cruiser Squadron One in Covering Voyage of Convoy PQ.17 to Murmansk, Russia."
78. *Wichita's* War Diary, 5 July.
79. Signal *Keppel* to C.S. One, originating at 5.25 A.M., 5 July.
80. Signal, C.S. One to *Keppel*, originating at 2.39 P.M., 5 July.
81. Signal, *Keppel* to C.S. One, originating at 4.04 P.M., 5 July.
82. Private Diary of Vice-Admiral Sir Geoffrey Miles, July 1942; amplified in an interview, February 1963.

## 5. *The Better Part of Valour*

1. Schmundt's War Diary, 5 July 1942. For operational charts and U-boat overlays showing the progress of the submarine attack on PQ.17, use was made of files PG/71900b to PG/71900d (Film T-375-B). These originate from General-Admiral Carls's office, *Marinegruppenkommando Nord*.
2. *U-334's* torpedo logs.
3. Interview with Captain J. Wharton, October 1962.
4. *U-703's* torpedo logs.
5. *Peter Kerr's* and *Bellingham's* Armed Guard Reports.
6. Further information from interview with Mr. Ed Soliman, the former chief cook of *Empire Byron*, June 1963. It would have been of interest to hear Rimington's account of these events, but I finally traced him only just after a severe road accident in which he lost his speech and memory. The military hospital provided me with his passport and papers which were themselves of some assistance. Herr J. Plambeck, one of the Germans who interrogated Rimington in Norway, has told me they were able to gain no Intelligence of value from him.
7. Signal, *U-703* to Schmundt, originating at 10.15 A.M., 5 July.

8. Signal, C.S. One (Hamilton) to *Wichita*, at 11:30 A.M., 5 July.
9. *U-88's* torpedo log.
10. The description of *Carlton's* sinking is based on information from Mr. T. J. Mooney, the chief engineer, in October 1962; from Mr. James E. Akins, a seaman, in December 1962; and on the summary of statements by *Carlton's* survivors, March 1945. Times in my narrative are given two hours later than GMT, of course – hence the American ship's apparently unorthodox watch-keeping hours.
11. *U-77's* Brief Report, 12 July. Schmundt's War Diary.
12. *Tirpitz* Sortie. German Naval Staff War Diary, 5 July.
13. Signal, Naval Group North to Schmundt and others, received at 7.02 A.M., 5 July.
14. Tovey's Report.
15. German Naval Staff War Diary, 5 July.
16. Schmundt's War Diary. The usual delays held up the codeword's transmission. It is not clear at what time the signal reached *Tirpitz*, but it took thirty minutes to reach Schmundt by teleprinter in Narvik. The text of the codeword as quoted in the footnote was obtained from a signal in file PG/32586 (Film T-41-B).
17. Preliminary Report of Fleet Commander [Schniewind] on *The Knight's Move*, reproduced in German Naval Staff War Diary, 12 July. Carls's Final Report.
18. German Air Staff Brief Report, 5 July. Summary in German Naval Staff War Diary, 5 July. German Fifth Air Force War Diary, 5 July. Schmundt's War Diary, 5 July.
19. Caradus Diary, 5 July.
20. Diary of *Bellingham's* Second Officer.
21. *John Witherspoon's* Armed Guard Report.
22. *Daniel Morgan's* Armed Guard Report.
23. *Benjamin Harrison's* Armed Guard Report.
24. *U-88's* Brief Report, 12 July.
25. Interview with Mr. T. D. Nield, British gunner in *Fairfield City*, June 1963.
26. *La Malouine's* signal log.
27. *U-88's* torpedo logs; *U-88's* Brief Report.
28. Statements from *Daniel Morgan's* survivors, November 1962.
29. *Honomu's* Armed Guard Report; information from Matson Navigation Company; summary of statements by *Honomu's* survivors. Information from Mr. Alan L. Harvie, *Honomu's* second assistant engineer, September 1962. Many *Honomu* survivors were again sunk when *Silver Sword* was lost on the return convoy.
30. *U-334's* torpedo log. Also interviews with *U-334's* wireless operator Herr Otto Bork, and her torpedo mechanic Herr Günther Döschner, in September and October 1962, and Döschner's diary notes.
31. Summary of statements by *Honomu's* survivors.
32. *U-456's* torpedo logs.
33. Signal, *U-456* to Schmundt, received at 5 P.M., 5 July.
34. G. Winn, *op. cit.*, pp. 97–8.

35. Letter from the Secretary of the Navy to Masters of U.S. Merchant Ships, "Instructions for Scuttling Merchant Ships," 30 March 1942. The copy cited was in *Fairfield City's* file, dated 17 April 1942 (U.S. Naval Archives).
36. *Alcoa Ranger's* Report.
37. Interview with Mr. Hawtry Benson (the Chief Officer), December 1962.
38. Interview with Mr. Thomas Goodwin (*Earlston* fireman), November 1962.
39. *La Malouine's* signal log. *Bellingham's* Armed Guard Report. The German monitoring services also picked up this entire range of distress signals, and they are reproduced in file PG/32586 (Film T-41-B).
40. Information from Mr. James E. Akins. Summary of statements of *Carlton's* survivors, 10 March 1945.
41. Letter from Mr. Walter Feldheim to his wife from a German prison camp, 1944.
42. Information from Mr. T. J. Mooney.
43. *Signal*, second September issue, 1942. This feature carried a series of photographs taken by the German war reporter Benno Wundshammer, who flew with one Ju 88 squadron attacking the scattered freighters on 5 July. There are lengthy reports on the German Air Force interrogations of fourteen *Carlton* survivors in the German Admiralty's *Knight's Move* file, PG/32586 (Film T-41-B).
44. *Völkischer Beobachter*, Berlin edition, 2 August 1942.
45. German radio in Danish for Denmark, 11.40 P.M., 8 July.
46. Zeesen transmitter in Spanish for Latin America, 3.15 A.M., 4 August.
47. Station Debunk (Axis origin), in English for America, 4:30 A.M., 20 July.
48. These signals are recorded in several War Diaries. My text is taken from *La Malouine's* signal log.
49. Admiral Giffen's War Diary, 5 July.
50. German Naval Staff War Diary, 5 July. According to *Tirpitz* Sortie, a shore station was overheard acknowledging the first transmission. This is at variance with the version in other German records. According to contemporary war diaries, the first signal was believed by the Germans to be from a British submarine.
51. Carls's Final Report. A chart of the German battle fleet's track and their Intelligence on the PQ.17 convoy's movements was reproduced at the end of *Tirpitz* Sortie. The original of this chart is in file PG/71923 (Film T-342).
52. Report by German Naval Staff's Chief of Naval Signals, reproduced in Naval Staff War Diary, 6 July.
53. German Naval Staff War Diary. Carls's Final Report. In the German Admiralty's *Knight's Move* file PG/32586 (Film T-41-B) there is a note in Captain Assmann's handwriting describing the various arguments raised for and against breaking off the sortie, written on 5 July.
54. Schniewind's War Diary, quoted in *Tirpitz* Sortie. Also, Schniewind's Preliminary Report, 12 July 1942.
55. *Tirpitz* Sortie.

56. Commentary by Naval Group North on Schniewind's Preliminary Report, summarised in German Naval Staff War Diary, 12 July.
57. Schniewind's War Diary.
58. German Naval Staff War Diary, 7 July.
59. German Naval Staff War Diary, 8 July.
60. This was at a war conference on 6 July. German Naval Staff War Diary.
61. *German Northern Theatre of Operations*, p. 238. See also Note 28 for Chapter 9.
62. Schmundt's Summary of Operation, in his War Diary; and Raeder's comments at 6 July war conference.
63. *Tirpitz Sortie*. Schniewind's Preliminary Report, 12 July.

### 6. A Duty to Avoid Destruction

1. Summary of statements by *Peter Kerr's* survivors. Information from Mr. William P. Connolly, *Peter Kerr's* Second Officer.
2. *Völkischer Beobachter*, 22 August.
3. Fifth Air Force Intelligence Report to German High Command.
4. *Hoosier's* Armed Guard Report. Each Captain had been issued by the Naval Control Service Officer, Iceland, with a secret sealed list of points through which the convoy would pass and with a one-page "Stragglers' Route" to take him either back to Iceland or on to the White Sea. A copy is in U.S. Naval Archives. See also note on p. 268.
5. *Washington's* Armed Guard Report. Summary of statements by *Washington's* survivors, 9 November 1942.
6. Interview with Captain John Pascoe, January 1963.
7. Information from Captain J. R. G. Findlay, who was at the time a British cadet in *Paulus Potter*; and from Directoraat Generaal van Scheepvaart, 's-Gravenhage, Holland.
8. Interview with Mr. William Arnell-Smith (*Bolton Castle's* carpenter), January 1963. Also *Washington's* Armed Guard Report, which added: "We were sure they would machine-gun us, but they didn't." Summary of statements by *Washington's* survivors. Interview with Herr Benno Wundshammer, April 1967.
9. *Olopana's* Voyage Report.
10. *Zamalek's* reports and logs. Interview with Captain O. Morris, February 1963, and with other *Zamalek* officers.
11. *Aldersdale's* Official Log.
12. Information from Mr. James Bruce, July 1962.
13. Interview with Captain Archibald Hobson, November 1962.
14. Interviews with Mr. Hawtry Benson, Chief Officer; Mr. R. F. Crossley, gunner; Mr. T. F. Goodwin, fireman; and Mr. J. J. Collins, Second Engineer, in November and December 1962.
15. *U-334's* torpedo log.
16. Information from Herr Otto Bork (*U-334's* wireless operator), June 1962, and with Günther Döschner (torpedo mechanic), October 1962.
17. Schmundt's War Diary.

18. Naval Staff War Diary, 5 July. Signal, Schmundt to Naval Commandant Kirkenes and AOC North-East Air Command, 5 July. How the Fifth Air Force was able to escape blame is something of a mystery, for in a signal to Naval Staff in Berlin on 5 July they themselves claimed to have strafed a diving U-boat with machine-gun fire. The original signal is in file PG/32586 (Film T-41-B).
19. German Naval Staff War Diary, 13 July.
20. Interview with Mr. Hawtry Benson (*Earlston's* Chief Officer), who also met the two American seamen concerned at Marlag-Milag Nord.
21. *Signal*, September 1942.
22. Schmundt's War Diary.
23. Caradus Diary.
24. Diary of Captain I. J. Anderson (*Bellingham's* Second Officer).
25. *La Malouine's* signal log.
26. *Pankraft's* Armed Guard Report.
27. *La Malouine's* signal log. *Bellingham's* Armed Guard officer logged the signal at 7.46 P.M.
28. Summary of statements by *Pankraft's* survivors, 2 November 1942. On 27 July, Commander Roullard, Assistant U.S. Naval Attaché at Archangel, cabled the Chief of Naval Operations in Washington: "American ship *Pankraft* bombed and sunk on 5 July. All crew now Archangel and healthy except David Stockton, 2nd Mate, last seen floating in water killed by machine-gun bullet. John L. Carley died from injuries in life-boat, buried at sea."
29. G. Winn, *op. cit.*, p. 103. Substantially the same signals are in *Samuel Chase's* Armed Guard Report.
30. *Samuel Chase's* Armed Guard Report.
31. *Pankraft's* Armed Guard Report.
32. Interview with Mr. F. A. Leycock (pom-pom gun officer in *Lotus*), November 1962.
33. Letter, Gradwell (*Ayrshire*) to SBNO North Russia, 26 July.
34. *U-703's* torpedo logs.
35. Information from Captain Harold Charlton, November 1962. *River Afton's* report.
36. Information from Mr. E. C. Miller, November 1962.
37. Interview with Commodore J. C. K. Dowding, November 1962 (since deceased).
38. Broadcast in English by Mr. William Joyce, "Views on the News," at 10:30 P.M. from Breslau, 5 July. Among the papers of the late Lieutenant-General Sir N. M. Mason-Macfarlane, who was Head of the British Military Mission in Moscow, is his description of Russian comments on the material they received: "The Russian reactions were only what was to be expected. No word of appreciation for the ghastly losses sustained by our northern convoys. On the contrary, the material we provided was severely criticised and at a Press Luncheon one day the notorious Ilya Ehrenburg said that he wished that we would send less stuff but a better quality . . . It didn't help matters when the first batch of Valentine and Matilda tanks which were sent by the northern sea route

- to Archangel arrived with burst cylinder blocks as the radiators had never been emptied before the start of their Arctic trip. Neither did it help that the compressors of the Matildas all failed at low temperatures. The Russian comments on the power/weight ratios of our tanks, the narrowness of their tracks and the utter inadequacy of their two-pounder guns were difficult to counter.” Mason-Macfarlane held the view that firmer political commitments should have been exacted from the Russians in return for the aid they received from the West.
39. Tovey’s Report.
  40. Hamilton’s Final Report.
  41. G. Winn, *op. cit.*, p. 99.
  42. German Naval Staff War Diary.
  43. Hamilton’s Final Report. USS *Washington*’s Report of Proceedings, and War Diary of Commander, Task Force 99, Admiral Giffen, 6 July.
  44. Signal, DOD(H) for First Sea Lord, to SBNO North Russia, SBNO Archangel, Admiral Miles and C-in-C Home Fleet, originating at 2.31 A.M., 6 July. A similar signal is quoted by G. Winn, *op. cit.*, p. 106.
  45. Signal, Most Immediate, Most Secret, from DOD(H) for First Sea Lord to Escorts of PQ.17, repeated to SBNO North Russia, SBNO Archangel, C-in-C Home Fleet, originating at 2.30 A.M., 6 July. Cf. G. Winn, *op. cit.*, p. 102.
  46. Tovey’s Report. Hamilton’s Final Report.
  47. Interview with Mr. Leo Gradwell (Ayrshire), March 1963. He learned of the signals only when shown them in Archangel.
  48. Summary of signals kept by Lieutenant Caradus (*La Malouine*).
  49. Caradus Diary, 5–6 July.
  50. Interview with Mr. E. A. Leycock, November 1962. Commodore Dowding’s Report. *Pankraft’s* Armed Guard Report.
  51. Schmundt’s War Diary. German Naval Staff War Diary.
  52. Signal, C.S. One (Hamilton) to *Norfolk*, *Wichita* and *Tuscaloosa*, originating at 9.47 P.M., 6 July. Also appendix to letter, Hamilton to Tovey, 6 July. Also reproduced in *Wichita’s* War Diary.
  53. Signal, *Norfolk* to C.S. One, received at 10.36 P.M., 6 July.
  54. Signal, *Wichita* to C.S. One, received at 10.40 P.M., 6 July.
  55. Signal, C.S. One to *Norfolk*, despatched at 10.40 P.M., 6 July.
  56. Signal, C.S. One to *Wichita*, *Tuscaloosa*, CDS 8 (Captain Moon) *Wainwright*, *Rowan*, despatched at 10.44 P.M., 6 July.

## 7. *The New Land*

1. *The Arctic Pilot* (HMSO), vol. I, p. 165.
2. *Britomart’s* Report.
3. Interview with Commander S. S. Stammwitz, March 1963. Information from Mr. W. A. Dunk, June 1962.
4. Caradus Diary.
5. G. Winn, *op. cit.*, p. 108.
6. *Hoosier’s* Armed Guard Report.

7. *El Capitán's* Armed Guard Report, and interview with Captain Rupert Hull, January 1963. *Benjamin Harrison's* Armed Guard Report.
8. Interview with Surgeon-Lieutenant N. McCallum, January 1963.
9. *Zamalek's* Master's log.
10. *Olopana's* Report.
11. German Naval Staff War Diary, 6 July. Schmundt's War Diary, 6 July. German Air Staff Brief Report, 6 July.
12. *Daniel Morgan's* Armed Guard Report.
13. *John Witherspoon's* Armed Guard Report.
14. *U-255's* torpedo log.
15. Diary of Mr. Nathaniel E. Platt, 6 July.
16. *U-88's* Brief Report, 12 July.
17. *Pan Atlantic's* Armed Guard Report.
18. *U-703's* torpedo logs. Schmundt's War Diary.
19. Schmundt's War Diary, 6 July.
20. Summary of Operations against PQ.17, in Fifth Air Force War Diary.
21. German Naval Staff War Diary, 6 July.
22. Schmundt's War Diary, 7 July.
23. Diary of *Bellingham's* Second Officer, 7 July. *Bellingham's* Armed Guard Report. Information from Mr. George Bissilf, July 1962.
24. *Alcoa Ranger's* Armed Guard Report.
25. Captain F. W. Harvey's Diary. *Empire Tide's* Voyage Report. *Olopana's* Voyage Report. Cf. Royal Mail Line's official history, *Eight Bells*, by T. A. Bushell.
26. Interview with Lieutenant-Commander J. G. Rankin, January 1963. Information from Rear-Admiral J. H. F. Crombie, April 1963. Interview with Captain Guy O. Maund, April 1963.
27. Interview with Rear-Admiral Sir R. H. L. Bevan.
28. BBC Monitoring Report No. 1085. Broadcast from Luxembourg in German for Germany, 2 P.M., 7 July.
29. *OKW Sondermeldung*.
30. *Wichita's* signal log.
31. Caradus Diary, 7 July.
32. *Zamalek's* Master's Log. *Britomart's* Report.
33. Information from Mr. W. A. Dunk, April 1962.
34. *U-355's* Brief Report, 12 July.
35. *U-355's* torpedo log.
36. Diary of Mr. Needham Forth, 7 July.
37. Interview with Captain S. J. Gordon, December 1962.
38. Interview with Mr. R. B. Fearnside, December 1962.
39. Interview with Mr. Needham Forth, December 1962.
40. Other documents used were Fearnside's Diary, *Olopana's* and *Empire Tide's* Voyage Reports, the latter's Official Log, and *Hartlebury's* C & D List.
41. William Joyce, speaking in English, broadcast from Breslau at 10:30 P.M., 7 July.
42. Wilhelmstrasse comment quoted in broadcast from Calais in English, 7:30 P.M., 7 July.
43. German Naval Staff War Diary. Schmundt's War Diary.
44. Summary of statements by *Olopana's* survivors.
45. Diary of *Bellingham's* Second

- Officer, I. J. Anderson, 8 July.
46. *Bellingham's* Armed Guard Report.
47. Bormann's notes on Hitler's lunchtime conversation, 8 July. Reproduced in *Hitlers Tischgespräche*.
48. Fairbanks Diary, 7 July. Under 5 July 1942, the War Diary of Iceland Naval Operating Base records: "At 2040, QP.13 and British escorts struck the minefield off the North-West tip of Iceland. O-in-C unable to determine exact location of safe channel. Due to 'thick' weather for past 48 hours and faulty instruments convoy entered minefield. Ships sunk were: *Hybert* (US), *Massmar* (US), *Heffron* (US), *John Randolph* (US), *Rodina* (Rus.), and *Niger* (Bf.). Ships damaged were: *Richard H. Lee* (US), *Exterminator* (Pan.), and *Capira* (Pan.). All damaged ships were brought to port and repaired. Forward portion of *John Randolph* (US) from 15' abaft No. 2 hold towed to Onundafjordur and beached. Survivors landed and hospitalised where necessary."
49. Letter, Hamilton to Tovey, 6 July (not delivered until the 7th).
50. Letter, Captain Bellars to Hamilton, 8 July.
51. Letter, Hamilton to Tovey, 9 July.
52. Interview with Vice-Admiral R. M. Servaes, March 1963.
53. Interview with Mr. J. Waterhouse, November 1962.
54. William Joyce, "Views of the News," from Breslau in English, 10:30 P.M., 8 July.
55. New British Broadcasting Station, broadcasting at 8:30, 9:30 and 10:30 P.M., 8 July.
56. Tovey *Despatch*.
57. Hansard, House of Commons, *Official Report*, vol. 381, cols. 951-4, 9 July. The shipping Debate was held in Secret Session on 16 July, after which the only published statement was: "The House considered the shipping situation and heard a statement from the Government." *Official Report*, vol. 381, col. 1376; see also cols. 1361 and 1363. The BBC's confidential Monitoring Report warned the Government that during 9 July "full propaganda use was made of the fact that the Commons Debate on the Shipping Situation was now to be held in Secret Session." (German Home Stations, 8 P.M.; Italian Home Stations, 10.45 P.M.; from Calais in English, 9.45 P.M.)
58. Schmundt's War Diary, signals appendix.
59. Schmundt's War Diary, 9 July.
60. German Naval Staff War Diary.
61. Interview with Captain Rupert Hull, First Officer of *El Capitán*, January 1963.
62. Moscow Radio in Russian, 8 A.M., 9 July.
63. Schmundt's War Diary, and its signals appendix.
64. *Zamalek's* Voyage Reports and Master's Log. Interview with Captain Owen C. Morris, February 1963.
65. Fifth Air Force War Diary.
66. German Air Staff Brief Report, 9 July. Fifth Air Force War Diary. German Naval Staff War Diary.
67. *Hoosier's* Armed Guard Report.
68. Information from Lieutenant John F. Geisse (*Tuscaloosa*), April

- 1962.
69. *El Capitán's* Armed Guard Report. Cf. James Caradus's article, "Convoy Will Scatter," in the *Auckland Weekly News*, 22 August 1962.
70. Schmundt's War Diary, 10 July.
71. *Zamalek's* Master's Log and Official Logbook. *Zamalek's* Report. Interviews with Captain O. C. Morris, Captain T. G. Lennard (Second Officer) and Surgeon-Lieutenant N. McCallum, February 1963.
72. Caradus Diary. The bombing is reported in *El Capitán's* and *John Witherspoon's* Armed Guard Reports.
73. Letter, Captain John Thevik to Captain Rupert Hull, 7 December 1955.
74. *Britomart's* Report. German Air Staff Brief Report, 10 July. Summary in Fifth Air Force War Diary.
75. Caradus Diary, 10 July. Also, a manuscript by James Caradus.
76. *Samuel Chase's* Armed Guard Report.
77. *Ocean Freedom's* Official Log.
78. German Naval Staff War Diary, 10 July.
79. BBC Monitoring Report No. 1089, issued 11 July.
80. *Daniel Morgan's* Armed Guard Report.
81. Commodore J. C. K. Dowding's Report, 13 July. Quoted in Roskill, *op. cit.*, p. 143.
82. Information from Mr. James E. Akins, December 1962. Summary of statements by *Carlton's* survivors.
83. Signal, Stumpff to Göring, 12 July, in Fifth Air Force War Diary.
84. Fifth Air Force War Diary, 10 July. Complete Report on the Operations against PQ.17.
85. Private diary of Admiral Sir Geoffrey Miles, 11 July 1942. Interview with Admiral Miles, February 1963.
86. The Earl of Avon: *The Eden Memoirs*, vol. II: *The Reckoning* (Cassell, 1965), pp. 376–7. Eden was evidently writing from *aides-mémoires* written at the time. Cf. Sir Llewellyn Woodward, *British Foreign Policy in the Second World War* (HMSO), p. 198.
87. "From the Ambassador's Notes," by Ivan M. Maisky, published in *Novye Mir*, Moscow, No. 7, July 1965. A version of Maisky's notes has been published (1967) by Hutchinson, London, but I have preferred my own translation.

## 8. First Back from Hell

1. Based also on interviews with Mr. Leo Gradwell, February and March 1963.
2. Cf. chapter on convoying in ice and ice navigation in *Arctic Pilot*, vol. I, p. 33 *passim* (1959 edition).
3. Letters, Gradwell to SBNO North Russia and others, 13 and 26 July.
4. *Empire Tide's* Voyage Report. T. A. Bushell, *Eight Bells*.
5. *Olopana's* Voyage Report.
6. *Empire Tide's* Voyage Report. *Empire Tide's* Official Log.
7. Letter, Gradwell to British naval authorities in north Russia, 13 July.
8. Diary of Admiral Golovko, Russian text published in Moscow in 1960: *Vmeste s'Flotom*, by Admiral A. G. Golovko. See especially the chap-

- ter entitled "Istoriya PQ.17," pp. 99–115, where he recounts in lurid detail the Russian submarine's torpedo attack on *Tirpitz*. An English edition has since been published under the title *With the Red Fleet* (Putnam, 1965).
9. Schmundt's War Diary, 13 July. Schmundt's summary of U-boat operations, and his appreciation of future convoy operations (appendix to his War Diary). Information from Commander R. Reche and Herr Hugo Deiring.
  10. Reche wrote an account of U-255's operations in Harald Busch's *So War der U-Bootkrieg* (Bielefeld, 1957). The above incident is described in part on pp. 311–12. Detailed descriptions of the secret Allied papers captured in *Paulus Potter* were given in a telegram from Schmundt to Berlin at 7.10 P.M. on 19 July (in the German Admiralty's *Knight's Move* file, PG/32586, Film T-41-B). They included: the convoy disposition and Sailing Orders issued by the Naval Control Service Officer, Iceland, which listed the minefields and the correct approach routes to Archangel; the ship's log; a volume entitled "Confidential Admiralty Merchant Shipping Instructions"; two volumes of "Merchant Ships Signal Books 1941"; the "Merchant Ships Code" in use for radio signals since 1 July 1942; "Signal Codes for Use with Aircraft"; and many similar documents. These were forwarded by courier to the German naval radio monitoring service for immediate exploitation.
  11. U-255's torpedo log.
  12. German Naval Staff War Diary, 13 July.
  13. Summary from torpedo logs of all submarines present.
  14. *Olopana's Voyage Report*. *Empire Tide's Voyage Report*. *Empire Tide's Official Logbook*. T. A. Bushell, *Eight Bells*.
  15. Diary of Captain F. W. Harvey, Master of *Empire Tide*.
  16. Interview with Commander S. S. Stammwitz (to whom Frankel related this), March 1963.
  17. Interview with Captain Guy O. Maund, April 1963.
  18. Captain Harvey's Report to Royal Mail Lines.
  19. Copy of "Certificate" supplied to me by Captain Mervyn Stone (*Olopana*).
  20. Caradus Diary, 15 July.
  21. Interview with Lieutenant-Commander J. G. Rankin, January 1963. Signal, Captain Frankel, Archangel, to Chief of Naval Operations, Washington, 18 July.
  22. Caradus Diary.

### 9. *Inquest*

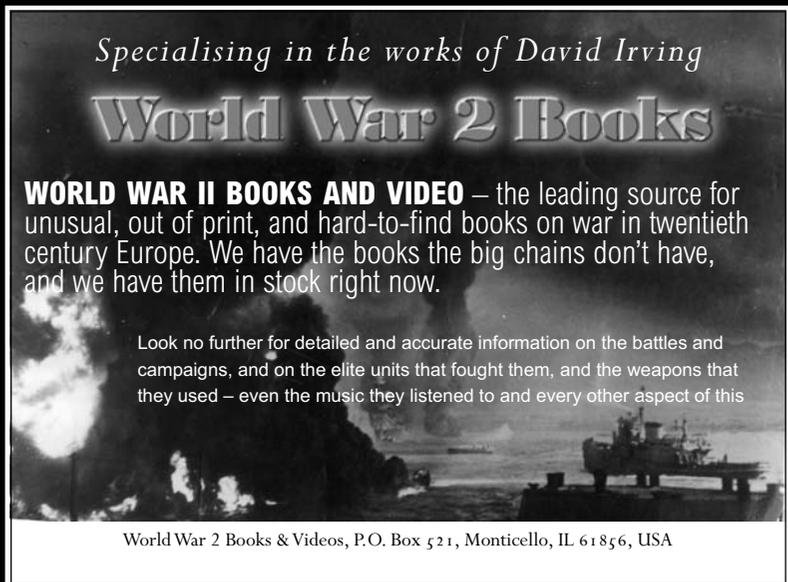
1. Telegram, Churchill to Stalin, 17 July (published in Churchill, *Second World War*, vol. IV, pp. 239–41).
2. Telegram, Stalin to Churchill, 23 July (Churchill, *op. cit.*, pp. 241–2).
3. Führer Naval Conference, 26 August, in file PG/31762 (Film T-413-B). Captain Frankel reported the arrival of *Winston-Salem* in a cable to Washington on 30 July. He

- added: "Crew co-operated fully."
4. Interview with Surgeon-Lieutenant N. McCallum, January 1963.
  5. Statement by *Troubadour's* Armed Guard Officer, 26 March 1945.
  6. Interview with Captain Rupert F. Hull, January 1963.
  7. Summary of statements by *Silver Sword's* survivors, 2 November 1942.
  8. Cable from Captain Frankel to Washington, 16 September.
  9. Caradus Diary, 29 July.
  10. Tovey *Despatch*.
  11. Diary of Vice-Admiral Sir Geoffrey Miles, 5–8 July 1942. Also interview with him, February 1963. On 27 July 1942, the Assistant U.S. Naval Attaché, Archangel, cabled to Washington: "There are now 1,200 survivors here of all nationalities, 500 of which are American."
  12. Interview with Mr. Thomas Goodwin, November 1962, and other *Earlston* survivors.
  13. English-language propaganda broadcast from Breslau at 11:30 P.M., 21 July.
  14. Information from Mr. James E. Akins, December 1962. The first definite news to reach the U.S. authorities of the fate of *Carlton* was a postcard received from Captain Hansen by his former trade union officials in Galveston: "The s/s *Carlton* was torpedoed and sank south of Spitzbergen on July 5, 1942. I lost four men and all my records including my Skipper's Certificate. Please keep one on ice for my return. All is well here." Confirming data on the loss of the troop-transport *Wuri* and its casualties were obtained from the German Naval Staff War Diary, 17 and 20 August 1942. File PG/32056 (Film T-15).
  15. Maisky's memoirs published in *Novye Mir*, Moscow, No. 7, 1965.
  16. House of Commons *Official Report*, vol. 382, col. 489.
  17. Letter from Vernon L. Frank to Mrs. Sarah A. Frank, Philadelphia, postmarked 14 December 1942; uncensored original in U.S. Naval Archives.
  18. The statement was published in House of Commons *Official Report*, vol. 431, cols. 1777–81. Cf. *The Times*, 16 December 1946.
  19. The Russian accusations were made in an article by Pavel Barvinchenko published in *Vodny Transport*, Moscow. The Admiralty *démenti* was quoted by the *Daily Telegraph*, 26 December 1962.
  20. Information from Mr. James Bruce, 1962. *Olopana's* Voyage Report. *The Times*, 29 September 1942.
  21. Hamilton, letter home, 14 July.
  22. Published in Churchill, *op. cit.*, pp 237–8. Churchill would by then probably have read Tovey's Report, which was no more judiciously worded.
  23. Roskill, *op. cit.*, p. 144.
  24. Churchill, *op. cit.*, p. 238.
  25. Hamilton's Final Report.
  26. Letter, Hamilton to Admiral Sir James Somerville, C-in-C Eastern Fleet, 30 September 1942 (pencil draft).
  27. Letter, Tovey to Hamilton, 20 September 1942.
  28. After Grand-Admiral Raeder's resignation, Hitler continued to fulminate about the orders issued by

the Naval Staff and their “over cautious leadership.” These criticisms reached the Naval Staff, who drew up a memorandum, on 13 February 1943, in which they sought to assess how far the orders and directives they had issued had been in accordance with Hitler’s oft-repeated comments such as, “we cannot afford any loss of prestige at this moment” and “the loss of our ships must be avoided at all costs.” The memorandum contained a number of quotations from the War Diary of Naval Group North about *The Knight’s Move* – around which operation the entire Raeder-Hitler controversy centred. It cited the

principles which the Führer had laid down at his conferences with Raeder on 12 March and 15 June 1942, urging extreme caution and the elimination of any possibility of surprise air attack on the German heavy warships.

In the end, however, the memorandum concluded that the documents in the Naval Staff’s files were not alone sufficient to remove responsibility for the battle fleet’s behaviour from Raeder’s shoulders. The memorandum (which is in file PG/31747, Film T-353-B) ended with the words: “These comments are herewith placed on record to preserve them for History.”



*Specialising in the works of David Irving*

## World War 2 Books

**WORLD WAR II BOOKS AND VIDEO** – the leading source for unusual, out of print, and hard-to-find books on war in twentieth century Europe. We have the books the big chains don't have, and we have them in stock right now.

Look no further for detailed and accurate information on the battles and campaigns, and on the elite units that fought them, and the weapons that they used – even the music they listened to and every other aspect of this

World War 2 Books & Videos, P.O. Box 521, Monticello, IL 61856, USA

# Index

---

- Aalborg, 204, 361
- Aasfiord, 92, 101
- Admiral Hipper* (German heavy cruiser; Captain Meisel), 18, 30, 39, 42, 55–6, 79, 100, 117, 301; leaves for Norway, 20; at Trondheim, 29; leaves Trondheim, 86–8, 92, 94 at Altenfiord, 127; at sea, 188, 205, 207
- Admiral Scheer* (German heavy cruiser), 11, 12, 39, 45, 54, 55, 78, 79, 87, 100, 117, 118, 121, 163; at Narvik, 29, 39, 54; Admiral Kummetz's flag transferred to, 87; at Altenfiord, 121; at sea, 188, 207
- Admiralty, British**, 7; intervenes in Home Fleet operations, 16; given an impossible task by the Cabinet, 47–8; instructions to Tovey and Hamilton, 57–8, Appendix I (pages 370 *et seq.*); and close cruiser support, 66; informs Hamilton that convoy has been sighted by U-boat, 77–8; sends “Home Fleet Operational” signal, 89–90; sends order to sail north of Bear Island, 93; informs convoy escort of shadowing units, 98; signals that German aircraft are using beacon procedure, 104–5; uncertain of position of German heavy ships, 117–8; orders Hamilton to proceed eastward at discretion, 119, 122; and patrols along Norwegian coast, 122; orders cruiser force westward, 151; orders convoy to scatter, 152, 170, 174; informs Hamilton that German battleships are at Altenfiord, 170; suggests that Home Fleet engage *Tirpitz*, 207; signal to Tovey regarding his south-westerly course, 242; signal to Tovey on *Victorious* engaging *Tirpitz*, 243; warns of possible surface attack on scattered convoy, 245; temporarily suspends convoys, 330, 352; formal statement in reply to Soviet allegations, 364
- Admiralty Peninsula, Novaya Zemlya, 191, 234
- Akins, James E. (of the *Carlton*), 25–8, 181–3, 200, 358, 361
- Alafusov, Admiral (Deputy Chief of Russian Naval Staff), 173, 329
- Albacore aircraft, 14–5, 243
- Alcoa Ranger* (American merchantman; Lieut.-Commander Hjalmar Christophsen), 198–9, 259, 305, 336, 343; torpedoed and sunk, 270–1, 277; survivors, 356
- Aldersdale* (British oiler; Captain Archibald Hobson), 64, 66, 74, 81, 93, 111, 126, 137, 159, 213, 223, 264, 269; immobilized, 224–7; sunk, 277,
- Alexander, A. V. (First Lord of the Admiralty), 363, 367
- Alexandria, 6, 275
- Allen, Captain G. R. G., 118, 122, 160
- Allied intelligence, 145; assesses German plans for attacking PQ.17, 47
- Altenfiord, 32, 39, 123; German battle fleet at, 87, 94, 97*n*, 100–2, 116, 122,

- 145, 170, 184; battle fleet leaves, 186, 188; battle fleet returns, 212
- American Task Force 99, 49
- Archangel, 46*n*, 54, 57, 64, 72, 112, 121, 151, 156, 163, 166, 171, 180–1, 190, 202, 203, 208, 221, 245, 247, 250, 254, 256, 258, 263, 271–7, 294, 296, 298, 305, 311, 315, 321, 326–9, 331–3, 335–6, 338–2, 344–5, 347–9, 352, 353–6; Naval Control in, 222; first convoy vessel arrives at, 271; the *Zamalek* convoy enters, 326–7; convoy survivors in, 353–5
- Atlantik* (German tug), 44
- Ayrshire* (British Asdic trawler; Lieutenant Leo Gradwell), 62, 137, 159, 164, 166–8, 258, 276, 331–5, 340, 350, 353, 355
- Azerbaijan* (Russian tanker), 83, 138, 139, 141, 340, 354; torpedoed, 136, 137*n*
- Banak (airfield), 19, 82, 93, 103, 119, 188, 311, 312, 315, 325
- Banning, Captain, 60, 325; awarded the DSO, 325*n*
- Bardufoss (airfield), 29, 82, 124, 125, 188
- Barents Sea, 23, 47, 67, 69, 76, 94, 120, 142, 147, 161, 171, 177, 188, 198, 206, 212, 245, 247, 253, 256, 258, 264, 271, 302, 305, 310, 320, 328, 331, 332, 333, 339, 348, 358, 365
- Bear Island, 12, 18, 22, 35, 40, 47, 48, 58, 61, 67, 71, 76, 90–3, 101, 102, 105, 106, 117, 146, 184, 230, 278, 302, 304, 371, 372
- Beaverbrook, Lord, 189, 301
- Beckley, Lieutenant, 137, 154
- Bellars, Captain E. G. H., 143, 169, 244, 252, 274, 300
- Bellingham* (American freighter; Captain Mortensen), 80, 103–4, 132–3, 189, 190, 231–3, 259, 296–7, 327, 329, 353; hit by faulty torpedo, 269; loss of, 353
- Benjamin Harrison* (American merchantman; Captain E. J. Christensen), 190, 256, 276, 335
- Benson, Chief Officer Hawtry (of *Earlston*), 198, 227
- Berchtesgaden conference (Hitler and Raeder), 34, 36–7
- Bergen, 12, 44, 360
- Berlin, 14, 33, 36, 70, 78, 79, 88, 95, 97, 99, 106, 122, 142, 144, 147, 168, 186, 205, 206, 207, 209, 211, 229, 292, 310
- Bevan, Rear-Admiral R. H. L., (SBNO in North Russia), 245, 271–2, 340
- Bey, Commodore, 212
- Bidwell, Lieutenant, 234, 275, 314, 349, 350; awarded the DSC, 234*n*
- Bielfeld, Lieut.-Commander Heinz, 44, 76, 103, 126–7, 178–80, 230, 236, 239, 241, 250, 263–4, 269, 277, 292, 304, 322, 343
- Billefjord seaplane base, 199
- Bismarck* (German battleship), 10, 12, 14, 302
- Bloedorn, Major Erich, 125
- Blohm & Voss 138 spotter planes, 29, 82, 102, 103, 137, 191, 312, 329
- Bodenschatz, Gen. Karl, 210
- Bodö (airfield), 14
- Bogen Bay, 79, 87
- Bohmann, Lieut.-Commander Heino, 22, 44, 76, 89–90, 103, 126, 127, 181–3, 191–3, 262, 264, 268–9, 277, 292
- Bolton Castle* (British merchantman;

- Captain Pascoe), 217, 222, 293, 357; abandoned, 218–9; sinks, 221; survivors 357
- Bomber Command, RAF, 20
- Bormann, Martin, 298
- Brandenburg, Lieut.-Commander Karl, 44, 76, 80, 113, 123, 126–7, 176–7, 229, 264, 269, 277–8, 292, 304, 310, 318, 322, 343
- Brest: German battle group at, 11; *Gneisenau* and *Scharnhorst* escape from, 51
- Brind, Rear-Admiral E. J. P., 118
- Britomart (British anti-submarine minesweeper; Lieut.-Commander S. Stammwitz), 111, 112, 141, 164, 190, 225–6, 254, 275, 306–7, 322, 324, 326
- Broome, Commander J. E.**, RN (Senior Officer Escort), 49, 57, 59, 60, 67, 70, 71, 79, 81, 84, 94, 110, 111, 125, 129, 130, 141, 150, 151, 154, 155, 157, 166, 173, 242, 367, 370; sense of humour, 62; calls final escort conference, 66; his wireless signals used by the Germans, 74; reports German shadowing aircraft, 81; disobeys Hamilton's order, 93, 103; thirty miles south of his promised route, 116; obeys Hamilton's instructions regarding course, 119, 122; reminded of proper course, 127–8; congratulates *Wainwright*, 131; warned of proximity of surface forces, 136, 142; is ordered to scatter convoy, 152–3; orders his escort destroyers to join cruiser force, 155, 158, 170–2, 299; and the *Aldersdale*, 159; and the anti-submarine vessels, 161; explanation for withdrawal of his force, 162–3
- Bruce, James, 139
- Burrough, Admiral, 54
- Busch, Lieutenant Col. Hermann, 127
- Butler, Captain, 213
- Byelushya Bay, Novaya Zemlya, 343, 349
- Cabinet, British: gives the Admiralty an impossible task, 48; decides on Secret Session for debate on shipping, 303; Pound's explanation to, for scattering of convoy, 367
- Cabinet Defence Committee, 19
- Cairo, 6
- Caradus, Lieutenant James, (*Asdic* officer of *La Malouine*): his Diary quoted, 66, 164, 165, 206, 247, 255, 257, 258, 276, 307, 308, 311, 313, 315, 319, 347, 354
- Carls, General-Admiral Rolf (Commander of Naval Group North), 31, 32, 38, 72, 78, 206; orders Schmudt to use U-boats against heavy enemy units, 96; seeks permission to attack, 97; approves Schmudt's suppression of premature sailing order, 100–1; sends appreciation of the situation, 101; orders First Battle Group to Altenfiord, 101–2; reproves Schmudt, 104, 122; signal to Fifth Air Force HQ, 115; impatience about delay of start of *The Knight's Move*, 144, 183–6; takes command of U-boat operations, 186; signal to Schniewind, 187; and the breaking off of *The Knight's Move*, 207–8
- Carlton* (U.S. freighter; Captain Reginald Hansen), 25–9, 104, 108, 177, 180–3, 185, 191, 200–4, 213, 230, 250, 328, 354; torpedoed and sunk, 180–3, 184, 191; plight of survivors, 200–2, 202–5, 327–8, 358–4; her cargo, 202–3

- Carraway, Ensign Howard E., 46, 65
- Catalina aircraft, 122, 245, 327, 338, 341, 345
- Charlton, Captain Harold, 236, 238, 239, 240, 241, 249; awarded the DSC, 241*n*
- Cherni Island, 275
- Chitrin, Lieutenant Robert (Armed Guard officer, *Winston Salem*), 295*n*
- Christensen, Captain E. J., 335
- Christopher Newport* (U.S. Liberty ship), 64, 108, 110, 111, 113, 120, 122, 181, 318
- Christophsen, Lieut.-Commander Hjalmar, 198
- Churchill, Winston**, 7, 10, 20, 21*n*, 50, 52, 62, 153, 160, 175, 177, 179, 228, 241; exchange with Roosevelt over convoys, 20; minute to Chiefs of Staffs Committee, 22–3; and the PQ.17 disaster, 161–2, 330, 363, 366–7; proposal for convoys, 352
- Churchill tanks, 177
- Ciliax, Vice-Admiral (Flag Officer Battleships), 13–5, 30
- Clark, Captain, 260
- Clayton, Captain J. W., 145, 151–2
- Cleethorpes wireless station, 14, 143
- Coastal Command, RAF, 19
- Cook, Lieutenant, 239
- Cooper, Frank, 180*n*
- Cripps, Sir Stafford, 303
- Crombie, Captain J. H. F., 271, 326
- Cryptographical service: German, 29; British, 77. *See also under* Ultra
- Frederick (Admiral Commanding Iceland), 54
- Daniel Morgan* (American merchantman; Captain George T. Sullivan), 190–4, 231, 259–60; bombed and sunk, 193–4, 197
- Danish Resistance, 363
- Denham, Captain Henry, 35, 146
- Denmark Strait, 34, 45, 49, 64, 92
- Denning, Paymaster-Commander Norman E., 146, 147, 152
- Dianella* (British corvette; Lieutenant S. G. Rankin), 66, 111, 153, 163, 276, 303; first convoy ship to reach north Russia, 271; rescue voyage, 272, 348, 350
- Dietl, Colonel-General 310
- Dixon, Able Seaman Geoffrey, 284, 287, 288
- Dönitz, Grand-Admiral Karl, replaces Raeder, 369
- Donbass* (Russian tanker; Captain Pavlov), 135, 259, 327
- Dornier 24 (hospital plane), 201
- Dowding, Commodore J. C. K.**, RNR, (Commodore of Convoy), 59, 129, 136, 141, 154, 158, 236, 237–40, 249–50, 258, 274, 306, 328, 353, 370; awarded the DSO, 241*n*; asks for fighter protection, 275, 320; rescue journey, 349–50
- Drake, Captain, RNVR, 272, 303
- Duke of York*, HMS (battleship; Admiral Tovey's flagship), 49, 67, 105, 243
- Dvina River, 327, 353
- Earlston* (British merchantman; Captain Hilmar Stenwick), 198–9, 226–

- 7, 229, 231, 357, 360
- Eclipse*, HMS (British destroyer), 19
- Eden, Anthony, 330, 363
- Edinburgh*, HMS (British cruiser), 21, 22, 75
- Edwards, Commander P. Q. (planner of North Russian convoys), 8
- Eicke, Captain, 127, 128, 132
- El Capitán* (Panamanian freighter; Captain J. Thevik), 132, 134, 253–6, 274, 305–8, 321; bombed, 316–9, 320; sinks, 320; survivors, 357
- Elsden, Lieutenant RNVR (of *Ayrshire*), 167, 189, 333–5
- Empire Byron* (British merchantman; Captain Wharton), 177; torpedoed and sunk, 177–80; survivors, 348
- Empire Tide*, (British CAM ship; Captain Harvey), 61, 63, 133, 142, 259, 270, 277, 293, 325, 336, 338–9, 343–6, 349–50
- Exford* (American merchantman), 65
- Fairbanks, Lieutenant Douglas, USNR (Admiral Giffen's Flag Lieutenant), 53–4; his Diary quoted, 54, 59, 63, 68–9, 73, 156, 157, 172, 299
- Fairfield City* (American merchantman; Captain Walters), 190; bombed and sunk, 191–3; survivors, 335
- Fearnside, Richard (first radio officer of *Hartlebury*), 282–3, 289
- Flechner, Captain Willi, 216
- Focke-Wulf 200 (Condor), 29, 73, 74, 77, 198, 232, 243, 258, 267, 296
- Force Q, 64
- Forth, Needham (Third Officer of *Hartlebury*), 282, 284, 285, 287
- Force X (dummy convoy), 68
- Frank, Vernon, (Third Officer of *Carlton*), 360, 364
- Frankel, Captain S. B. (U.S. Assistant Naval Attaché at Archangel), 338, 345, 349
- Frey, Oiler, 183
- Fury*, HMS (destroyer; Lieut.-Commander C. H. Campbell), 244
- Galster* (German destroyer), 100, 101
- Gansden, Captain, 62
- Garstin, George, (radio officer, *River Afton*), 241
- Gerede, Turkish Ambassador, 244*n*
- German Air Force**, 17, 40, 43–44, 91, 116, 210; ordered to keep Murmansk under constant attack, 21, 25; attacks PQ.16, 25–9; large concentration in area of North Cape, 29; air reconnaissance, 44, 80, 88, 123; sights British naval forces off Iceland, 70; and the torpedo as an airborne weapon, 81–2
- FIFTH AIR FORCE, 32, 33, 39, 101, 167*n*, 228, 263, 325; composition, 29; role in *The Knight's Move*, 40, 44; sights convoy, 116; attacks convoy, 124–36; search for scattered convoy, 188; results of attacks, 328
- NORTH EAST AIR COMMAND, 176
- LOFOTEN AIR COMMAND, 96, 184, 188
- NORTH-WEST AIR COMMAND (Trondheim), 78;
- 5th Signals Regiment, Intelligence work by, 151
- KG.26, 24, 29, 82, 127, 188, 263
- KG.30, 125, 188, 191, 213–4, 219, 314–

- 5, 316, 324–5
- KG.40 reconnaissance wing (Trondheim), 95*n*, 259
- German Coastal Command, 82, 106; Squadron 906, 125, 200
- German High Command (OKW), 9, 265; and possibility of Allied invasion of Norway, 9; first communiqué on convoy battle, 272–3
- German Intelligence, 29, 38
- German Naval Staff, 14, 32, 94, 101, 104, 123, 167*n*, 229; and battleship *Tirpitz*, 10, 12; approves plan for attack on PQ.17, 33; orders bamboozling of British Intelligence, 44; denies Air Force information on torpedo developments, 82; and the *Lützow*, 87; convinced that movement of Battle Groups unnoticed by enemy, 96; and joining of the battle groups, 97; and Hamilton's cruiser force, 104–6, 124, 184; on four possible courses of action by the Allies, 105; and British operational signals, 143; and continued inactivity of German fleet, 144; and jamming of German wireless traffic, 206–7; and breaking off *The Knight's Move*, 208; on Allied mishandling of PQ.17 operations, 211–2; on success against PQ.17, 265, 342–3; considers convoy operations ended, 313
- German Navy
- NAVAL GROUP NORTH, 12, 30, 39, 44, 104, 106, 183, 231, 234, 244, 255; handicapped by inadequate air reconnaissance and fuel oil shortage, 23; composition, 23–4; operational directive for attack on PQ.17, 32–3; ordered to proceed, 79; orders intensification of U-boat activity, 106; air reconnaissance fails to reveal enemy, 123; battle fleet at one hour's sailing notice, 184; heavy ships sighted by Allied submarines, 205–6; three alternative courses of action, 207; ordered to break off *The Knight's Move*, 207; its Command HQ (*see* Kiel)
- FIRST BATTLE GROUP, 30, 39–41, 87, 97, 123
- SECOND BATTLE GROUP, 30, 39–40, 87, 97, 123
- 5th Destroyer Flotilla, 13, 29
- 6th Destroyer Flotilla, 79
- 8th Destroyer Flotilla, 18, 29
- Giffen, Rear-Admiral R. C., USN (Commander of American Task Force 99), 53, 54, 170*n*
- Gimsøy Narrows, Vestfiord, 88, 100
- Gneisenau* (German battleship), 11, 202
- Göllnitz, Lieut.-Commander Heinrich, 44, 72, 76, 229
- Golovko, Vice-Admiral, 340*n*, 341
- Gordon, Stanley, 280, 281, 283, 287, 290, 291
- Göring, Reichsmarschall Hermann, 82, 132, 210, 328
- Gradwell, Lieutenant Leo, 62, 137, 159, 166–8, 188–9, 236, 331–6, 339–40, 350, 353
- Graf Zeppelin* (German aircraft carrier), 18
- Gray Ranger* (British oiler), 62, 64–5, 353
- Greenwood, Arthur, 303
- Grinna, 87

- Gripsholm* (Swedish liner), 204*n*
- Grosseto, 24
- Halcyon*, HMS (anti-submarine minesweeper; Lieut.-Commander Corbett Singleton), 141, 164, 190, 226, 254, 275, 307
- Hall, George, 364
- Hall, Lieutenant Henry, 234
- Hamilton, Rear-Admiral L. H. K.**, on the Russian convoy as an unsound operation of war, 7; Commander of First Cruiser Squadron, 15; composition of his cruiser covering force, 49; career, character and outlook, 49–53; his plans, 55; orders wireless silence, 57; confers with American commanding officers, 57; instructions from the Admiralty, 57–8, Appendix I (pages 370 *et seq.*); addresses main convoy conference, 59–62; informs officers of confidential details of general plan, 66; last conference, 68–9; and German air reconnaissance, 81; keeps out of sight of enemy, 91; turns eastward, 92; decides to sail north of Bear Island, 92–3; changes of course, 102–3, 106; Independence Day greeting to American units, 114; signalled by Admiralty to proceed eastward at discretion, 119; sharp order to Broome, 119; differences with Tovey regarding Admiralty offer, 121; his force sighted, 123–4; reminds Broome of proper course, 128; wirelesses convoy position to Admiralty, 134; warns Broome of proximity of surface forces, 142; his force ordered westward by Admiralty, 143; Admiralty orders him to scatter convoy, 144, 152; and Broome's order to the destroyers, 156, 158; and the *Norfolk*, 156, 158; increases speed, 158; imposes wireless silence, 159; on expectation of immediate surface attack, 161–2; and the anti-submarine vessels, 161; and the escort vessels, 163; attempts to quell dismay in his force, 169; informed by Admiralty that German battleships are still anchored at Altenfiord, 170; prepares for battle, 170; his force sighted by a Focke-Wulf, 242; ordered to join Home Fleet, 246; explains to Captains reasons for retirement of his force, 251–2; letter to and interview with Tovey, 299–300; addresses crew of *London*, 300–3; his comments on the disaster, 366, 367–8; receives no further sea-going command, 366
- Hans Leonhardt* (German troop transport), 204
- Hansen, Captain Reginald, 27, 182, 201, 287
- Harlamov, Admiral N. M. (head of Soviet military mission in London), 330, 363
- Hartlebury* (Vice-Commodore; Captain Stephenson), 259, 341; torpedoed and sunk, 279–83; plight of survivors, 285–99, 337, 341, 346, 350
- Harvey, Captain F. W., 270, 325, 336, 338–9, 344–7, 349–50; awarded the DSO, 325*n*
- “Haw-Haw, Lord.” See Joyce, William
- Hazard*, HMS (British minesweeper), 326, 350
- Heinkel 111 torpedo-bomber, 24, 29, 82, 124–36, 143; results of their attacks on convoy, 328
- Heinkel 115 torpedo-bomber, 29, 81–

- 3, 106–8, 200, 328
- Herrmann, Luftwaffe Captain (Hauptmann), Hajo, attack on PQ.17, 218–9; later the author’s attorney, *vi*
- Hennemann, Lieutenant, 132–7
- Hermann Schoemann* (German destroyer; Captain Schulze-Hinrichs), 21
- Higgins, A. B. Seaman, 200
- Hill, Captain H. W., USN, 53, 55, 63, 69, 113–4, 170, 172, 252, 274
- Hipper*. See *Admiral Hipper*
- Hitler, Adolf**, orders reinforcement of Norwegian coastal defences, 9–10; and torpedo-carrying aircraft, 9; orders break-out from Brest, 12; and aircraft carriers, 16; orders intensive operations against Murmansk convoys, 17–8, 21, 24–5; hesitations over *The Knight’s Move*, 33, 33–7, 56, 95–8, 184, 207–8; and the renaming of the *Deutschland* (*Lützow*), 87–8; and the alleged torpedoing of the *Tirpitz*, 244*n*; elated by Arctic success, 298; on the failure of the German Navy, 369
- Hobson, Captain Archibald, 159, 224, 226
- Holmgren, Captain J., 216
- Honomu* (American freighter; Captain Frederick A. Strand), 203, 356, 360; torpedoed and sunk, 194–6, 227, 348
- Hoosier* (American freighter; Captain J. Holmgren), 137, 216, 256, 305, 308, 311, 313, 314, 359; bombed, 315; sinks, 322
- Hope Island, 166
- House of Commons, 303, 364
- Hunting & Son Ltd (owners of *River Afton*), 241*n*
- Hvalfiord, Iceland, 49, 53, 55, 57, 59, 60, 63, 65, 68, 70, 119, 299; Convoy Conference at, 59–63, 119; convoy leaves, 63
- Hymmen, Lieut.-Commander Reinhard von, 44, 76, 230, 292, 304, 343
- “Ice-Devil” pack. See U-boats
- Iceland, 9, 19, 25, 26, 28, 29, 34, 38, 45, 46, 47, 49, 53, 54, 59, 60, 61, 64, 66, 71, 74, 77, 92, 96, 185, 213, 251, 268, 274, 275, 298, 319, 326, 331, 353, 354, 358, 370; American occupation of, 9; American seamen forbidden to listen to radio at, 47
- Iokanka, Novaya Zemlya, 315, 321, 323, 324–6, 329
- Ironclad* (American merchantman), 133, 166, 331, 333–4, 340
- Jacobson, Captain Jacob, 232, 236
- Jan Mayen Island, 32, 35, 38, 45, 49, 64, 71, 75, 76, 246
- Jauncey, Captain J. H., 163, 190, 254; awarded the DSO, 190*n*
- Jervis Bay, 150
- John Witherspoon* (American freighter; Captain Clark), 163, 190, 258, 268, 269; torpedoed and sunk, 260–1, 270; survivors, 306, 308, 314, 319
- Joyce, William (“Lord Haw-Haw”), 47, 104, 241, 291, 303
- Junkers 87 dive-bombers, 29
- Junkers 88 bombers, 25, 29, 125, 127, 188, 191–4, 214, 218–0, 224, 229, 232, 243, 262, 314–6, 319, 324–5; responsible for most sinkings, 328

- Junkers 88 reconnaissance aircraft, 29, 61
- K-21* (Russian submarine; Commander Lunin), 205, 243
- Kahl, Captain Konrad, 216*n*
- Kanin Nos, Cape, 275, 323, 356
- Kara Sea, 253–4, 268, 307, 339
- Kaumeyr, Lieutenant, 130, 136
- Kaura, 87
- Kemi (forward HQ of German Fifth Air Force at), 39, 70, 81
- Kemp, Commander Peter, 153*n*
- Kent* (British cruiser), 53–4
- Keppel*, HMS (destroyer escort leader; Commander J. E. Broome), 57, 75, 82–3, 93, 98, 107, 110–12, 126, 129, 136, 154–56, 159, 161, 163, 372
- Kiel, 11, 38, 40, 70, 78, 80, 95, 96, 99, 101, 102, 184, 185, 186, 187, 206, 207, 209, 264, 310, 323
- King, Admiral Ernest J. (American chief of naval operations), 6, 118
- King George V* (British battleship), 14
- Kirkenes, 75, 90, 142, 230*n*; U-boat base, 24, 96, 201, 229; naval monitoring station at, 29, 74, 143; *I./406* squadron of Heinkel 115s, 80
- Kirov* (Russian trawler), 340
- Kladderadatsch*, 298
- Knight's Move, The* (German surface operation against PQ.17), 34, 36, 44–5, 78, 87–8, 100, 102, 106, 122–3, 144, 202, 211, 266, 369; Hitler's reservations, 33, 37–8, 56, 95–7, 184, 208–9; order for attack given, 184–5; Raeder calls it off, 207–1
- Kola Bay, 71
- Kola Inlet, 8, 9
- Krancke, Vice-Admiral (Raeder's permanent representative at Hitler's HQ), 31, 33, 79, 97–8, 122, 186
- Kummetz, Vice-Admiral (Commander of the Second Battle Group), 30, 39, 87, 101, 211
- Kusnetsov, Admiral (Russian Chief of Naval Staff), 174, 329
- La Baume, Lieut.-Commander Günther, 44, 76, 89, 264, 269, 277–8, 280, 283, 285, 291–2, 304
- La Malouine*, HMS (corvette; Lieutenant Bidwell), 66, 164–5, 189, 206, 231, 233–4, 247, 255–8, 275–6, 307–9, 314–5, 326, 348–51, 354
- Lagerni settlement, Novaya Zemlya, 253–5
- Lawford, Captain E. D. W., RN, 2, 165, 190, 196, 233–4, 246
- Leamington*, HMS (destroyer; Lieutenant B. M. D. Anton), 75, 83, 110
- Leda*, HMS (British minesweeper), 250*n*, 326, 350
- Ledbury*, HMS (destroyer; Lieut.-Commander R P Hill), 110, 129–30, 136–7, 158, 329
- Leningrad, 353
- Lennard, C. T. (*Zamalek's* second officer), 139, 224
- Lody* (German destroyer), 100–1
- Lofoten Islands, 15, 74, 104; British raid on, 9; German Air Command, 96, 185, 188
- London*, HMS (cruiser; flagship of Admiral Hamilton), 49, 50, 53–4, 66, 68, 93, 103, 105, 114, 135, 155, 169,

- 241, 244, 251, 299–301, 325, 349
- Lord Austin* (trawler; Lieutenant C. B. Eggar), 98, 189, 257, 308, 320
- Lord Middleton* (Asdic trawler; Lieutenant R. N. Jameson), 104, 189, 257, 276, 307
- Lotus*, HMS (corvette; Lieutenant Henry Hall), 66, 104, 164–5, 189, 196, 233, 235, 248, 258, 274, 275, 306–9, 348, 349
- Lovgren, Captain W., 253, 295
- Lunin, Commander, 205
- Lützwow* (German heavy cruiser; flagship of Admiral Kummetz), 25, 30, 39, 54, 56, 78–9, 87–8, 94, 101; runs aground, 117, 121
- Lydinge, Otis, 261
- McCallum, Surgeon-Lieutenant Norman, 83, 140
- Macdonald (*Zamalek's* Chief Officer), 112, 317
- McDonough, A. B. (“Big”), 200
- McGowan, Captain Charles, 60, 223–4; awarded the DSO, 225
- Maisky, Ivan, 330, 363
- Marks, Lieut.-Commander Friedrich-Karl, 44, 76, 96, 230, 292, 304, 343, 359
- Marlag-Milag Nord (naval prison camp on Lüneburg Heath), 204, 230, 387
- Matabele*, HMS (British destroyer), 8
- Matochkin Strait, Novaya Zemlya, 234–5, 247–8, 250, 253–6, 268–0, 274, 276–8, 294, 326, 333, 340
- Matshar radio station, Novaya Zemlya, 253
- Matson Navigation Company, 293
- Maund, Captain G. O. (SBNO at Archangel), 245, 271, 327, 336, 345, 347, 356
- Mazuruk, Captain I. P., 338–9, 341, 345
- Meisel, Captain, 212
- Melville* (U.S. depot ship), 65
- MERSIGS code books, 67
- Miles, Rear-Admiral Sir Geoffrey (head of British naval mission in Moscow), 173–4, 245, 329, 356
- Miller, Edward (Chief Engineer, *River Afton*), 238, 241*n*
- Moller Bay (Mali Karmakulski), Novaya Zemlya, 221, 222, 256, 267, 270, 277, 336, 343–5, 349–50
- Moon, Captain Don P., USN, 49, 126, 129–30, 133, 135, 158
- Mooney, T. J. (Chief Engineer, *Carlton*), 201, 204
- Moore, Vice-Admiral Sir H. R. (Vice Chief of Naval Staff), 118, 150, 151
- Morris, Captain Owen, 60, 110–2, 142, 223–5, 310–11, 316–8; awarded the DSO, 321, 325, 327
- Mortensen, Captain S., 296
- Moscow, 9, 134, 173, 245, 301, 309, 327, 329, 356
- Mottram, Lieut.-Commander W. R., 226
- Murman* (ice-breaker), 18, 340
- Murmansk, 8, 18, 21–2, 25–6, 33, 64, 68, 72, 202, 204, 208, 312, 325, 339, 342, 356–7; air raid damage, 71
- Näröy Sound, 87
- Narvik, German naval base at, 24, 30,

- 35, 38, 39, 44, 45, 54, 70, 74, 75, 79, 82, 86, 87, 88, 90, 92, 98, 100, 102, 107, 116, 117, 121, 126, 127, 144, 170, 175, 177, 180, 188, 209, 212, 228, 229, 230, 250, 259, 261, 263, 286, 293, 295, 312, 315, 318, 322, 342, 343
- Nash, Captain C. E., 110–2
- Navarino* (British merchantman), 138, 140–2, 165; torpedoed, 134–6; abandoned and sunk, 176
- Newstead, Lieutenant P. E., 153
- Noel-Baker, Philip, 365
- Nordkyn, 186
- Norfolk*, HMS (cruiser; Captain E. G. H. Bellars), 49, 50, 68, 113, 128, 143, 156, 169, 244, 252, 274, 299, 355–6
- North Cape, 18, 29, 32, 40, 44, 45, 48, 71, 80, 93, 98, 102, 123, 185, 199, 201, 205, 230, 242, 272, 301, 358, 359, 367
- North Gusini Light, Novaya Zemlya, 337
- Northern Gem* (British trawler; Lieutenant W. G. Mullender), 129, 257, 307, 324
- Northern Spray* (British trawler), 28
- Northey, Lieutenant Adrian, 86
- Norway: Germans strengthen coastal defences, 9; transfer of heavy warships to, 9; submarines stationed along coast of, 23–4; German air force in, 24, 79
- Novaya Zemlya, 190–2, 211, 217, 221–3, 226, 234–6, 247, 250, 253, 258–9, 263–4, 266–9, 277, 279, 282, 290, 292–3, 304–5, 332–3, 335–7, 339, 341, 343, 348, 352, 354, 356
- Obsiedya Bay, Novaya Zemlya, 295
- Ocean Freedom* (British merchantman; Captain Walker), 223–6, 254, 305, 307, 314; bombed and crippled, 321, 324–6
- OKW. *See* German High Command
- Olopana* (American freighter; Captain Mervyn C. Stone), 217, 220–1, 232, 236, 259–60, 266, 279, 336; torpedoed and sunk, 293–5; survivors on a raft reach Novaya Zemlya, 336–7, 341, 343, 346; survivors in Archangel, 356*n*
- Operational Intelligence Centre (O.I.C.), in *The Citadel*, 145, 150, 153
- Operation PEDESTAL, 365
- Orem, Commander (*Wichita's* Executive Officer), 53, 55, 63
- Oslo, 81, 204, 360, 361; German Fifth Air Force base, 39
- P-614* (HM submarine; Lieutenant D. J. Beckley), 57, 137, 153–4
- P-615* (HM submarine; Lieutenant P. E. Newstead), 57, 153
- Palomares* (British anti-aircraft ship; Captain J. H. Jauncey), 73, 159, 163, 171, 188, 190, 225–6, 250, 254–6, 260, 274, 276, 306, 310, 317, 355
- Pan Atlantic* (American merchantman; Captain J. O. Sieber), 262; bombed and sunk, 307
- Pankraft* (American merchantman; Captain Jacob Jacobson), 232–3, 235–6, 248, 258; bombed and abandoned, 332
- Pascoe, Captain John, 217–9, 221–2, 357
- Paulus Potter* (Dutch merchantman; Captain Sissingh), 217, 221, 293, 342; abandoned, 219; sunk, 343; survivors 343, 350

- PEDESTAL convoy to Malta, 365
- Pelt, fireman W. (*Carlton*), 183
- Pelworm* (German tug), 44
- Peter Kerr* (U.S. Liberty ship; Captain William H. Butler), 179, 213, 216, 226, 357
- Petter, Lieutenant Frank (of *La Malouine*), 157
- Petsamo, German air base at, 323
- Polar Geophysical Laboratory, Novaya Zemlya, 253
- Polyarnoe, Russian naval base at, 154, 272
- Pomorskaya Bay, 255
- Poppy*, HMS (corvette; Lieutenant N. K. Boyd), 110, 164, 189, 255, 308, 314, 348, 349
- Pound, Admiral Sir Dudley** (First Sea Lord), 6, 122, 150, 174, 271–2, 330; warns Cabinet Defence Committee of possible severe losses to convoys, 19; on convoys as a “regular millstone,” 23; and possibility of scattering the convoy, 67, 118–9; and close cruiser support, 67; interviews Captain Allen, 118; seeks information on *Tirpitz*, 145; decides to move cruiser force westward, 149; decides to disperse convoy, 150, 152–3; Churchill’s excuses for, 160; and the inquiry into the disaster, 363–4; his explanation to the Cabinet, 367
- Pozarica* (anti-aircraft ship; Captain E. D. W. Lawford), 2, 153, 164–5, 188–9, 196, 230, 233–5, 246–7, 255–6, 308, 317, 321, 350, 354
- PQ.8, Convoy, 8
- PQ.12, Convoy, 13
- PQ.13, Convoy, 18, 139
- PQ.15, Convoy, 21, 24
- PQ.16, Convoy, 23, 25–6, 29, 33, 38, 56, 91, 181, 301
- PQ.17, Convoy**, 24, 79, 30, 32; the American crews, 45–7; mutiny on the *Troubadour*, 46; awaits sailing orders, 47; expectation of surface attack, 47–9; distant covering force, 49, 55; cruiser covering force, 9, 15–6, 57–8, 66; close escort, 49, 57, 65; the operation as a trap for the *Tirpitz*, 55–7; wireless silence imposed, 57; main convoy 59–62; leaves Hvalfjord, 63–4; individual ships poorly armed, 65; final escort conference, 66; last conference, 67–9; German air reconnaissance, 73–4; Broome’s wireless signals reveal convoy to Germans, 74; sighted by aircraft and U-boats, 74–81, 87–8; attacked by torpedo-bombers, and *Christopher Newport* lost, 82–3, 86–7, 106, 109–15, 119–21; U-boats close in, 102–4, 106, 109; layout of ships (diagrams), 85, 109; torpedo-bombers strike three more ships 124–43, 193; Admiralty orders convoy to scatter, 143–5, 156, 170, 174; cruiser and close escort withdrawn, 156–63, 170–2, 299; the RN vessels left with convoy, 163–5; Gradwell steers N.-W. with *Ayrshire* and three other ships, 166–7, 331–2; U-boat attacks, and loss of the *Carlton*, 177–90; *Daniel Morgan* and *Honomu* sunk, 190–6; plight of the solitary ships and survivors, 196–205; attacked by dive-bombers, 213–4, 218; position after the scatter (map), 213–4; loss of *Washington*, *Bolton Castle* and *Paulus Potter*, 218–22; 150 seamen drift for

- weeks in open boats, 220–2; rescue ships under attack, and loss of the *Aldersdale*, 224–6; U-boats sink the *Earlston*, 227–9; Germans attack their own submarine, 228–30; loss of *Pankraft* and *River Afton*, 232–41; Admiralty warning of possible surface attack, 245, 248; anti-aircraft ships expect imminent destruction, 247–9; *River Afton*'s survivors picked up, 249–50; RN vessels reach Matochkin Strait, 253–8; ships in the Strait spotted by a Focke-Wulf, 259, 267; loss of the *John Witherspoon*, 260–2; *Pan Atlantic* sunk, 262; U-boat patrols and sightings, 263, 265, 268–70; the stragglers make for Novaya Zemlya, 267–8; loss of the *Alcoa Ranger*, 270–1; first ship to reach north Russia, 271; the search for survivors, 271–2; special broadcast on German radio, 272–4; conference in the Strait, 274–5; the little convoy leaves for Archangel, 275–7; Dowding requests fighter protection, 275, 320; loss of the *Hartlebury*, 279–92; loss of *Olopana*, 293–5; beaching of the *Winston-Salem*, 295–6; *Bellingham* shoots down a Focke-Wulf, 296–7; the *Zamalek* convoy leaves Matochkin Strait, 305–8, 313–4; the *Zamalek* convoy bombed, and Hoosier lost, 313–4, and *El Capitán* lost, 315–21; two merchantmen and Asdic trawlers bombed, 321–5; in sight of Russian coast and help appears, 325–6; the *Zamalek* convoy escorted into Archangel, 326–7; Gradwell's little convoy reaches Novaya Zemlya, 332–6; nine *Olopana* survivors reach Novaya Zemlya by raft, 337; master of *Winston-Salem* prepares to abandon her, 338; Captain Mazuruk's rescue flights, 338–9, 341, 345; the survivors in Novaya Zemlya, 343–8; Dowding searches for ships and survivors, 349–50; last ships to leave Novaya Zemlya, 350; Russian recriminations, 352; only eleven merchant ships reach Russia, 353; total of cargoes lost, 353; survivors, 353–63; Anglo-Soviet inquiry into the disaster, 363–4; the cost, 365, and Appendix II, 373; formal Admiralty statement, 365; estimate of lives lost, 365; crews desert from nine ships, 366; a result of pressure and despair, 366; Hamilton's comments, 366, 367–8; Churchill's conclusions, 366–7
- PQ.18, 252, 352, 354, 368, 369
- Prince of Wales*, HMS (British battleship), 14, 51
- Prinz Eugen* (German heavy cruiser), 11, 12, 202
- Puttkamer, Captain Karl-Jesco von (Hitler's naval adjutant), 44
- QP.8, 13
- QP.11, 21
- QP.13, 45, 64, 68, 71, 77, 80, 298
- QP.14, 241, 250, 365
- Radio Luxembourg, 202
- Raeder, Grand-Admiral Erich** (Commander in Chief of German Navy), 10, 12, 17, 18, 21, 31, 33–4, 36–7, 56, 78, 88, 96–8, 122, 144, 184, 185, 187, 207–8, 210–12, 369; on danger from Allied aircraft carriers, 17; explains *The Knight's Move* to Hitler, 37–8;

- and joining of the battle groups, 97; agrees to Carls's plan to recall warships, 144; delays *The Knight's Move*, 184–5; anxieties about committing the German battle fleet, 187; calls off *The Knight's Move*, 207; resigns, 369
- Rankin, Lieutenant J. G., 163, 271, 348
- Rathlin* (British rescue ship), 60, 83, 138, 165, 189, 233, 296, 297, 325, 327
- Rawlings, Rear-Admiral H. B., 118
- Reche, Lieut.-Commander Reinhard, 44, 75–6, 79, 89–90, 103, 112, 260–1, 264, 269–70, 277–8, 292–3, 294, 304, 311–2, 315, 322, 342, 343
- Reykjavik, 45, 46
- Repulse*, HMS (British battleship), 14, 51
- Ribbentrop, Joachim von, 244*n*
- Richard Bland* (U.S. Liberty ship), 64
- Richards, Sir Frederick, 52
- Richert, Captain J., 219
- Riedel* (German destroyer), 100, 101
- Rimington, Captain John, 179–80, 236
- River Afton* (Commodore ship; Captain Charlton), 135, 154, 236; torpedoed and sunk, 231, 236–41, 263; survivors, 249–50, 258
- Roberts, Commander A. C., RN (Naval Control Service Officer, Iceland), 268*n*
- Rölvstöy, 186, 206
- Roosevelt, Pres. Franklin D., 20, 23, 203, 298; exchange with Churchill over convoys, 20
- Roskill, Captain S. W., *The War at Sea*, 121*n*, 172*n*, 364
- Rowan* (U.S. destroyer), 49, 69, 81, 93
- Royal Navy**
- HOME FLEET, 9, 55, 56, 70, 88, 210*n*, 241; expected to protect convoys and northern passages, 11; Admiralty intervention in operations, 16; moves up to covering position, 94; keeps north of convoy, 117; rejects Admiralty suggestion to engage *Tirpitz*, 206; alteration of course, and joined by Hamilton's force, 247; arrives at Scapa Flow, 299; ammunition reserves lost in PQ.17, 355
- See also* Tovey, Admiral Sir John
- FIRST CRUISER SQUADRON, 16 (for cruiser covering force *see* Hamilton, Rear-Admiral L. H. K.), close escort force, 50, 57 (*and see under* Broome, Commander J. E.),
- FIRST MINESWEEPING FLOTILLA, 272, 326
- Salamander*, HMS (minesweeper; Lieut.-Commander W. R. Mott-ram), 223–4, 226, 254, 306
- Salvesen, Captain George, 46, 166
- Samuel Chase* (Liberty ship; Captain William K. Martin), 108, 197, 234–5, 256–7, 305, 307, 311, 314, 321, 324; bombed, reaches Molotovsk, 327
- Scapa Flow, 34, 53, 54, 67, 143, 251, 299; Home Fleet returns to, 369
- Scharnhorst* (German battleship), 11, 18, 212*n*
- Scherschel, Frank, 137*n*
- Schlüssel M (German naval machine cipher), 12
- Schmidt, Paul (Hitler's interpreter), 244*n*

- Schmundt, Admiral Hubert** (*Admiral Nordmeer*, Admiral Commanding Arctic), 16, 21, 32, 34, 38, 71–2, 75, 78–9, 90, 96, 100, 101, 102–3, 104, 107, 112, 114, 122, 123, 127, 145*n*, 183, 186–8, 195, 208, 211, 228–9, 230, 268–9, 277, 286, 292, 304, 307, 310, 311, 359; orders U-boats to put sea, 44–5; orders U-boats to shadow convoy, 75–7, 92, 126; requests intensification of air reconnaissance, 80; orders U-boats to leave QP.13 alone, 80–1; establishes new patrol line for U-boats, 88; objects to Carls's order regarding U-boats, 96–7, 104; reproved by Carls, 104, 123; signal to U-boats, 116; and U-boat reports, 176–7; and the sinking of the *Empire Byron*, 180; loses control of U-boat operations, 188; resumes operational command of Arctic U-boats, 209, 229–30, 250, 259, 263, 265–6, 277–8, 292, 304, 306, 313, 322–3, 342; recommends attacks on QP convoys, 211
- Schniewind, Admiral Otto** (Commander of First Battle Group), 34, 37, 42, 44, 96, 99, 186–7, 208; and *The Knight's Move*, 38–41, 100–2, 208–10, 212
- Schulze-Hinrichs, Captain**, 21
- Seidisfiord**, 66, 67, 68, 69, 77, 119, 327; Escort Conference at, 62, 119
- Servaes, Captain R. M.** (Admiral Hamilton's Flag Captain), 54, 300
- Shinwell, Emanuel**, 303, 363
- Sieber, Captain J. O.**, 262
- Siemon, Lieut.-Commander Hilmar**, 44*n*, 103, 126, 175–7, 194–5, 227–9
- Signal** (German soldiers' magazine), 162, 202, 206, 276
- Silver Sword** (American merchantman; Captain Peter Denas), 167, 231, 331, 336; loss of, 353–4
- Sissingh, Capt**, 217, 221
- Somali, HMS** (6th Destroyer Flotilla leader), 49, 69, 119, 122, 244
- Southby, Sir Archibald**, 7
- Speedwell, Cape**, 267
- Spence, Harold** (Second Officer of *Hartlebury*), 284–5; letter from his widow, 285*n*
- Spitzbergen**, 92, 272
- Spuhler, Arthur**, 284, 288
- Stalin, Marshal Josef**, 20, 23, 174, 175, 352, 363, 369
- Stammwitz, Lieut.-Commander S. S.**, 164, 254
- Stankiewicz, Walter**, 200, 230
- “Station Debunk”, 202
- Stenwick, Captain Hilmar**, 199, 227–30
- Stephenson, Captain George**, 279, 281, 285, 286, 288, 291, 338
- Stillwell, fireman** (of *Carlton*), 183
- Stockholm**, 35, 117, 146, 203
- Stoffregen, Captain Erich**, 216*n*
- Stolbovoi, Cape, Novaya Zemlya**, 254, 255
- Stone, Captain Mervyn**, 220–2, 232, 259, 266–8, 293, 294, 336–7, 345, 356
- Storey, George** (third radio officer of *Hartlebury*), 282
- Storey, John**, 289
- Strand, Captain Frederick**, 195, 203*n*, 360
- Stromness Point**, 64
- Stumpff, Colonel-General Hans-**

- Jürgen (commanding general, Fifth Air Force), 29, 328
- Submarines. British – see *P-614*, *P-615*, *Unshaken*; German – see U-boats; Russian – see *K-21*
- Sullivan, Captain George, 193–4, 328
- Sullom Voe, 121
- Sunniva*, SS, 225*n*
- Svyatoi Nos, Cape, Novaya Zemlya, 297, 323, 325
- Tallinn, 353
- Tanga* (Admiral Schmundt's command vessel), 38
- Teichert, Lieut.-Commander Max Martin, 44, 74, 76, 79–82, 89, 103, 175–7, 195
- Thevik, Captain John, 274, 277, 319–20
- Times*, *The*, 180*n*, 190*n*, 204, 335
- Timm, Lieut.-Commander Heinrich, 44*n*, 76, 96, 230, 292, 304, 322, 343
- Tirpitz* (German battleship; flagship of Admiral Schniewind), 12, 13, 16–20, 30–1, 24, 35, 37, 38–9, 40–2, 48, 52, 54, 55–7, 58, 67, 71, 79, 86, 88, 91, 97, 98, 99, 101–2, 120–2, 146–7, 153, 159–162, 184, 187, 202, 207, 230, 244, 299, 302, 364, 366–7, 371; transferred to Trondheim, 10, 30; attacked by Albacores, 14–5, 71; leaves Trondheim for Vestfiord, 86–7, 92; puts to sea, 100, 117–8; at Altenfiord, 122, 145; at sea again, 188, 205; sighted by Allied submarines, 205–6; Russian claim to have torpedoed, 206, 243; at anchor and undamaged, 244
- Tjeld Sound, 87
- Tobruk, 6
- Topp, Captain Karl, 10, 87
- Torpedo: as airborne weapon 10; German Navy's disfavour of, 81–2
- Torpedo-bombers, German: the first twelve, 145; used against PQ.16, 28–9; number of torpedoes used against PQ.17, 328
- See also Heinkel 111; Heinkel 115
- Tovey, Admiral Sir John (Commander-in-Chief, Home Fleet), 8, 11, 13, 16, 19–20, 22, 40, 48, 52, 58, 70, 72–4, 78, 88, 91, 94, 95, 120, 121, 122, 161, 163, 170*n*, 184*n*, 185, 206, 209, 244, 299, 300, 304, 356, 369; appeal to Admiralty about convoys, 9; and Admiralty intervention in Home Fleet operations, 16, 368; proposals about convoys, 20, 22; and plans to meet the threat to PQ.17, 48–9; his orders, 49–50; instructions from Admiralty, 57, Appendix I (pages 370 *et seq.*); and cruiser support, 67; turns battle fleet northward, 99; differences with Hamilton over Admiralty intervention, 121; and Admiralty order to scatter convoy, 144, 151; reverses course of Hamilton's force, 184*n*; on inadequate air co-operation in sea operations, 209*n*; and Admiralty signals on steering eastward, 242, 246; and Admiralty suggestion that *Victorious* be operated against *Tirpitz*, 243; orders Hamilton's force to join him, 246; orders Hamilton's force to Iceland, 251; and PQ.18, 368
- Trinidad*, HMS (cruiser), 19, 22
- Tromsø, 170, 360
- Trondheim, 10, 12, 30, 38, 71, 117–8, 121, 144, 170; German heavy ships transferred to, 10, 20; submarine base, 24,

- 44; First Battle Group at, 39; North West Air Command at, 78; Battle Group leaves, 87–8, 94; *KG.40* reconnaissance wing based at, 94*n*, 259
- Troubadour* (Norwegian freighter; Captain George Salvesen), 46, 65, 138–9, 166–8, 331–2, 340, 354
- Tuscaloosa*, USS (cruiser), 49, 53, 156, 274, 365
- U-boats:** first appearance in the Arctic, 8; orders for *The Knight's Move*, 43, 44; and discretion in radio transmissions, 148; sight Hamilton's cruiser force, 183
- ICE-DEVIL PACK, 35, 44, 70, 126, 200–1; orders to shadow PQ.17, 75, 79, 126; first torpedo attack, 80, 88–9, 126, 175–6; ordered to let QP.13 pass, 80–1; more boats sight PQ.17, 88; two boats return for refuelling, 88; close in on convoy, 102–4, 106, 109; signal from Schmundt, 116–7; reports on convoy and warships to Schmundt, 175–6; more torpedo attacks, 176–83, 191–8, 228, 230; operations near Novaya Zemlya, 261–3, 265, 268–71, 278–80, 285, 292–5; patrol line across northern approaches to Matochkin Strait, 277; Schmundt orders a final sweep, 303–4; final operations, 313–4, 321–3, 342; total tonnage of sinkings, 342–3
- U-88* (Lieut.-Commander Heino Bohmann), 22, 44, 80, 88–9, 126–7, 176, 182–3, 191–5, 262, 265, 292, 304, 342
- U-251* (Lieut.-Commander Heinrich Timm), 35, 44*n*, 88, 230, 263
- U-255* (Commander Reinhard Reche), 44, 75, 80, 88–9, 114, 261, 265, 270, 277, 294–5, 315–6, 323, 342
- U-334* (Lieut.-Commander Hilmar Siemon), 44, 175–6, 195–6, 228–9, 250, 328
- U-355* (Lieut.-Commander Günther La Baume), 44, 88–9, 251, 265, 278, 283, 285–6, 304, 342
- U-376* (Lieut.-Commander Friedrich-Karl Marks), 35, 44*n*, 88, 230, 263, 313, 323, 358*n*
- U-408* (Lieut.-Commander Reinhard von Hymmen), 35, 44*n*, 77, 230, 250, 312, 313
- U-456* (Lieut.-Commander Max-Martin Teichert), 44, 74–5, 80, 82, 88–9, 88–9, 127, 175–6, 228–9
- U-457* (Lieut.-Commander Karl Brandenburg), 44, 80, 114, 123, 126, 175–6, 228, 277, 313, 319, 323
- U-657* (Lieut.-Commander Heinrich Göllnitz), 44, 71*n*, 229
- U-703* (Lieut.-Commander Heinz Bielfeld), 44*n*, 77, 176–0, 230, 236, 238–1, 250, 265, 313, 323
- ULTRA, 12, 13, 118, 121, 145, 152
- United States: occupation of Iceland, 9; and first priority for convoys, 21; mixed crews of merchant ships, 44–6; no surrender injunction for ships, 196–8
- Unshaken* (HM submarine; Lieut. Westmacott), 206
- Vagfiord, 145
- Vegas fiord, 87
- Vestfiord, 79, 86, 88, 95, 97, 98, 100, 121

- Victorious*, HMS (aircraft carrier), 28, 52, 67, 170, 243–4
- Völkischer Beobachter*, 298
- Voronezh, capture of, 297
- Wainwright*, USS (destroyer; Captain Don Moon), 49, 69, 122, 126, 128–9, 130–1, 135, 137, 156–8, 244
- Walker, Captain William, 324; awarded the DSO 325*n*
- Waller, Thomas (assistant cook, *River Afton*), 238–9
- Walrus aircraft, 93, 103–4, 116, 143, 156, 255, 355
- War at Sea, The* (Captain Stephen W Roskill's Official History), 121*n*, 172*n*, 365
- War Shipping Administration, 46*n*
- War Transport, British Ministry of, 47
- Washington* USS (battleship; flagship of Admiral Giffen), 49, 53, 54, 67, 295, 338, 349
- Washington* (American freighter; Captain J Richert), 134, 217–9, 221–2, 293, 295, 338, 349; abandoned, 219; on fire, 220; survivors, 343, 346
- Westmacott, Lieutenant H., 206
- Wharton, Captain John (Rear-Commodore of PQ.17), 177–9
- White Sea, 223, 254, 256, 260, 261, 262, 263, 268, 275, 292, 295, 297, 304, 305, 307, 310, 315, 320, 321, 322, 323, 326, 328, 339, 348, 368
- Wichita*, USS (cruiser; Captain Hill), 49, 53, 54, 58, 63, 69, 113, 120, 124, 156, 170, 172, 180; comments of ship's newspaper on Admiralty signals, 173, 252, 274
- Wilhelmshaven, 204
- William Hooper* (American Liberty ship; Captain Edward L. Graves), 63, 132, 135–6, 138, 141, 158, 165; abandoned and sunk, 176–7
- Wilton*, HMS (destroyer; Lieutenant A. P. Northey), 84, 86, 135, 158
- Winn, Commander Rodger, RNVR (later Lord Justice), 147, 355*n*. See Operational Intelligence Centre
- Winn, Godfrey, 189, 308*n*, 354, 355*n*
- Winston-Salem* (American merchantman; Captain W. Lovgren), 232, 253, 337–8, 345, 354; beached by the Master, 295–6, 341–2, 345–6, 349–50; refloated, 353
- Wolfson, Lieutenant Morton (Armed Guard officer), 193
- Wundshammer, Benno (German war reporter), 220
- Wuri* (German transport), 204, 361
- Zaafaran* (British rescue ship; Captain Charles McGowan), 83–4, 138–9, 226, 318; bombed and sunk, 224–5; survivors, 225
- Zamalek* (British rescue ship; Captain Owen Morris), 60, 83–4, 110–2, 128, 138–40, 142, 222–6, 254, 275, 307, 310–2, 318, 321, 323, 325, 329, 335–6; bombed, 316–7; reaches Archangel, 326; her subsequent history, 326–7



1785. ZAAFARAN - General Steam, ZAMALEK. Pharaonic. (E.) 1,600 G., 900 N., 1,800 Dwt. 270  $\times$  39  $\times$  15. Dbl. 17. Reciprocating, single-screw, oil fuel, 13 knots. Fuel 177 tons. Alba, 1921. Cargo 123,000 c.f. ft. Few passengers.